



**HL7 Implementation Guide for CDA® Release 2:
Consolidated CDA Templates for Clinical Notes
(US Realm)**

Draft Standard for Trial Use Release 2.1

Draft Standard for Trial Use

August 2015

Volume 2 — Templates and Supporting Material

Sponsored by:
Structured Documents Work Group
Patient Care Work Group
Child Health work Group

Copyright © 2019 Health Level Seven International ® ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. The reproduction of this material in any form is strictly forbidden without the written permission of the publisher. HL7 and Health Level Seven are registered trademarks of Health Level Seven International. Reg. U.S. Pat & TM Off.

Use of this material is governed by HL7's [IP Compliance Policy](#).

IMPORTANT NOTES:

HL7 licenses its standards and select IP free of charge. **If you did not acquire a free license from HL7 for this document, you are not authorized to access or make any use of it.** To obtain a free license, please visit <http://www.HL7.org/implement/standards/index.cfm>.

If you are the individual that obtained the license for this HL7 Standard, specification or other freely licensed work (in each and every instance "Specified Material"), the following describes the permitted uses of the Material.

A. HL7 INDIVIDUAL, STUDENT AND HEALTH PROFESSIONAL MEMBERS, who register and agree to the terms of HL7's license, are authorized, without additional charge, to read, and to use Specified Material to develop and sell products and services that implement, but do not directly incorporate, the Specified Material in whole or in part without paying license fees to HL7.

INDIVIDUAL, STUDENT AND HEALTH PROFESSIONAL MEMBERS wishing to incorporate additional items of Special Material in whole or part, into products and services, or to enjoy additional authorizations granted to HL7 ORGANIZATIONAL MEMBERS as noted below, must become ORGANIZATIONAL MEMBERS of HL7.

B. HL7 ORGANIZATION MEMBERS, who register and agree to the terms of HL7's License, are authorized, without additional charge, on a perpetual (except as provided for in the full license terms governing the Material), non-exclusive and worldwide basis, the right to (a) download, copy (for internal purposes only) and share this Material with your employees and consultants for study purposes, and (b) utilize the Material for the purpose of developing, making, having made, using, marketing, importing, offering to sell or license, and selling or licensing, and to otherwise distribute, Compliant Products, in all cases subject to the conditions set forth in this Agreement and any relevant patent and other intellectual property rights of third parties (which may include members of HL7). No other license, sublicense, or other rights of any kind are granted under this Agreement.

C. NON-MEMBERS, who register and agree to the terms of HL7's IP policy for Specified Material, are authorized, without additional charge, to read and use the Specified Material for evaluating whether to implement, or in implementing, the Specified Material, and to use Specified Material to develop and sell products and services that implement, but do not directly incorporate, the Specified Material in whole or in part.

NON-MEMBERS wishing to incorporate additional items of Specified Material in whole or part, into products and services, or to enjoy the additional authorizations granted to HL7 ORGANIZATIONAL MEMBERS, as noted above, must become ORGANIZATIONAL MEMBERS of HL7.

Please see <http://www.HL7.org/legal/ippolicy.cfm> for the full license terms governing the Material.

Ownership. Licensee agrees and acknowledges that HL7 owns all right, title, and interest, in and to the Trademark. Licensee shall take no action contrary to, or inconsistent with, the foregoing.

Licensee agrees and acknowledges that HL7 may not own all right, title, and interest, in and to the Materials and that the Materials may contain and/or reference intellectual property owned by third parties ("Third Party IP").

Acceptance of these License Terms does not grant Licensee any rights with respect to Third Party IP. Licensee alone is responsible for identifying and obtaining any necessary licenses or authorizations to utilize Third Party IP in connection with the Materials or otherwise. Any actions, claims or suits brought by a third party resulting from a breach of any Third Party IP right by the Licensee remains the Licensee's liability.

Following is a non-exhaustive list of third-party terminologies that may require a separate license:

Terminology	Owner/Contact
Current Procedures Terminology (CPT) code set	American Medical Association https://www.ama-assn.org/practice-management/cpt-licensing
SNOMED CT	SNOMED International http://www.snomed.org/snomed-ct/get-snomed-ct or info@ihtsdo.org
Logical Observation Identifiers Names & Codes (LOINC)	Regenstrief Institute
International Classification of Diseases (ICD) codes	World Health Organization (WHO)
NUCC Health Care Provider Taxonomy code set	American Medical Association. Please see www.nucc.org . AMA licensing contact: 312-464-5022 (AMA IP services)

Structure of This Guide

Two volumes comprise this *HL7 Implementation Guide for CDA® Release 2: Consolidated CDA Templates for Clinical Notes R2.1*. Volume 1 provides narrative introductory and background material pertinent to this implementation guide, including information on how to understand and use the templates in Volume 2. Volume 2 contains the normative Clinical Document Architecture (CDA) templates for this guide along with lists of all templates, code systems, value sets, and changes from the previous version.

Table of Contents

1	DOCUMENT-LEVEL TEMPLATES	34
1.1	US Realm Header (V3)	40
1.1.1	Properties	49
1.1.2	Care Plan (V2).....	83
1.1.3	Properties	88
1.1.4	Consultation Note (V3)	96
1.1.5	Properties	102
1.1.6	Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3)	112
1.1.7	Properties	117
1.1.8	Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3)	123
1.1.9	Properties	127
1.1.10	Discharge Summary (V3).....	134
1.1.11	Properties	140
1.1.12	History and Physical (V3)	147
1.1.13	Properties	152
1.1.14	Operative Note (V3)	159
1.1.15	Properties	163
1.1.16	Procedure Note (V3)	169
1.1.17	Properties	176
1.1.18	Progress Note (V3).....	184
1.1.19	Properties	189
1.1.20	Referral Note (V2).....	194
1.1.21	Transfer Summary (V2)	207
1.1.22	Unstructured Document (V3)	222
1.1.23	Properties	223
1.1.24	US Realm Header for Patient Generated Document (V2)	226
2	SECTION-LEVEL TEMPLATES	246
2.1	Admission Diagnosis Section (V3)	247
2.2	Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)	249
2.3	Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3).....	251
2.3.1	Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3)	253
2.4	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3)	256
2.4.1	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3).....	257
2.5	Anesthesia Section (V2).....	259
2.6	Assessment and Plan Section (V2)	261

2.7	Assessment Section	263
2.8	Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section	265
2.9	Chief Complaint Section.....	266
2.10	Complications Section (V3)	267
2.11	Course of Care Section	269
2.12	DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181	270
2.13	Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3).....	273
2.14	Discharge Diet Section (DEPRECATED)	275
2.15	Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)	276
2.15.1	Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3)	278
2.16	Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3).....	281
2.16.1	Encounters Section (entries required) (V3)	282
2.17	Family History Section (V3)	284
2.18	Fetus Subject Context	286
2.19	Findings Section (DIR).....	287
2.20	Functional Status Section (V2)	289
2.21	General Status Section.....	294
2.22	Goals Section.....	295
2.23	Health Concerns Section (V2)	297
2.24	Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section.....	299
2.25	History of Present Illness Section.....	302
2.26	Hospital Consultations Section.....	303
2.27	Hospital Course Section	305
2.28	Hospital Discharge Instructions Section	306
2.29	Hospital Discharge Physical Section	307
2.30	Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section.....	309
2.31	Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3)	311
2.31.1	Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3)	312
2.32	Implants Section (DEPRECATED)	316
2.33	Instructions Section (V2)	317
2.34	Interventions Section (V3).....	319
2.35	Medical (General) History Section	321
2.36	Medical Equipment Section (V2)	322
2.37	Medications Administered Section (V2)	325
2.38	Medications Section (entries optional) (V2)	328
2.38.1	Medications Section (entries required) (V2)	329

2.39	Mental Status Section (V2)	331
2.40	Nutrition Section.....	335
2.41	Objective Section.....	337
2.42	Observer Context	338
2.43	Operative Note Fluids Section.....	339
2.44	Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section.....	340
2.45	Past Medical History (V3).....	341
2.46	Payers Section (V3).....	343
2.47	Physical Exam Section (V3)	345
2.48	Plan of Treatment Section (V2).....	349
2.49	Planned Procedure Section (V2)	354
2.50	Postoperative Diagnosis Section.....	356
2.51	Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3)	357
2.52	Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3)	359
2.53	Problem Section (entries optional) (V3)	361
2.53.1	Problem Section (entries required) (V3)	363
2.54	Procedure Description Section	367
2.55	Procedure Disposition Section	369
2.56	Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section.....	370
2.57	Procedure Findings Section (V3)	371
2.58	Procedure Implants Section.....	373
2.59	Procedure Indications Section (V2).....	374
2.60	Procedure Specimens Taken Section.....	376
2.61	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)	377
2.61.1	Procedures Section (entries required) (V2).....	379
2.62	Reason for Referral Section (V2).....	382
2.63	Reason for Visit Section.....	384
2.64	Results Section (entries optional) (V3)	385
2.64.1	Results Section (entries required) (V3)	387
2.65	Review of Systems Section.....	389
2.66	Social History Section (V3).....	391
2.67	Subjective Section	396
2.68	Surgery Description Section (DEPRECATED)	397
2.69	Surgical Drains Section	398
2.70	Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3)	400
2.70.1	Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)	401

3	ENTRY-LEVEL TEMPLATES.....	404
3.1	Admission Medication (V2)	404
3.2	Advance Directive Observation (V3)	406
3.3	Advance Directive Organizer (V2)	416
3.4	Age Observation.....	420
3.5	Allergy Concern Act (V3).....	422
3.6	Allergy Status Observation	426
3.7	Assessment Scale Observation	428
3.8	Assessment Scale Supporting Observation.....	431
3.9	Authorization Activity.....	433
3.10	Boundary Observation	434
3.11	Caregiver Characteristics	435
3.12	Characteristics of Home Environment.....	437
3.13	Code Observations	440
3.14	Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED)	442
3.15	Comment Activity.....	445
3.16	Coverage Activity (V3).....	447
3.17	Criticality Observation.....	450
3.18	Cultural and Religious Observation	452
3.19	Deceased Observation (V3)	453
3.20	Discharge Medication (V3)	456
3.21	Drug Monitoring Act.....	459
3.22	Drug Vehicle	463
3.23	Encounter Activity (V3).....	464
3.24	Encounter Diagnosis (V3)	473
3.25	Entry Reference	475
3.26	Estimated Date of Delivery	479
3.27	External Document Reference	480
3.28	Family History Death Observation	482
3.29	Family History Observation (V3)	483
3.30	Family History Organizer (V3).....	488
3.31	Functional Status Observation (V2)	492
3.32	Functional Status Organizer (V2).....	495
3.33	Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED)	499
3.34	Goal Observation	502
3.35	Handoff Communication Participants	508

3.36	Health Concern Act (V2)	512
3.37	Health Status Observation (V2).....	529
3.38	Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage.....	532
3.39	Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3).....	533
3.40	Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3)	535
3.41	Immunization Activity (V3)	538
3.42	Immunization Medication Information (V2)	551
3.43	Immunization Refusal Reason	555
3.44	Indication (V2)	558
3.45	Instruction (V2).....	561
3.46	Intervention Act (V2)	564
3.47	Medical Equipment Organizer.....	574
3.48	Medication Activity (V2)	578
3.49	Medication Dispense (V2)	588
3.50	Medication Free Text Sig	592
3.51	Medication Information (V2)	594
3.52	Medication Supply Order (V2).....	599
3.53	Mental Status Observation (V3)	602
3.54	Mental Status Organizer (V3).....	607
3.55	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2).....	610
3.56	Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3)	613
3.57	Nutrition Assessment	617
3.58	Nutrition Recommendation.....	620
3.59	Nutritional Status Observation	625
3.60	Outcome Observation.....	629
3.61	Patient Referral Act	634
3.62	Planned Act (V2)	643
3.63	Planned Coverage.....	647
3.64	Planned Encounter (V2)	651
3.65	Planned Immunization Activity	656
3.66	Planned Intervention Act (V2)	663
3.67	Planned Medication Activity (V2).....	673
3.68	Planned Observation (V2)	679
3.69	Planned Procedure (V2)	685
3.70	Planned Supply (V2).....	692
3.71	Policy Activity (V3).....	698

3.72	Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3)	711
3.73	Precondition for Substance Administration (V2)	713
3.74	Pregnancy Observation.....	715
3.75	Preoperative Diagnosis (V3)	717
3.76	Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED)	719
3.77	Priority Preference.....	725
3.78	Problem Concern Act (V3).....	728
3.79	Problem Observation (V3)	734
3.79.1	Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2)	740
3.80	Problem Status	747
3.81	Procedure Activity Act (V2)	749
3.82	Procedure Activity Observation (V2)	756
3.83	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2)	764
3.84	Procedure Context.....	771
3.85	Product Instance.....	773
3.86	Prognosis Observation.....	775
3.87	Progress Toward Goal Observation	777
3.88	Purpose of Reference Observation.....	779
3.89	Quantity Measurement Observation	781
3.90	Reaction Observation (V2)	784
3.91	Referenced Frames Observation.....	788
3.92	Result Observation (V3).....	790
3.93	Result Organizer (V3)	795
3.94	Risk Concern Act (V2)	799
3.95	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL).....	815
3.96	Sensory Status.....	818
3.97	Series Act	823
3.98	Service Delivery Location.....	826
3.99	Severity Observation (V2)	829
3.100	Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2).....	831
3.101	Social History Observation (V3)	836
3.102	SOP Instance Observation	839
3.103	Study Act.....	842
3.104	Substance Administered Act.....	844
3.105	Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2)	846
3.105.1	Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2).....	853

3.106	Text Observation.....	860
3.107	Tobacco Use (V2).....	863
3.108	Vital Sign Observation (V2).....	867
3.109	Vital Signs Organizer (V3).....	872
3.110	Wound Characteristic.....	875
3.111	Wound Measurement Observation.....	878
4	PARTICIPATION AND OTHER TEMPLATES.....	881
4.1	Author Participation.....	882
4.2	Physician of Record Participant (V2)	885
4.3	Physician Reading Study Performer (V2)	887
4.4	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED)	889
4.5	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED).....	893
4.6	US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED).....	893
4.7	US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED).....	894
4.8	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED)	897
5	VALUE SETS IN THIS GUIDE.....	898
6	CODE SYSTEMS IN THIS GUIDE	905

Table of Figures

Figure 1: US Realm Header (V3) Example.....	73
Figure 2: recordTarget Example	74
Figure 3: author Example	76
Figure 4: dateEnterer Example	76
Figure 5: Assigned Health Care Provider informant Example	77
Figure 6: Personal Relation informant Example	77
Figure 7: custodian Example	78
Figure 8: informationRecipient Example.....	78
Figure 9: Digital signature Example	78
Figure 10: legalAuthenticator Example.....	79
Figure 11: authenticator Example	79
Figure 12: Supporting Person participant Example.....	80
Figure 13: inFulfillmentOf Example	80
Figure 14: performer Example.....	81

Figure 15: documentationOf Example	82
Figure 16: authorization Example	83
Figure 17: Care Plan Patient authenticator Example.....	94
Figure 18: Care Plan Review Example	94
Figure 19: Care Plan Caregiver participant Example	95
Figure 20: Care Plan performer Example	95
Figure 21: Care Plan relatedDocument Example.....	96
Figure 22: Consultation Note Callback participant Example	109
Figure 23: Consultation Note (V2) inFulfillmentOf Example	109
Figure 24: Consultation Note structuredBody Example	110
Figure 25: CCD (V2) author Example	121
Figure 26: CCD (V2) Performer Example.....	122
Figure 27: CCD (V2) serviceEvent Example	122
Figure 28: DIR Participant Example	134
Figure 29: Discharge Summary encompassingEncounter Example	147
Figure 30: H&P encompassingEncounter Example	159
Figure 31: Operative Note performer Example	169
Figure 32: Operative Note serviceEvent Example	169
Figure 33: Procedure Note performer Example.....	184
Figure 34: Procedure Note serviceEvent Example	184
Figure 35: Progress Note serviceEvent Example.....	193
Figure 36: Progress Note encompassingEncounter Example	194
Figure 37: Referral Note informationRecipient Example	206
Figure 38: Referral Note Caregiver Example.....	206
Figure 39: Referral Note Callback Contact Example.....	207
Figure 40: Transfer Summary participant (Support) Example	221
Figure 41: Transfer Summary Callback Contact Example	222
Figure 42: nonXMLBody Example with Embedded Content.....	225
Figure 43: nonXMLBody Example with Referenced Content	225
Figure 44: nonXMLBody Example with Compressed Content	225
Figure 45: Patient Generated Document recordTarget Example.....	235
Figure 46: Patient Generated Document author Example	237
Figure 47: Patient Generated Document author device Example	238
Figure 48: Patient Generated Document dataEnterer Example.....	239

Figure 49: Patient Generated Document informant Example <informant>	240
Figure 50: Patient Generated Document informant RelEnt Example	241
Figure 51: Patient Generated Document custodian Example	241
Figure 52: Patient Generated Document informationRecipient	242
Figure 53: Patient Generated Document legalAuthenticator Example	243
Figure 54: Patient Generated Document authenticator Example	244
Figure 55: Patient Generated Document participant Example	245
Figure 56: Patient Generated Document inFulfillmentOf Example.....	245
Figure 57: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Example	249
Figure 58: Advance Directives Section (V3) Example	255
Figure 59: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Example.....	259
Figure 60: Anesthesia Section (V2) Example	261
Figure 61: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Example	263
Figure 62: Assessment Section Example	264
Figure 63: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Example	266
Figure 64: Chief Complaint Section Example	267
Figure 65: Complications Section (V3) Example.....	269
Figure 66: Course of Care Section Example	270
Figure 67: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Example	272
Figure 68: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Example.....	275
Figure 69: Discharge Medication Section (V3) (entries required) Example	280
Figure 70: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Example	284
Figure 71: Family History Section (V3) Example	286
Figure 72: Fetus Subject Context Example	287
Figure 73: Findings Section (DIR) Example.....	288
Figure 74: Functional Status Section (V2) Example	293
Figure 75: General Status Section Example.....	295
Figure 76: Goals Section Example	297
Figure 77: Health Concerns Section Example	299
Figure 78: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Example.....	301
Figure 79: History of Present Illness Section Example.....	303
Figure 80: Hospital Consultations Section Example.....	304
Figure 81: Hospital Course Section Example	306
Figure 82: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Example	307

Figure 83: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Example	309
Figure 84: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Example.....	310
Figure 85: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Example	315
Figure 86: Instructions Section (V2) Example	318
Figure 87: Interventions Section (V3) Example	321
Figure 88: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Example	325
Figure 89: Medications Administered Section (V2) Example	327
Figure 90: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Example	331
Figure 91: Mental Status Section Example	334
Figure 92: Nutrition Section Example.....	336
Figure 93: Objective Section Example	338
Figure 94: Observer Context Example	339
Figure 95: Operative Note Fluids Section Example.....	340
Figure 96: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Example	341
Figure 97: Past Medical History (V3) Example	343
Figure 98: Payers Section (V3) Example	345
Figure 99: Physical Exam Section (V3) Example	349
Figure 100: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Example.....	354
Figure 101: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Example	356
Figure 102: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Example	357
Figure 103: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Example	359
Figure 104: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Example	361
Figure 105: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Example	365
Figure 106: No Known Problems Section Example	366
Figure 107: Procedure Description Section Example.....	368
Figure 108: Procedure Disposition Section Example	370
Figure 109: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Example	371
Figure 110: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Example	373
Figure 111: Procedure Implants Section Example	374
Figure 112: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Example	376
Figure 113: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Example.....	377
Figure 114: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Example	382
Figure 115: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Example.....	384
Figure 116: Reason for Visit Section Example.....	385

Figure 117: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Example	389
Figure 118: Review of Systems Section Example.....	390
Figure 119: Social History Section (V3) Example.....	395
Figure 120: Subjective Section Example.....	397
Figure 121: Surgical Drains Section Example.....	399
Figure 122: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Example	403
Figure 123: Admission Medication (V2) Example	406
Figure 124: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Example	414
Figure 125: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Example	419
Figure 126: Age Observation Example.....	422
Figure 127: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Example	425
Figure 128: Assessment Scale Observation Example	431
Figure 129: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Example.....	433
Figure 130: Authorization Activity Example.....	434
Figure 131: Boundary Observation Example	435
Figure 132: Caregiver Characteristics Example	437
Figure 133: Characteristics of Home Environment Example.....	440
Figure 134: Code Observations Example	442
Figure 135: Comment Activity Example.....	447
Figure 136: Coverage Activity (V3) Example.....	449
Figure 137: Criticality Observation Example	451
Figure 138: Cultural and Religious Observation Example	453
Figure 139: Deceased Observation (V3) Example	456
Figure 140: Discharge Medication (V3) Example	458
Figure 141: Drug Monitoring Act Example.....	462
Figure 142: Drug Vehicle Example	464
Figure 143: Encounter Activity (V3) Example	473
Figure 144: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Example	475
Figure 145: Entry Reference Example	477
Figure 146: Diagnosis Reference Example	478
Figure 147: Estimated Date of Delivery Example	480
Figure 148: External Document Reference Example	482
Figure 149: Family History Death Observation Example	483
Figure 150: Family History Observation (V3) Example	488

Figure 151: Family History Organizer (V3) Example	492
Figure 152: Functional Status Observation (V2) Example	495
Figure 153: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Example	498
Figure 154: Goal Observation Example	507
Figure 155: Handoff Communication Example	511
Figure 156: Health Concern Act Example	528
Figure 157: Health Status Observation (V2) Example	531
Figure 158: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Example.....	533
Figure 159: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Example.....	535
Figure 160: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Example	537
Figure 161: Immunization Activity (V3) Example	550
Figure 162: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Example	555
Figure 163: Immunization Refusal Reason Example	557
Figure 164: Indication (V2) Example	560
Figure 165: Instruction (V2) Example.....	564
Figure 166: Intervention Act (moodCode="INT") Example	573
Figure 167: Medical Equipment Organizer Example.....	577
Figure 168: Medication Activity (V2) Example	587
Figure 169: No Known Medications Example	588
Figure 170: Medication Dispense (V2) Example	591
Figure 171: Medication Free Text Sig Example	593
Figure 172: Medication Information (V2) Example	599
Figure 173: Medication Supply Order (V2) Example	602
Figure 174: Mental Status Observation (V3) Example	606
Figure 175: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Example.....	609
Figure 176: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Example	613
Figure 177: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Example.....	617
Figure 178: Nutrition Assessment Example	619
Figure 179: Nutrition Recommendation Example.....	625
Figure 180: Nutritional Status Observation Example	629
Figure 181: Outcome Observation Example.....	634
Figure 182: Patient Referral Act Example	642
Figure 183: Planned Act (V2) Example	647
Figure 184: Planned Coverage Example.....	650

Figure 185: Planned Encounter (V2) Example	656
Figure 186: Planned Immunization Activity	662
Figure 187: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Example.....	679
Figure 188: Planned Observation (V2) Example	685
Figure 189: Planned Procedure (V2) Example	691
Figure 190: Planned Supply (V2) Example.....	697
Figure 191: Policy Activity (V3) Example.....	709
Figure 192: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Example	713
Figure 193: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Example	714
Figure 194: Pregnancy Observation Example.....	717
Figure 195: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Example	719
Figure 196: Priority Preference Example.....	728
Figure 197: Problem Concern Act (V3) Example.....	733
Figure 198: Problem Observation (V3) Example	740
Figure 199: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation Example	746
Figure 200: Procedure Activity Act Example	755
Figure 201: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Example	763
Figure 202: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Example	771
Figure 203: Procedure Context Example.....	772
Figure 204: Product Instance Example.....	774
Figure 205: Prognosis, Free Text Example	776
Figure 206: Prognosis, Coded Example	776
Figure 207: Progress Toward Goal Observation Example	779
Figure 208: Purpose of Reference Observation Example.....	780
Figure 209: Quantity Measurement Observation Example	784
Figure 210: Reaction Observation (V2) Example	788
Figure 211: Referenced Frames Observation Example	790
Figure 212: Result Observation (V3) Example.....	794
Figure 213: Result Organizer (V3) Example	798
Figure 214: Risk Concern Act Example	814
Figure 215: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Example.....	818
Figure 216: Sensory and Speech Status Example	823
Figure 217: Series Act Example	826
Figure 218: Service Delivery Location Example.....	829

Figure 219: Severity Observation (V2) Example	831
Figure 220: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Example.....	835
Figure 221: Social History Observation (V3) Example	839
Figure 222: SOP Instance Observation Example	841
Figure 223: Study Act Example.....	844
Figure 224: Substance Administered Act Example.....	846
Figure 225: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Example	859
Figure 226: Text Observation Example	862
Figure 227: Tobacco Use (V2) Example.....	867
Figure 228: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Example.....	871
Figure 229: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Example.....	875
Figure 230: Wound Characteristic Example	878
Figure 231: Wound Measurement Observation Example	880
Figure 232: New Author Participant Example	885
Figure 233: Existing Author Reference Example	885
Figure 234: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Example	887
Figure 235: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Example	889
Figure 236: US Realm Address Example	892
Figure 237: US Realm Date and Time Example	894
Figure 238: US Realm Patient Name Example	897

Table of Tables

Table 1: Required and Optional Sections for Each Document Type.....	34
Table 2: US Realm Header (V3) Contexts	40
Table 3: US Realm Header (V3) Constraints Overview	41
Table 4: Race Value Set	62
Table 5: HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind	62
Table 6: Language	63
Table 7: Telecom Use (US Realm Header).....	63
Table 8: Administrative Gender (HL7 V3).....	64
Table 9: Marital Status	64
Table 10: Religious Affiliation.....	65
Table 11: Race Category Excluding Nulls	66

Table 12: Ethnicity	66
Table 13: Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type.....	67
Table 14: Country.....	68
Table 15: LanguageAbilityMode.....	68
Table 16: LanguageAbilityProficiency	68
Table 17: Detailed Ethnicity.....	69
Table 18: Healthcare Provider Taxonomy.....	70
Table 19: INDRoleclassCodes	71
Table 20: x_ServiceEventPerformer	71
Table 21: Care Team Member Function	72
Table 22: Care Plan (V2) Contexts	83
Table 23: Care Plan (V2) Constraints Overview	85
Table 24: x_ActRelationshipDocument	93
Table 25: Care Plan Document Type.....	93
Table 26: Consultation Note (V3) Contexts	96
Table 27: Consultation Note (V3) Constraints Overview	98
Table 28: ConsultDocumentType	108
Table 29: Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) Contexts	112
Table 30: Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) Constraints Overview	114
Table 31: Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) Contexts.....	123
Table 32: Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) Constraints Overview.....	124
Table 33: LOINC Imaging Document Codes	133
Table 34: DIRSectionTypeCodes	134
Table 35: Discharge Summary (V3) Contexts	134
Table 36: Discharge Summary (V3) Constraints Overview	136
Table 37: DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode	145
Table 38: NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status	146
Table 39: History and Physical (V3) Contexts.....	147
Table 40: History and Physical (V3) Constraints Overview.....	149
Table 41: HPDocumentType	158
Table 42: Operative Note (V3) Contexts	159
Table 43: Operative Note (V3) Constraints Overview.....	160
Table 44: SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode	168
Table 45: Procedure Note (V3) Contexts	169

Table 46: Procedure Note (V3) Constraints Overview.....	171
Table 47: ProcedureNoteDocumentTypeCodes	183
Table 48: Progress Note (V3) Contexts	184
Table 49: Progress Note (V3) Constraints Overview	186
Table 50: ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode	193
Table 51: Referral Note (V2) Contexts	194
Table 52: Referral Note (V2) Constraints Overview	196
Table 53: ReferralDocumentType	205
Table 54: Transfer Summary (V2) Contexts	207
Table 55: Transfer Summary (V2) Constraints Overview	209
Table 56: TransferDocumentType.....	220
Table 57: Unstructured Document (V3) Constraints Overview.....	223
Table 58: SupportedFileFormats	225
Table 59: US Realm Header for Patient Generated Document (V2) Constraints Overview	227
Table 60: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts	247
Table 61: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview	248
Table 62: Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	249
Table 63: Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	250
Table 64: Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts.....	251
Table 65: Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	252
Table 66: Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts	253
Table 67: Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview	254
Table 68: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	256
Table 69: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	256
Table 70: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts.....	257
Table 71: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview	258
Table 72: Anesthesia Section (V2) Contexts	259
Table 73: Anesthesia Section (V2) Constraints Overview	260
Table 74: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Contexts	261
Table 75: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Constraints Overview	262
Table 76: Assessment Section Contexts.....	263
Table 77: Assessment Section Constraints Overview.....	264
Table 78: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section Contexts	265
Table 79: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section Constraints Overview.....	265

Table 80: Chief Complaint Section Contexts	266
Table 81: Chief Complaint Section Constraints Overview	266
Table 82: Complications Section (V3) Contexts	267
Table 83: Complications Section (V3) Constraints Overview	268
Table 84: Course of Care Section Contexts	269
Table 85: Course of Care Section Constraints Overview	269
Table 86: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Contexts	270
Table 87: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Constraints Overview	271
Table 88: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts.....	273
Table 89: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	274
Table 90: Discharge Diet Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview	276
Table 91: Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	276
Table 92: Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	277
Table 93: Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts.....	278
Table 94: Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	279
Table 95: Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	281
Table 96: Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	281
Table 97: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts	282
Table 98: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview	283
Table 99: Family History Section (V3) Contexts	284
Table 100: Family History Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	285
Table 101: Fetus Subject Context Contexts	286
Table 102: Fetus Subject Context Constraints Overview	286
Table 103: Findings Section (DIR) Contexts	287
Table 104: Findings Section (DIR) Constraints Overview	287
Table 105: Functional Status Section (V2) Contexts.....	289
Table 106: Functional Status Section (V2) Constraints Overview.....	290
Table 107: General Status Section Contexts	294
Table 108: General Status Section Constraints Overview	294
Table 109: Goals Section Contexts	295
Table 110: Goals Section Constraints Overview	296
Table 111: Health Concerns Section (V2) Contexts	297
Table 112: Health Concerns Section (V2) Constraints Overview	298
Table 113: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Contexts	299

Table 114: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Constraints Overview	300
Table 115: History of Present Illness Section Contexts	302
Table 116: History of Present Illness Section Constraints Overview	302
Table 117: Hospital Consultations Section Contexts	303
Table 118: Hospital Consultations Section Constraints Overview	304
Table 119: Hospital Course Section Contexts	305
Table 120: Hospital Course Section Constraints Overview	305
Table 121: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Contexts.....	306
Table 122: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Constraints Overview.....	306
Table 123: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Contexts.....	307
Table 124: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Constraints Overview.....	308
Table 125: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Contexts	309
Table 126: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Constraints Overview	310
Table 127: Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts.....	311
Table 128: Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	311
Table 129: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts	312
Table 130: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview	313
Table 131: Implants Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview	316
Table 132: Instructions Section (V2) Contexts	317
Table 133: Instructions Section (V2) Constraints Overview	317
Table 134: Interventions Section (V3) Contexts.....	319
Table 135: Interventions Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	320
Table 136: Medical (General) History Section Contexts	321
Table 137: Medical (General) History Section Constraints Overview	322
Table 138: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Contexts	322
Table 139: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Constraints Overview	323
Table 140: Medications Administered Section (V2) Contexts	325
Table 141: Medications Administered Section (V2) Constraints Overview.....	326
Table 142: Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) Contexts	328
Table 143: Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) Constraints Overview	328
Table 144: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Contexts	329
Table 145: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Constraints Overview.....	330
Table 146: Mental Status Section (V2) Contexts	331
Table 147: Mental Status Section (V2) Constraints Overview	332

Table 148: Nutrition Section Contexts	335
Table 149: Nutrition Section Constraints Overview.....	335
Table 150: Objective Section Contexts.....	337
Table 151: Objective Section Constraints Overview.....	337
Table 152: Observer Context Contexts	338
Table 153: Observer Context Constraints Overview	338
Table 154: Operative Note Fluids Section Contexts	339
Table 155: Operative Note Fluids Section Constraints Overview	339
Table 156: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Contexts.....	340
Table 157: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Constraints Overview.....	340
Table 158: Past Medical History (V3) Contexts	341
Table 159: Past Medical History (V3) Constraints Overview.....	342
Table 160: Payers Section (V3) Contexts.....	343
Table 161: Payers Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	344
Table 162: Physical Exam Section (V3) Contexts.....	345
Table 163: Physical Exam Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	346
Table 164: Physical Exam Type.....	348
Table 165: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Contexts.....	349
Table 166: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Constraints Overview.....	351
Table 167: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Contexts	354
Table 168: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Constraints Overview	355
Table 169: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Contexts.....	356
Table 170: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Constraints Overview.....	356
Table 171: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts	357
Table 172: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview	358
Table 173: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts	359
Table 174: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview	360
Table 175: Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	361
Table 176: Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	362
Table 177: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts.....	363
Table 178: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	364
Table 179: Procedure Description Section Contexts	367
Table 180: Procedure Description Section Constraints Overview	368
Table 181: Procedure Disposition Section Contexts	369

Table 182: Procedure Disposition Section Constraints Overview	369
Table 183: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Contexts	370
Table 184: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Constraints Overview.....	370
Table 185: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Contexts	371
Table 186: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Constraints Overview	372
Table 187: Procedure Implants Section Contexts	373
Table 188: Procedure Implants Section Constraints Overview	373
Table 189: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Contexts.....	374
Table 190: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Constraints Overview.....	375
Table 191: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Contexts	376
Table 192: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Constraints Overview	376
Table 193: Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) Contexts.....	377
Table 194: Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) Constraints Overview.....	378
Table 195: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Contexts	379
Table 196: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Constraints Overview	380
Table 197: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Contexts	382
Table 198: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Constraints Overview.....	383
Table 199: Reason for Visit Section Contexts.....	384
Table 200: Reason for Visit Section Constraints Overview.....	384
Table 201: Results Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	385
Table 202: Results Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	386
Table 203: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts.....	387
Table 204: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	388
Table 205: Review of Systems Section Contexts.....	389
Table 206: Review of Systems Section Constraints Overview	390
Table 207: Social History Section (V3) Contexts.....	391
Table 208: Social History Section (V3) Constraints Overview.....	392
Table 209: Subjective Section Contexts	396
Table 210: Subjective Section Constraints Overview	396
Table 211: Surgery Description Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview.....	398
Table 212: Surgical Drains Section Contexts	398
Table 213: Surgical Drains Section Constraints Overview	399
Table 214: Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts	400
Table 215: Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview	400

Table 216: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts.....	401
Table 217: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview.....	402
Table 218: Admission Medication (V2) Contexts.....	404
Table 219: Admission Medication (V2) Constraints Overview.....	405
Table 220: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Contexts.....	406
Table 221: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Constraints Overview.....	408
Table 222: Advance Directive Type Code	413
Table 223: Healthcare Agent Qualifier	413
Table 224: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Contexts	416
Table 225: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Constraints Overview	417
Table 226: Age Observation Contexts	420
Table 227: Age Observation Constraints Overview	420
Table 228: AgePQ_UCUM.....	421
Table 229: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Contexts	422
Table 230: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Constraints Overview	423
Table 231: ProblemAct statusCode.....	424
Table 232: Allergy Status Observation Contexts	426
Table 233: Allergy Status Observation Constraints Overview	427
Table 234: Allergy Clinical Status	428
Table 235: Assessment Scale Observation Contexts.....	428
Table 236: Assessment Scale Observation Constraints Overview.....	429
Table 237: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Contexts	431
Table 238: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Constraints Overview	432
Table 239: Authorization Activity Constraints Overview	433
Table 240: Boundary Observation Contexts.....	434
Table 241: Boundary Observation Constraints Overview.....	435
Table 242: Caregiver Characteristics Contexts.....	435
Table 243: Caregiver Characteristics Constraints Overview.....	436
Table 244: Characteristics of Home Environment Contexts.....	437
Table 245: Characteristics of Home Environment Constraints Overview	438
Table 246: Residence and Accommodation Type	439
Table 247: Code Observations Contexts	440
Table 248: Code Observations Constraints Overview	441
Table 249: Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts	442

Table 250: Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview.....	443
Table 251: Problem.....	445
Table 252: Comment Activity Contexts.....	445
Table 253: Comment Activity Constraints Overview	446
Table 254: Coverage Activity (V3) Contexts	447
Table 255: Coverage Activity (V3) Constraints Overview	448
Table 256: Criticality Observation Contexts.....	450
Table 257: Criticality Observation Constraints Overview.....	450
Table 258: Criticality Observation	451
Table 259: Cultural and Religious Observation Contexts	452
Table 260: Cultural and Religious Observation Constraints Overview	452
Table 261: Deceased Observation (V3) Contexts	453
Table 262: Deceased Observation (V3) Constraints Overview	454
Table 263: Discharge Medication (V3) Contexts	456
Table 264: Discharge Medication (V3) Constraints Overview	457
Table 265: Drug Monitoring Act Contexts.....	459
Table 266: Drug Monitoring Act Constraints Overview.....	460
Table 267: ActStatus	462
Table 268: Drug Vehicle Contexts	463
Table 269: Drug Vehicle Constraints Overview	463
Table 270: Encounter Activity (V3) Contexts	464
Table 271: Encounter Activity (V3) Constraints Overview.....	465
Table 272: EncounterTypeCode.....	468
Table 273: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Contexts	473
Table 274: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview	474
Table 275: Entry Reference Contexts.....	475
Table 276: Entry Reference Constraints Overview.....	476
Table 277: Estimated Date of Delivery Contexts	479
Table 278: Estimated Date of Delivery Constraints Overview.....	479
Table 279: External Document Reference Contexts.....	480
Table 280: External Document Reference Constraints Overview.....	481
Table 281: Family History Death Observation Contexts	482
Table 282: Family History Death Observation Constraints Overview	482
Table 283: Family History Observation (V3) Contexts	483

Table 284: Family History Observation (V3) Constraints Overview.....	484
Table 285: Problem Type (SNOMEDCT)	486
Table 286: Problem Type (LOINC).....	487
Table 287: Family History Organizer (V3) Contexts	488
Table 288: Family History Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview	489
Table 289: Family Member Value	491
Table 290: Functional Status Observation (V2) Contexts	492
Table 291: Functional Status Observation (V2) Constraints Overview	493
Table 292: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Contexts	495
Table 293: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Constraints Overview	496
Table 294: Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts	499
Table 295: Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview	500
Table 296: Goal Observation Contexts.....	502
Table 297: Goal Observation Constraints Overview.....	503
Table 298: Handoff Communication Participants Contexts	508
Table 299: Handoff Communication Participants Constraints Overview	509
Table 300: Health Concern Act (V2) Contexts	512
Table 301: Health Concern Act (V2) Constraints Overview	514
Table 302: Health Status Observation (V2) Contexts.....	529
Table 303: Health Status Observation (V2) Constraints Overview.....	530
Table 304: HealthStatus	531
Table 305: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Contexts	532
Table 306: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Constraints Overview	532
Table 307: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Contexts.....	533
Table 308: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview.....	534
Table 309: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Contexts	535
Table 310: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview.....	536
Table 311: Immunization Activity (V3) Contexts.....	538
Table 312: Immunization Activity (V3) Constraints Overview.....	539
Table 313: MoodCodeEvnInt	544
Table 314: SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology	545
Table 315: Body Site Value Set	546
Table 316: UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive.....	547
Table 317: AdministrationUnitDoseForm	548

Table 318: Medication Route.....	549
Table 319: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Contexts	551
Table 320: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Constraints Overview.....	552
Table 321: CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set	553
Table 322: Vaccine Clinical Drug	554
Table 323: Immunization Refusal Reason Contexts	555
Table 324: Immunization Refusal Reason Constraints Overview.....	556
Table 325: No Immunization Reason	557
Table 326: Indication (V2) Contexts.....	558
Table 327: Indication (V2) Constraints Overview.....	559
Table 328: Instruction (V2) Contexts	561
Table 329: Instruction (V2) Constraints Overview	562
Table 330: Patient Education	563
Table 331: Intervention Act (V2) Contexts.....	564
Table 332: Intervention Act (V2) Constraints Overview.....	566
Table 333: Medical Equipment Organizer Contexts.....	574
Table 334: Medical Equipment Organizer Constraints Overview.....	575
Table 335: Result Status.....	577
Table 336: Medication Activity (V2) Contexts	578
Table 337: Medication Activity (V2) Constraints Overview	579
Table 338: Medication Status.....	586
Table 339: Medication Dispense (V2) Contexts	588
Table 340: Medication Dispense (V2) Constraints Overview.....	589
Table 341: Medication Fill Status.....	591
Table 342: Medication Free Text Sig Contexts.....	592
Table 343: Medication Free Text Sig Constraints Overview.....	592
Table 344: Medication Information (V2) Contexts.....	594
Table 345: Medication Information (V2) Constraints Overview.....	594
Table 346: Medication Clinical Drug	596
Table 347: Clinical Substance.....	598
Table 348: Medication Supply Order (V2) Contexts	599
Table 349: Medication Supply Order (V2) Constraints Overview	600
Table 350: Mental Status Observation (V3) Contexts	602
Table 351: Mental Status Observation (V3) Constraints Overview	604

Table 352: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Contexts	607
Table 353: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview	607
Table 354: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Contexts	610
Table 355: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Constraints Overview	611
Table 356: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Contexts	613
Table 357: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Constraints Overview	614
Table 358: Pressure Ulcer Stage.....	616
Table 359: Nutrition Assessment Contexts	617
Table 360: Nutrition Assessment Constraints Overview	618
Table 361: Nutrition Recommendation Contexts	620
Table 362: Nutrition Recommendation Constraints Overview	621
Table 363: Nutrition Recommendations.....	624
Table 364: Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure).....	625
Table 365: Nutritional Status Observation Contexts	625
Table 366: Nutritional Status Observation Constraints Overview	626
Table 367: Nutritional Status.....	628
Table 368: Outcome Observation Contexts	629
Table 369: Outcome Observation Constraints Overview	631
Table 370: Patient Referral Act Contexts	634
Table 371: Patient Referral Act Constraints Overview	635
Table 372: Patient Referral Act moodCode	638
Table 373: Referral Types	639
Table 374: Care Model.....	640
Table 375: ActPriority	641
Table 376: Planned Act (V2) Contexts.....	643
Table 377: Planned Act (V2) Constraints Overview	644
Table 378: Planned Coverage Contexts	647
Table 379: Planned Coverage Constraints Overview	648
Table 380: Payer.....	650
Table 381: Planned Encounter (V2) Contexts	651
Table 382: Planned Encounter (V2) Constraints Overview.....	652
Table 383: Encounter Planned	655
Table 384: Planned Immunization Activity Contexts	656
Table 385: Planned Immunization Activity Constraints Overview	658

Table 386: Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply)	661
Table 387: Planned Intervention Act (V2) Contexts	663
Table 388: Planned Intervention Act (V2) Constraints Overview	664
Table 389: Planned Intervention moodCode.....	673
Table 390: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Contexts	673
Table 391: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Constraints Overview	674
Table 392: Planned Observation (V2) Contexts	679
Table 393: Planned Observation (V2) Constraints Overview	681
Table 394: Planned moodCode (Observation)	684
Table 395: Planned Procedure (V2) Contexts	685
Table 396: Planned Procedure (V2) Constraints Overview	687
Table 397: Planned Supply (V2) Contexts	692
Table 398: Planned Supply (V2) Constraints Overview	693
Table 399: Policy Activity (V3) Contexts	698
Table 400: Policy Activity (V3) Constraints Overview.....	699
Table 401: Health Insurance Type	706
Table 402: Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set	707
Table 403: Coverage Role Type Value Set	708
Table 404: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Contexts	711
Table 405: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview	712
Table 406: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Contexts	713
Table 407: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Constraints Overview	714
Table 408: Pregnancy Observation Contexts	715
Table 409: Pregnancy Observation Constraints Overview	715
Table 410: Extended Pregnancy Status	716
Table 411: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Contexts	717
Table 412: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview.....	718
Table 413: Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts.....	719
Table 414: Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview.....	720
Table 415: Pressure Point	724
Table 416: TargetSite Qualifiers	725
Table 417: Priority Preference Contexts	725
Table 418: Priority Preference Constraints Overview	726
Table 419: Priority Level	727

Table 420: Problem Concern Act (V3) Contexts	728
Table 421: Problem Concern Act (V3) Constraints Overview.....	730
Table 422: Problem Observation (V3) Contexts	734
Table 423: Problem Observation (V3) Constraints Overview	735
Table 424: Problem Type (LOINC).....	739
Table 425: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) Contexts.....	740
Table 426: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) Constraints Overview.....	742
Table 427: Wound Type	745
Table 428: Problem Status Contexts	747
Table 429: Problem Status Constraints Overview.....	747
Table 430: Problem Status.....	748
Table 431: Procedure Activity Act (V2) Contexts.....	749
Table 432: Procedure Activity Act (V2) Constraints Overview.....	750
Table 433: ProcedureAct statusCode	754
Table 434: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Contexts	756
Table 435: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Constraints Overview	757
Table 436: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Contexts	764
Table 437: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Constraints Overview	765
Table 438: Procedure Context Contexts.....	771
Table 439: Procedure Context Constraints Overview.....	772
Table 440: Product Instance Contexts	773
Table 441: Product Instance Constraints Overview	774
Table 442: Prognosis Observation Contexts	775
Table 443: Prognosis Observation Constraints Overview	775
Table 444: Progress Toward Goal Observation Contexts.....	777
Table 445: Progress Toward Goal Observation Constraints Overview.....	777
Table 446: Goal Achievement	778
Table 447: Purpose of Reference Observation Contexts	779
Table 448: Purpose of Reference Observation Constraints Overview	779
Table 449: DICOPurposeOfReference.....	780
Table 450: Quantity Measurement Observation Contexts.....	781
Table 451: Quantity Measurement Observation Constraints Overview.....	781
Table 452: DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes	783
Table 453: Reaction Observation (V2) Contexts	784

Table 454: Reaction Observation (V2) Constraints Overview.....	785
Table 455: Referenced Frames Observation Contexts.....	788
Table 456: Referenced Frames Observation Constraints Overview.....	789
Table 457: Result Observation (V3) Contexts	790
Table 458: Result Observation (V3) Constraints Overview	791
Table 459: Observation Interpretation (HL7)	793
Table 460: Result Organizer (V3) Contexts	795
Table 461: Result Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview.....	796
Table 462: Risk Concern Act (V2) Contexts.....	799
Table 463: Risk Concern Act (V2) Constraints Overview.....	800
Table 464: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Contexts.....	815
Table 465: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Constraints Overview.....	815
Table 466: Ability	817
Table 467: ADL Result Type	818
Table 468: Sensory Status Contexts	818
Table 469: Sensory Status Constraints Overview.....	819
Table 470: Sensory Status Problem Type.....	821
Table 471: Mental and Functional Status Response	822
Table 472: Series Act Contexts.....	823
Table 473: Series Act Constraints Overview.....	824
Table 474: Service Delivery Location Contexts	826
Table 475: Service Delivery Location Constraints Overview	827
Table 476: HealthcareServiceLocation	828
Table 477: Severity Observation (V2) Contexts.....	829
Table 478: Severity Observation (V2) Constraints Overview.....	830
Table 479: Reaction Severity	831
Table 480: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Contexts	831
Table 481: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Constraints Overview	833
Table 482: Smoking Status	835
Table 483: Social History Observation (V3) Contexts.....	836
Table 484: Social History Observation (V3) Constraints Overview.....	837
Table 485: Social History Type	838
Table 486: SOP Instance Observation Contexts	839
Table 487: SOP Instance Observation Constraints Overview	840

Table 488: Study Act Contexts	842
Table 489: Study Act Constraints Overview	843
Table 490: Substance Administered Act Contexts	844
Table 491: Substance Administered Act Constraints Overview	845
Table 492: Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Contexts	846
Table 493: Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Constraints Overview.....	847
Table 494: Allergy and Intolerance Type	851
Table 495: Substance Reactant for Intolerance.....	852
Table 496: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Contexts	853
Table 497: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Constraints Overview	854
Table 498: Text Observation Contexts	860
Table 499: Text Observation Constraints Overview	861
Table 500: Tobacco Use (V2) Contexts	863
Table 501: Tobacco Use (V2) Constraints Overview	864
Table 502: Tobacco Use	866
Table 503: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Contexts	867
Table 504: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Constraints Overview	869
Table 505: Vital Sign Result Type.....	871
Table 506: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Contexts	872
Table 507: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview	873
Table 508: Wound Characteristic Contexts	875
Table 509: Wound Characteristic Constraints Overview.....	876
Table 510: Wound Characteristic	877
Table 511: Wound Measurement Observation Contexts	878
Table 512: Wound Measurement Observation Constraints Overview	879
Table 513: Wound Measurements	880
Table 514: Author Participation Contexts	882
Table 515: Author Participation Constraints Overview	883
Table 516: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Contexts.....	885
Table 517: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Constraints Overview.....	886
Table 518: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Contexts	887
Table 519: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Constraints Overview	888
Table 520: US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) Contexts.....	889
Table 521: US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview.....	889

Table 522: PostalAddressUse	891
Table 523: StateValueSet.....	892
Table 524: PostalCode	892
Table 525: US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) Contexts.....	893
Table 526: US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview.....	893
Table 527: US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) Contexts	893
Table 528: US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview	894
Table 529: US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) Contexts	894
Table 530: US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview	895
Table 531: EntityNameUse.....	896
Table 532: EntityPersonNamePartQualifier.....	896
Table 533: US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) Contexts	897
Table 534: US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview	897
Table 535: Value Sets	898
Table 536: Code Systems	905

1 DOCUMENT-LEVEL TEMPLATES

Document-level templates describe the purpose and rules for constructing a conforming CDA document. Document templates include constraints on the CDA header and indicate contained section-level templates.

Each document-level template contains the following information:

- Scope and intended use of the document type
- Description and explanatory narrative
- Template metadata (e.g., templateId)
- Header constraints (e.g., document type, template id, participants)
- Required and optional section-level templates

Table 1: Required and Optional Sections for Each Document Type

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
<u>Care Plan (V2)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.15:2015-08-01	<u>Health Concerns Section (V2)</u> <u>Goals Section</u>	<u>Interventions Section (V3)</u> <u>Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section</u>
<u>Consultation Note (V3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.4:2015-08-01	<u>History of Present Illness Section</u> <u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Problem Section (entries required) (V3)</u>	<u>Assessment Section</u> <u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u> <u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u> <u>Reason for Visit Section</u> <u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u> <u>Chief Complaint Section</u> <u>Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section</u> <u>Family History Section (V3)</u> <u>General Status Section</u> <u>Past Medical History (V3)</u> <u>Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Medications Section (entries required) (V2)</u> <u>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Results Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Social History Section (V3)</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Functional Status Section (V2)</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Medical Equipment Section</u>

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
		<p><u>(V2)</u></p> <p><u>Mental Status Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Nutrition Section</u></p> <p><u>Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p>
<p><u>Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3)</u></p> <p>urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.2:2015-08-01</p>	<p><u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Medications Section (entries required) (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Problem Section (entries required) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Results Section (entries required) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Social History Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)</u></p>	<p><u>Procedures Section (entries required) (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Family History Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Functional Status Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Medical Equipment Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Payers Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Mental Status Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Nutrition Section</u></p> <p><u>Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p>
<p><u>Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3)</u></p> <p>urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.5:2015-08-01</p>	<p><u>Findings Section (DIR)</u></p>	<p><u>DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181</u></p> <p><u>Fetus Subject Context</u></p> <p><u>Observer Context</u></p>
<p><u>Discharge Summary (V3)</u></p> <p>urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8:2015-08-01</p>	<p><u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Hospital Course Section</u></p> <p><u>Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u></p>	<p><u>Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Chief Complaint Section</u></p> <p><u>Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section</u></p> <p><u>Nutrition Section</u></p> <p><u>Family History Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Functional Status Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Past Medical History (V3)</u></p> <p><u>History of Present Illness Section</u></p> <p><u>Admission Diagnosis Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p>

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
		<u>Hospital Consultations</u> <u>Section</u> <u>Hospital Discharge</u> <u>Instructions Section</u> <u>Hospital Discharge</u> <u>Physical Section</u> <u>Hospital Discharge Studies</u> <u>Summary Section</u> <u>Immunizations Section</u> <u>(entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Problem Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Reason for Visit Section</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Social History Section (V3)</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Discharge Medications</u> <u>Section (entries required) (V3)</u>
<u>History and Physical (V3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.3:2015-08-01	<u>Allergies and Intolerances</u> <u>Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Family History Section (V3)</u> <u>General Status Section</u> <u>Past Medical History (V3)</u> <u>Medications Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u> <u>Results Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Social History Section (V3)</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3)</u>	<u>Assessment Section</u> <u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u> <u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u> <u>Chief Complaint Section</u> <u>Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section</u> <u>History of Present Illness Section</u> <u>Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Instructions Section (V2)</u> <u>Problem Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Reason for Visit Section</u>
<u>Operative Note (V3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.7:2015-08-01	<u>Anesthesia Section (V2)</u> <u>Complications Section (V3)</u> <u>Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3)</u> <u>Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section</u> <u>Procedure Findings Section</u>	<u>Procedure Implants Section</u> <u>Operative Note Fluids Section</u> <u>Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section</u> <u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u>

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
	<p>(V3)</p> <p><u>Procedure Specimens Taken Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Description Section</u></p> <p><u>Postoperative Diagnosis Section</u></p>	<p><u>Planned Procedure Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Disposition Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Indications Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Surgical Drains Section</u></p>
<p><u>Procedure Note (V3)</u></p> <p>urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.6:2015-08-01</p>	<p><u>Complications Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Description Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Indications Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3)</u></p>	<p><u>Assessment Section</u></p> <p><u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Anesthesia Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Chief Complaint Section</u></p> <p><u>Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section</u></p> <p><u>Family History Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Past Medical History (V3)</u></p> <p><u>History of Present Illness Section</u></p> <p><u>Medical (General) History Section</u></p> <p><u>Medications Section (entries optional) (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Medications Administered Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Planned Procedure Section (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Disposition Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Findings Section (V3)</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Implants Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedure Specimens Taken Section</u></p> <p><u>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)</u></p> <p><u>Reason for Visit Section</u></p> <p><u>Review of Systems Section</u></p> <p><u>Social History Section (V3)</u></p>

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
<u>Progress Note (V3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.9:2015-08-01	N/A	<u>Assessment Section</u> <u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u> <u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u> <u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Chief Complaint Section</u> <u>Interventions Section (V3)</u> <u>Instructions Section (V2)</u> <u>Medications Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Objective Section</u> <u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u> <u>Problem Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Results Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Subjective Section</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Nutrition Section</u>
<u>Referral Note (V2)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.14:2015-08-01	<u>Problem Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Medications Section (entries required) (V2)</u> <u>Reason for Referral Section (V2)</u>	<u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u> <u>History of Present Illness Section</u> <u>Family History Section (V3)</u> <u>Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)</u> <u>Results Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Social History Section (V3)</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Functional Status Section (V2)</u> <u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u> <u>Nutrition Section</u> <u>Mental Status Section (V2)</u> <u>Medical Equipment Section (V2)</u>

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
		<u>Assessment Section</u> <u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u> <u>Past Medical History (V3)</u> <u>General Status Section</u> <u>Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3)</u>
<u>Transfer Summary (V2)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.13:2015-08-01	<u>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Medications Section (entries required) (V2)</u> <u>Problem Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Results Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Reason for Referral Section (V2)</u>	<u>Physical Exam Section (V3)</u> <u>Encounters Section (entries required) (V3)</u> <u>Family History Section (V3)</u> <u>Functional Status Section (V2)</u> <u>Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3)</u> <u>Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Medical Equipment Section (V2)</u> <u>Payers Section (V3)</u> <u>Plan of Treatment Section (V2)</u> <u>Procedures Section (entries required) (V2)</u> <u>Social History Section (V3)</u> <u>Mental Status Section (V2)</u> <u>General Status Section</u> <u>Review of Systems Section</u> <u>Nutrition Section</u> <u>Past Medical History (V3)</u> <u>History of Present Illness Section</u> <u>Assessment and Plan Section (V2)</u> <u>Assessment Section</u> <u>Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)</u> <u>Admission Diagnosis Section (V3)</u> <u>Course of Care Section</u> <u>Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3)</u>
<u>Unstructured Document (V3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10	N/A	N/A

Document Type	Required Sections	Optional Sections
.20.22.1.10:2015-08-01		
<u>US Realm Header (v3)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.22.1.1:2015-08-01	N/A	N/A
<u>US Realm Header for Patient Generated Document (v2)</u> urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10 .20.29.1:2015-08-01	N/A	N/A

1.1 US Realm Header (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 2: US Realm Header (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	<u>US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED)</u> (required) <u>US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED)</u> (optional) <u>US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED)</u> (required) <u>US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED)</u> (optional) <u>US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED)</u> (optional) <u>US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED)</u> (required)

This template defines constraints that represent common administrative and demographic concepts for US Realm CDA documents. Further specification, such as ClinicalDocument/code, are provided in document templates that conform to this template.

Table 3: US Realm Header (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01)					
realmCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-16791	US
typeId	1..1	SHALL		1198-5361	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-5250	2.16.840.1.113883.1.3
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-5251	POCD_HD000040
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-5252	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10036	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32503	2015-08-01
id	1..1	SHALL		1198-5363	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-5253	
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-5254	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-5256	US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4
confidentialityCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5259	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.16926 (HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind)
languageCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5372	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.11526 (Language)
setId	0..1	MAY		1198-5261	
versionNumber	0..1	MAY		1198-5264	
recordTarget	1..*	SHALL		1198-5266	
patientRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-5267	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5268	
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-5271	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				5280	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5375	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
patient	1..1	SHALL		1198-5283	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5284	US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1)
administrativeGenderCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-6394	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1 (Administrative Gender (HL7 V3))
birthTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-5298	
maritalStatusCode	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5303	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.12212 (Marital Status)
religiousAffiliationCode	0..1	MAY		1198-5317	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.19185 (Religious Affiliation)
raceCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5322	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.2.074.1.1.3 (Race Category Excluding Nulls)
sdtc:raceCode	0..*	MAY		1198-7263	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.14914 (Race Value Set)
ethnicGroupCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5323	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1.1.837 (Ethnicity)
sdtc:ethnicGroupCode	0..*	MAY		1198-32901	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1.1.877 (Detailed Ethnicity)
guardian	0..*	MAY		1198-5325	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5326	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-5359	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2)
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		1198-5382	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7993	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
guardianPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-5385	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5386	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
birthplace	0..1	MAY		1198-5395	
place	1..1	SHALL		1198-5396	
addr	1..1	SHALL		1198-5397	
country	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5404	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.63 (Country)
languageCommunication	0..*	SHOULD		1198-5406	
languageCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5407	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.11526 (Language)
modeCode	0..1	MAY		1198-5409	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.12249 (LanguageAbilityMode)
proficiencyLevelCode	0..1	SHOULD		1198-9965	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.12199 (LanguageAbilityProficiency)
preferenceInd	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5414	
providerOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-5416	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5417	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16820	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5419	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-5420	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7994	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-5422	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.2
author	1..*	SHALL		1198-5444	
time	1..1	SHALL		1198-5445	US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.4
assignedAuthor	1..1	SHALL		1198-5448	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5449	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
id	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32882	
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32883	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = UNK
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-32884	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
@extension	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32885	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16787	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-16788	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-5452	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.2
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-5428	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7995	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
assignedPerson	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5430	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-16789	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.1.1
assignedAuthoringDevice	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16783	
manufacturerModelName	1..1	SHALL		1198-16784	
softwareName	1..1	SHALL		1198-16785	
dataEnterer	0..1	MAY		1198-5441	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-5442	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5443	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16821	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
code	0..1	MAY		1198-32173	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-5460	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					20.22.5.2
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-5466	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7996	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
assignedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-5469	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5470	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
informant	0..*	MAY		1198-8001	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-8002	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-9945	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-32174	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-8220	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2
assignedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-8221	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-8222	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
informant	0..*	MAY		1198-31355	
relatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31356	
custodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-5519	
assignedCustodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-5520	
representedCustodianOrganization	1..1	SHALL		1198-5521	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5522	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16822	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-5524	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
telecom	1..1	SHALL		1198-5525	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7998	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
addr	1..1	SHALL		1198-5559	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2
informationRecipient	0..*	MAY		1198-5565	
intendedRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-5566	
id	0..*	MAY		1198-32399	
informationRecipient	0..1	MAY		1198-5567	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5568	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
receivedOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-5577	
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-5578	
legalAuthenticator	0..1	SHOULD		1198-5579	
time	1..1	SHALL		1198-5580	US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4
signatureCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-5583	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-5584	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.89 (HL7ParticipationSignature) = S
sdtc:signatureText	0..1	MAY		1198-30810	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-5585	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-5586	
@root	0..1	MAY		1198-16823	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
code	0..1	MAY		1198-17000	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198-	US Realm Address

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				5589	(AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.2)
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198- 5595	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 7999	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
assignedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198- 5597	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198- 5598	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.1.1)
authenticator	0..*	MAY		1198- 5607	
time	1..1	SHALL		1198- 5608	US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.4)
signatureCode	1..1	SHALL		1198- 5610	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198- 5611	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8 9 (HL7ParticipationSignature) = S
sdtc:signatureText	0..1	MAY		1198- 30811	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198- 5612	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198- 5613	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 16824	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
code	0..1	MAY		1198- 16825	
@code	0..1	MAY		1198- 16826	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1198- 5616	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.2)
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198- 5622	
@use	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 8000	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.20 (Telecom Use (US Realm Header))
assignedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				5624	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-5625	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-10003	
time	0..1	MAY		1198-10004	
inFulfillmentOf	0..*	MAY		1198-9952	
order	1..1	SHALL		1198-9953	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-9954	
documentationOf	0..*	MAY		1198-14835	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-14836	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-14837	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-14838	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1198-14839	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14840	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.19601 (x_ServiceEventPerformer)
functionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-16818	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32889	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1099.30 (Care Team Member Function)
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-14841	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-14846	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198-14847	2.16.840.1.113883.4.6
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-14842	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
authorization	0..*	MAY		1198-16792	
consent	1..1	SHALL		1198-16793	
id	0..*	MAY		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				16794	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-16795	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-16797	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-16798	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = completed
componentOf	0..1	MAY		1198-9955	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-9956	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-9959	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-9958	

1.1.1 Properties

1.1.1.1 realmCode

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **realmCode**= "US" (CONF:1198-16791).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **typeId** (CONF:1198-5361).
 - a. This typeId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" (CONF:1198-5250).
 - b. This typeId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "POCD_HD000040" (CONF:1198-5251).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-5252) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1" (CONF:1198-10036).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32503).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1198-5363).
 - a. This id **SHALL** be a globally unique identifier for the document (CONF:1198-9991).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-5253).
 - a. This code **SHALL** specify the particular kind of document (e.g., History and Physical, Discharge Summary, Progress Note) (CONF:1198-9992).
 - b. This code **SHALL** be drawn from the LOINC document type ontology (LOINC codes where SCALE = DOC) (CONF:1198-32948).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-5254).

Note: The title can either be a locally defined name or the displayName corresponding to clinicalDocument/code
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**US Realm Date and Time \(DTM.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4) (CONF:1198-5256).

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **confidentialityCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16926 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5259).
9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **languageCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Language](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11526 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5372).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **setId** (CONF:1198-5261).
 - a. If setId is present versionNumber **SHALL** be present (CONF:1198-6380).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **versionNumber** (CONF:1198-5264).
 - a. If versionNumber is present setId **SHALL** be present (CONF:1198-6387).

1.1.1.2 recordTarget

The recordTarget records the administrative and demographic data of the patient whose health information is described by the clinical document; each recordTarget must contain at least one patientRole element

12. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **recordTarget** (CONF:1198-5266).
 - a. Such recordTargets **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **patientRole** (CONF:1198-5267).
 - i. This patientRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5268).
 - ii. This patientRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5271).
 - iii. This patientRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5280).
 1. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5375).
 - iv. This patientRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **patient** (CONF:1198-5283).
 1. This patient **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Patient Name \(PTN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1) (CONF:1198-5284).
 2. This patient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **administrativeGenderCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Administrative Gender \(HL7 V3\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-6394).
 3. This patient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **birthTime** (CONF:1198-5298).
 - a. **SHALL** be precise to year (CONF:1198-5299).
 - b. **SHOULD** be precise to day (CONF:1198-5300).

For cases where information about newborn's time of birth needs to be captured.

- c. **MAY** be precise to the minute (CONF:1198-32418).
4. This patient **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **maritalstatusCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Marital Status](#)

- urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12212 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5303).
5. This patient **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **religiousAffiliationCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Religious Affiliation](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19185 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5317).
 6. This patient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **raceCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Race Category Excluding Nulls](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.2074.1.1.3 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5322).
 7. This patient **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **sdtc:raceCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Race Value Set](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.14914 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7263).
- Note: The sdtc:raceCode is only used to record additional values when the patient has indicated multiple races or additional race detail beyond the five categories required for Meaningful Use Stage 2. The prefix sdtc: SHALL be bound to the namespace “urn:hl7-org:sdtc”. The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the additional raceCode elements.
- a. If sdtc:raceCode is present, then the patient **SHALL** contain [1..1] raceCode (CONF:1198-31347).
 8. This patient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **ethnicGroupCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Ethnicity](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.837 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5323).
 9. This patient **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **sdtc:ethnicGroupCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Detailed Ethnicity](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.877 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32901).
 10. This patient **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **guardian** (CONF:1198-5325).
 - a. The guardian, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5326).
 - b. The guardian, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED)** (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5359).
 - c. The guardian, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5382).
 - i. The telecom, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#)

- urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC**
(CONF:1198-7993).
- d. The guardian, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **guardianPerson** (CONF:1198-5385).
 - i. This guardianPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1)
(CONF:1198-5386).
11. This patient **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **birthplace** (CONF:1198-5395).
- a. The birthplace, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **place** (CONF:1198-5396).
 - i. This place **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **addr** (CONF:1198-5397).
 - 1. This addr **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **country**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Country](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.63
DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-5404).
 - 2. If country is US, this addr **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] state, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet StateValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.1
DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-5402).
Note: A nullFlavor of 'UNK' may be used if the state is unknown.
 - 3. If country is US, this addr **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] postalCode, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet PostalCode
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5403).
12. This patient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **languageCommunication** (CONF:1198-5406).
- a. The languageCommunication, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **languageCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Language](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11526 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5407).
 - b. The languageCommunication, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **modeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [LanguageAbilityMode](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12249 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-5409).
 - c. The languageCommunication, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **proficiencyLevelCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [LanguageAbilityProficiency](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12199 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-9965).

- d. The languageCommunication, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **preferenceInd** (CONF:1198-5414).
- v. This patientRole **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **providerOrganization** (CONF:1198-5416).
 - 1. The providerOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5417).
 - a. Such ids **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-16820).
 - 2. The providerOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-5419).
 - 3. The providerOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5420).
 - a. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7994).
 - 4. The providerOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5422).

1.1.1.3 author

The author element represents the creator of the clinical document. The author may be a device or a person.

- 13. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **author** (CONF:1198-5444).

- a. Such authors **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DTM.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4) (CONF:1198-5445).
- b. Such authors **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedAuthor** (CONF:1198-5448).
 - i. This assignedAuthor **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5449).

If this assignedAuthor is an assignedPerson

- ii. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **id** (CONF:1198-32882) such that it

If id with **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier is unknown then

- 1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor="UNK"** Unknown (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32883).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-32884).
- 3. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@extension** (CONF:1198-32885).

Only if this assignedAuthor is an assignedPerson should the assignedAuthor contain a code.

- iii. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-16787).

1. The code, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-16788).
- iv. This assignedAuthor **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [**US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5452).
- v. This assignedAuthor **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5428).
 1. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7995).
- vi. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-5430).
 1. The assignedPerson, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [**US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-16789).
- vii. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedAuthoringDevice** (CONF:1198-16783).
 1. The assignedAuthoringDevice, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **manufacturerModelName** (CONF:1198-16784).
 2. The assignedAuthoringDevice, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **softwareName** (CONF:1198-16785).
- viii. There **SHALL** be exactly one assignedAuthor/assignedPerson or exactly one assignedAuthor/assignedAuthoringDevice (CONF:1198-16790).

1.1.1.4 dataEnterer

The dataEnterer element represents the person who transferred the content, written or dictated, into the clinical document. To clarify, an author provides the content found within the header or body of a document, subject to their own interpretation; a dataEnterer adds an author's information to the electronic system.

14. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **dataEnterer** (CONF:1198-5441).
 - a. The dataEnterer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-5442).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5443).
 1. Such ids **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-16821).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32173).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [**US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5460).

- iv. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5466).
 - 1. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7996).
- v. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-5469).
 - 1. This assignedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-5470).

1.1.1.5 informant

The informant element describes an information source for any content within the clinical document. This informant is constrained for use when the source of information is an assigned health care provider for the patient.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informant** (CONF:1198-8001) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-8002).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-9945).
 - 1. If assignedEntity/id is a provider then this id, **SHOULD** include zero or one [0..1] id where id/@root = "2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-9946).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32174).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-8220).
 - iv. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-8221).
 - 1. This assignedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-8222).

1.1.1.6 informant

The informant element describes an information source (who is not a provider) for any content within the clinical document. This informant would be used when the source of information has a personal relationship with the patient or is the patient.

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informant** (CONF:1198-31355) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **relatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31356).

1.1.1.7 custodian

The custodian element represents the organization that is in charge of maintaining and is entrusted with the care of the document.

There is only one custodian per CDA document. Allowing that a CDA document may not represent the original form of the authenticated document, the custodian represents the steward of the original source document. The custodian may be the document originator, a health information exchange, or other responsible party.

17. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **custodian** (CONF:1198-5519).

- a. This custodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedCustodian** (CONF:1198-5520).
 - i. This assignedCustodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **representedCustodianOrganization** (CONF:1198-5521).
 1. This representedCustodianOrganization **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5522).
 - a. Such ids **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-16822).
 2. This representedCustodianOrganization **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:1198-5524).
 3. This representedCustodianOrganization **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5525).
 - a. This telecom **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-7998).
 4. This representedCustodianOrganization **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5559).

1.1.1.8 informationRecipient

The informationRecipient element records the intended recipient of the information at the time the document was created. In cases where the intended recipient of the document is the patient's health chart, set the receivedOrganization to the scoping organization for that chart.

18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-5565).

- a. The informationRecipient, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **intendedRecipient** (CONF:1198-5566).
 - i. This intendedRecipient **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32399).
 - ii. This intendedRecipient **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-5567).
 1. The informationRecipient, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-5568).

- iii. This intendedRecipient **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **receivedOrganization** (CONF:1198-5577).
 - 1. The receivedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:1198-5578).

1.1.1.9 legalAuthenticator

The legalAuthenticator identifies the single person legally responsible for the document and must be present if the document has been legally authenticated. A clinical document that does not contain this element has not been legally authenticated.

The act of legal authentication requires a certain privilege be granted to the legal authenticator depending upon local policy. Based on local practice, clinical documents may be released before legal authentication.

All clinical documents have the potential for legal authentication, given the appropriate credentials.

Local policies MAY choose to delegate the function of legal authentication to a device or system that generates the clinical document. In these cases, the legal authenticator is a person accepting responsibility for the document, not the generating device or system.

Note that the legal authenticator, if present, must be a person.

19. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **legalAuthenticator** (CONF:1198-5579).
 - a. The legalAuthenticator, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DTM.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4) (CONF:1198-5580).
 - b. The legalAuthenticator, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **signatureCode** (CONF:1198-5583).
 - i. This signatureCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="S" (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationSignature urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.89 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-5584).

1.1.1.10 sdtc:signatureText

The sdtc:signatureText extension provides a location in CDA for a textual or multimedia depiction of the signature by which the participant endorses and accepts responsibility for his or her participation in the Act as specified in the Participation.typeCode. Details of what goes in the field are described in the HL7 CDA Digital Signature Standard balloted in Fall 2013.

- c. The legalAuthenticator, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:signatureText** (CONF:1198-30810).

Note: The signature can be represented either inline or by reference according to the ED data type. Typical cases for CDA are:

 - 1) Electronic signature: this attribute can represent virtually any electronic signature scheme.
 - 2) Digital signature: this attribute can represent digital signatures by reference to a signature data block that is constructed in accordance to a digital signature standard, such as XML-DSIG, PKCS#7, PGP, etc.
- d. The legalAuthenticator, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-5585).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5586).

1. Such ids **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1]
`@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"` National Provider Identifier
(CONF:1198-16823).
- ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#)
`urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066` **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-17000).
- iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
`urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2`) (CONF:1198-5589).
- iv. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5595).
 1. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#)
`urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20` **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7999).
 - v. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-5597).
 1. This assignedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier:
`urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1`) (CONF:1198-5598).

1.1.1.11 authenticator

The authenticator identifies a participant or participants who attest to the accuracy of the information in the document.

20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **authenticator** (CONF:1198-5607) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DTM.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: `urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4`) (CONF:1198-5608).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **signatureCode** (CONF:1198-5610).
 - i. This signatureCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="S"** (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationSignature
`urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.89` **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-5611).

The sdtc:signatureText extension provides a location in CDA for a textual or multimedia depiction of the signature by which the participant endorses and accepts responsibility for his or her participation in the Act as specified in the Participation.typeCode. Details of what goes in the field are described in the HL7 CDA Digital Signature Standard balloted in Fall of 2013.

- c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:signatureText** (CONF:1198-30811).
Note: The signature can be represented either inline or by reference according to the ED data type. Typical cases for CDA are:
 - 1) Electronic signature: this attribute can represent virtually any electronic signature scheme.
 - 2) Digital signature: this attribute can represent digital signatures by reference to a signature data block that is constructed in accordance to a digital signature standard, such as XML-DSIG, PKCS#7, PGP, etc.
- d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-5612).

- i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-5613).
 - 1. Such ids **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-16824).
- ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-16825).
 - 1. The code, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-16826).
- iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-5616).
- iv. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-5622).
 - 1. Such telecoms **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @use, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Telecom Use \(US Realm Header\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8000).
- v. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-5624).
 - 1. This assignedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-5625).

1.1.1.12 participant

The participant element identifies supporting entities, including parents, relatives, caregivers, insurance policyholders, guarantors, and others related in some way to the patient. A supporting person or organization is an individual or an organization with a relationship to the patient. A supporting person who is playing multiple roles would be recorded in multiple participants (e.g., emergency contact and next-of-kin).

21. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-10003) such that it
- a. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **time** (CONF:1198-10004).
 - b. **SHALL** contain associatedEntity/associatedPerson *AND/OR* associatedEntity/scopingOrganization (CONF:1198-10006).
 - c. When participant/@typeCode is *IND*, associatedEntity/@classCode **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 INDRoleclassCodes *STATIC 2011-09-30* (CONF:1198-10007).

1.1.1.13 inFulfillmentOf

The inFulfillmentOf element represents orders that are fulfilled by this document such as a radiologists' report of an x-ray.

22. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **inFulfillmentof** (CONF:1198-9952).
- a. The inFulfillmentOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **order** (CONF:1198-9953).

- i. This order **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-9954).

1.1.1.14 documentationOf

23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **documentationof** (CONF:1198-14835).

A serviceEvent represents the main act being documented, such as a colonoscopy or a cardiac stress study. In a provision of healthcare serviceEvent, the care providers, PCP, or other longitudinal providers, are recorded within the serviceEvent. If the document is about a single encounter, the providers associated can be recorded in the componentOf/encompassingEncounter template.

- a. The documentationOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-14836).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-14837).
 1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-14838).

1.1.1.15 performer

The performer participant represents clinicians who actually and principally carry out the serviceEvent. In a transfer of care this represents the healthcare providers involved in the current or pertinent historical care of the patient. Preferably, the patient's key healthcare care team members would be listed, particularly their primary physician and any active consulting physicians, therapists, and counselors.

- ii. This serviceEvent **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-14839).
 1. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [x_ServiceEventPerformer](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19601 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-14840).
 2. The performer, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **functionCode** (CONF:1198-16818).
 - a. The functionCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Care Team Member Function](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32889).
 3. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-14841).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-14846).
 - i. Such ids **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-14847).
 - b. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare](#)

Provider Taxonomy

urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC**
(CONF:1198-14842).

1.1.1.16 authorization

The authorization element represents information about the patient's consent.

The type of consent is conveyed in consent/code. Consents in the header have been finalized (consent/statusCode must equal Completed) and should be on file. This specification does not address how 'Privacy Consent' is represented, but does not preclude the inclusion of 'Privacy Consent'.

The authorization consent is used for referring to consents that are documented elsewhere in the EHR or medical record for a health condition and/or treatment that is described in the CDA document.

24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **authorization** (CONF:1198-16792) such that it

a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consent** (CONF:1198-16793).

i. This consent **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-16794).

ii. This consent **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-16795).

Note: The type of consent (e.g., a consent to perform the related serviceEvent) is conveyed in consent/code.

iii. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-16797).

1. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1]

@code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-16798).

1.1.1.17 componentOf

The encompassing encounter represents the setting of the clinical encounter during which the document act(s) or ServiceEvent(s) occurred. In order to represent providers associated with a specific encounter, they are recorded within the encompassingEncounter as participants. In a CCD, the encompassingEncounter may be used when documenting a specific encounter and its participants. All relevant encounters in a CCD may be listed in the encounters section.

25. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-9955).

a. The componentOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-9956).

i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-9959).

ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-9958).

Table 4: Race Value Set

Value Set: Race Value Set urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.14914 (Clinical Focus: All concepts that can describe a person's "race" as defined by the United States Bureau of Census),(Data Element Scope: Personal Demographic information, can be multiple.),(Inclusion Criteria: All descendant concepts from the concept "1000-9 Race", excluding that root concept, as derived from the Race and Ethnicity - CDC code system.),(Exclusion Criteria: Concepts that are not a descendant of "Race", therefore, no concepts descendant from "2133-7 Ethnicity". Also the root concept "Race".) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190522. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.14914/expansion
--

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1002-5	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	American Indian or Alaska Native
1004-1	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	American Indian
1006-6	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Abenaki
1008-2	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Algonquian
1010-8	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Apache
1011-6	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Chiricahua
1012-4	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Fort Sill Apache
1013-2	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Jicarilla Apache
1014-0	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Lipan Apache
1015-7	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Mescalero Apache
...			

Table 5: HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind

Value Set: HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16926 (Clinical Focus: Commonly used confidentiality constraints placed upon clinical documents),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16926/expansion

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
N	HL7Confidentiality	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.25	normal
R	HL7Confidentiality	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.25	restricted
V	HL7Confidentiality	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.25	very restricted

Table 6: Language

Value Set: Language urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11526 A value set of codes defined by Internet RFC 5646.			
Use 2 character code if one exists. Use 3 character code if a 2 character code does not exist. Including type = region is allowed			
See http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry/language-subtag-registry			
Value Set Source: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/code_list.php			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
aa	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Afar
ab	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Abkhazian
ace	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Achinese
ach	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Acoli
ada	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Adangme
ady	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Adyghe; Adygei
ae	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Avestan
af	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Afrikaans
afa	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Afro-Asiatic (Other)
afh	Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12 1	Afrihili
...			

Table 7: Telecom Use (US Realm Header)

Value Set: Telecom Use (US Realm Header) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20 Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
HP	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	Primary home
HV	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	Vacation home
WP	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	Work place
MC	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	Mobile contact

Table 8: Administrative Gender (HL7 V3)

Value Set: Administrative Gender (HL7 V3) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1 (Clinical Focus: The gender of a person used for administrative purposes (as opposed to clinical gender)),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: All codes in the HL7 V3 AdministrativeGender code system),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
F	Administrative Gender	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1	Female
M	Administrative Gender	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1	Male
UN	Administrative Gender	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1	Undifferentiated

Table 9: Marital Status

Value Set: Marital Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12212 (Clinical Focus: The domestic partnership status of a person.),(Data Element Scope: Marital Status),(Inclusion Criteria: All codes in the HL7 MaritalStatus code system),(Exclusion Criteria: Any non-selectable codes)			
This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190517.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12212/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
A	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Annulled
C	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Common Law
D	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Divorced
I	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Interlocutory
L	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Legally Separated
M	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Married
P	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Polygamous
S	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Never Married
T	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	Domestic partner
U	HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2	unmarried
...			

Table 10: Religious Affiliation

Value Set: Religious Affiliation urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19185 (Clinical Focus: A person's faith affiliation),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: All codes in the HL7 ReligiousAffiliation code system),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190425.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19185/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1001	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Adventist
1002	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	African Religions
1003	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Afro-Caribbean Religions
1004	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Agnosticism
1005	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Anglican
1006	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Animism
1007	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Atheism
1008	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Babi & Baha'I faiths
1009	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Baptist
1010	HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 76	Bon
...			

Table 11: Race Category Excluding Nulls

<p>Value Set: Race Category Excluding Nulls urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.2074.1.1.3 (Clinical Focus: The top-level "Race" concepts as defined by US Office of Management and Budget (OMB), excluding "Other race". All "Race" concepts in the Race and Ethnicity - CDC code system roll-up to one of these codes.),(Data Element Scope: Demographic categorization of a person's race (can be multiple).),(Inclusion Criteria: Direct children of the "1000-9 Race" concept in the Race and Ethnicity Code system.),(Exclusion Criteria: Specifically exclude "2131-1 Other Race" and any descendant of the concepts defined in the inclusion criteria.)</p>
--

This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20180618.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.2074.1.1.3/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1002-5	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	American Indian or Alaska Native
2028-9	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Asian
2054-5	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Black or African American
2076-8	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Native Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander
2106-3	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	White

Table 12: Ethnicity

<p>Value Set: Ethnicity urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.837 (Clinical Focus:),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)</p>

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20180618.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.837/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
2135-2	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Hispanic or Latino
2186-5	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Not Hispanic or Latino

Table 13: Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type

<p>Value Set: Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Clinical Focus: A personal or legal relationship records the role of a person in relation to another person, or a person to himself or herself. This value set is to be used when recording relationships based on personal or family ties or through legal assignment of responsibility.),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA v2.1 Any person role such as Guardian and associatedEntity. Many @code references.),(Inclusion Criteria: Union of: (Descendants of _PersonalRelationshipRoleType OR Descendants of RESPRSN)),(Exclusion Criteria: not in the inclusion criteria)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190425.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
ADOPTF	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adoptive father
ADOPTM	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adoptive mother
ADOPTP	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adoptive parent
AUNT	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	aunt
BRO	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	brother
BROINLAW	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	brother-in-law
CHILD	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	child
CHLDADOPT	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adopted child
CHLDFOST	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	foster child
CHLDINLAW	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	child-in-law
...			

Table 14: Country

Value Set: Country urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.63 This identifies the codes for the representation of names of countries, territories and areas of geographical interest. Value Set Source: https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#iso:pub:PUB500001:en			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
AW	ISO 3166 Part 1 Country Codes, 2nd Edition, Alpha-2	urn:oid:1.0.3166.1.2.2	Aruba
IL	ISO 3166 Part 1 Country Codes, 2nd Edition, Alpha-2	urn:oid:1.0.3166.1.2.2	Israel
...			

Table 15: LanguageAbilityMode

Value Set: LanguageAbilityMode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12249 (Clinical Focus: Channels for expressing and receiving human language),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12249/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
ESGN	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Expressed signed
ESP	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Expressed spoken
EWR	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Expressed written
RSGN	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Received signed
RSP	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Received spoken
RWR	HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60	Received written

Table 16: LanguageAbilityProficiency

Value Set: LanguageAbilityProficiency urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12199 (Clinical Focus: A person's level of proficiency in a language),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12199/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
E	HL7LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.61	Excellent
F	HL7LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.61	Fair
G	HL7LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.61	Good
P	HL7LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.61	Poor

Table 17: Detailed Ethnicity

Value Set: Detailed Ethnicity urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.877 (Clinical Focus: All concepts that can describe a person's "ethnicity" as defined by the United States Bureau of Census. This includes the US Office of Management and Budget (OMB) two top-level ethnicity categories, plus all the more detailed descendant ethnicity concepts used by the US Bureau of Census.),(Data Element Scope: Personal Demographic information, can be multiple.),(Inclusion Criteria: All descendant concepts from the concept "2133-7 Ethnicity", excluding that root concept, as derived from the Race and Ethnicity - CDC code system.),(Exclusion Criteria: Concepts that are not a descendant of "2133-7 Ethnicity", therefore, no concepts descendant from "1000-9 Race". Also the root concept "Ethnicity"). This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190518. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.877/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
2137-8	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Spaniard
2138-6	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Andalusian
2139-4	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Asturian
2140-2	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Castilian
2141-0	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Catalonian
2142-8	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Belearic Islander
2143-6	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Gallego
2144-4	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Valencian
2145-1	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Canarian
2146-9	Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 8	Spanish Basque
...			

Table 18: Healthcare Provider Taxonomy

<p>Value Set: Healthcare Provider Taxonomy urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Clinical Focus: Represent the "type" of health care provider individual or organization using the National Uniform Claims Committee (NUCC) code system),(Data Element Scope: The assignedEntity attribute),(Inclusion Criteria: All codes in the NUCC Provider Taxonomy code system),(Exclusion Criteria: None)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190521.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Provider has a medical condition that impairs or limits him/her to practice
101Y00000X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor
101YA0400X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor, Addiction (Substance Use Disorder)
101YM0800X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor, Mental Health
101YP1600X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor, Pastoral
101YP2500X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor, Professional
101YS0200X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Counselor, School
102L00000X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Psychoanalyst
102X00000X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Poetry Therapist
103G00000X	Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.10 1	Behavioral Health & Social Service Providers; Clinical Neuropsychologist
...			

Table 19: INDRoleclassCodes

Value Set: INDRoleclassCodes urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
PRS	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	personal relationship
NOK	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	next of kin
CAREGIVER	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	caregiver
AGNT	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	agent
GUAR	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	guarantor
ECON	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	emergency contact

Table 20: x_ServiceEventPerformer

Value Set: x_ServiceEventPerformer urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19601 Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
PRF	HL7ParticipationType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90	performer
SPRF	HL7ParticipationType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90	secondary performer
PPRF	HL7ParticipationType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90	primary performer

Table 21: Care Team Member Function

Value Set: Care Team Member Function urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30

(Clinical Focus: This set of concepts describes the function performed on a patient-centered care team. The functions on a Care Team are the like defined positions on a sports team, ie. the quarterback, the lineman, or in soccer, the goalie. This value set groups both the old code system and the new code system to support a transition to the new code system - SNOMED CT.),(Data Element Scope: A functional role on a patient's care team.),(Inclusion Criteria: The set of commonly played roles on a patient-centered care team.),(Exclusion Criteria: Functional roles on care teams that are not patient-centered. For example, hospital's may define teams of practitioners who fill roles that are relevant to the function of the hospital's operation. These roles would not be included when they are not roles that would be played on a patient-centered care team.)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
106289002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dentist (occupation)
106292003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Professional nurse (occupation)
106328005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Social worker (occupation)
116154003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient (person)
11911009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nephrologist (occupation)
11935004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Obstetrician (occupation)
133932002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Caregiver (person)
158965000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Medical practitioner (occupation)
158967008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Consultant physician (occupation)
159003003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	School nurse (occupation)
...			

Figure 1: US Realm Header (V3) Example

```
<ClinicalDocument>
  <realmCode code="US" />
  <typeId extension="POCD_HD000040" root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" />
  <!-- CCD template -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- Globally unique identifier for the document -->
  <id extension="TT988" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.99999.1" />
  <code code="34133-9" displayName="Summarization of Episode Note"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <!-- Title of the document -->
  <title>Patient Chart Summary</title>
  <effectiveTime value="201209151030-0800" />
  <confidentialityCode code="N" displayName="normal" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"
codeSystemName="Confidentiality" />
  <languageCode code="en-US" />
  <setId extension="STT988" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.99999.19" />
  <!-- Version of the document -->
  <versionNumber value="1" />
  . .
</ClinicalDocument>
```

Figure 2: recordTarget Example

```
<recordTarget>
  <patientRole>
    <id extension="444-22-2222" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.1" />
    <!-- Example Social Security Number using the actual SSN OID. -->
    <addr use="HP">
      <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
      <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Beaverton</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
      <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2003" use="HP" />
    <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
    <patient>
      <!-- The first name element represents what the patient is known as -->
      <name use="L">
        <given>Eve</given>
        <!-- The "SP" is "Spouse" from
            HL7 Code System EntityNamePartQualifier 2.16.840.1.113883.5.43 -->
        <family qualifier="SP">Betterhalf</family>
      </name>
      <!-- The second name element represents another name
          associated with the patient -->
      <name>
        <given>Eve</given>
        <!-- The "BR" is "Birth" from
            HL7 Code System EntityNamePartQualifier 2.16.840.1.113883.5.43 -->
        <family qualifier="BR">Everywoman</family>
      </name>
      <administrativeGenderCode code="F" displayName="Female"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.1" codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender" />
      <!-- Date of birth need only be precise to the day -->
      <birthTime value="19750501" />
      <maritalStatusCode code="M" displayName="Married"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.2" codeSystemName="MaritalStatusCode" />
      <religiousAffiliationCode code="1013" displayName="Christian (non-Catholic,
non-specific)" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.1076" codeSystemName="HL7 Religious
Affiliation" />
      <!-- CDC Race and Ethnicity code set contains the five minimum
          race and ethnicity categories defined by OMB Standards -->
      <raceCode code="2106-3" displayName="White"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <!-- The raceCode extension is only used if raceCode is valued -->
      <sdtc:raceCode code="2076-8" displayName="Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <ethnicGroupCode code="2186-5" displayName="Not Hispanic or Latino"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <guardian>
        <code code="POWATT" displayName="Power of Attorney"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19830" codeSystemName="ResponsibleParty" />
        <addr use="HP">
          <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
          <city>Beaverton</city>
          <state>OR</state>
          <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
        </addr>
      </guardian>
    </patient>
  </patientRole>
</recordTarget>
```

```

        <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2008" use="MC" />
    <guardianPerson>
        <name>
            <given>Boris</given>
            <given qualifier="CL">Bo</given>
            <family>Betterhalf</family>
        </name>
    </guardianPerson>
</guardian>
<birthplace>
    <place>
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>4444 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Beaverton</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
    </place>
</birthplace>
<languageCommunication>
    <languageCode code="eng" />
    <!-- "eng" is ISO 639-2 alpha-3 code for "English" -->
    <modeCode code="ESP" displayName="Expressed spoken"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.60" codeSystemName="LanguageAbilityMode" />
    <proficiencyLevelCode code="G" displayName="Good"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.61" codeSystemName="LanguageAbilityProficiency" />
    <!-- Patient's preferred language -->
    <preferenceInd value="true" />
</languageCommunication>
</patient>
<providerOrganization>
    <id extension="219BX" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
    <name>The DoctorsTogether Physician Group</name>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-5000" />
    <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>1007 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Portland</city>
        <state>OR</state>
        <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
    </addr>
</providerOrganization>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

```

Figure 3: author Example

```
<author>
  <time value="201209151030-0800" />
  <assignedAuthor>
    <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="163W00000X" displayName="Registered nurse"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53" codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Patricia</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
        <family>Primary</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Figure 4: dateEnterer Example

```
<dataEnterer>
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="333777777" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1007 Healthcare Drive</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1050" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Ellen</given>
        <family>Enter</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</dataEnterer>
```

Figure 5: Assigned Health Care Provider informant Example

```
<informant>
    <assignedEntity>
        <id extension="888888888" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.3" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>1007 Healthcare Drive</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Portland</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1003" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Harold</given>
                <family>Hippocrates</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
        <representedOrganization>
            <name>The DoctorsApart Physician Group</name>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedEntity>
</informant>
```

Figure 6: Personal Relation informant Example

```
<informant>
    <relatedEntity classCode="PRS">
        <!-- classCode "PRS" represents a person with personal relationship with the
patient -->
        <code code="SPS" displayName="SPOUSE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19563"
codeSystemName="Personal Relationship Role Type Value Set" />
        <relatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Boris</given>
                <given qualifier="CL">Bo</given>
                <family>Betterhalf</family>
            </name>
        </relatedPerson>
    </relatedEntity>
</informant>
```

Figure 7: custodian Example

```
<custodian>
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <id extension="321CX" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.3" />
      <name>Good Health HIE</name>
      <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1009" />
      <addr use="WP">
        <streetAddressLine>1009 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
        <city>Portland</city>
        <state>OR</state>
        <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
      </addr>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>
```

Figure 8: informationRecipient Example

```
<informationRecipient>
  <intendedRecipient>
    <informationRecipient>
      <name>
        <given>Sara</given>
        <family>Specialize</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </informationRecipient>
    <receivedOrganization>
      <name>The DoctorsApart Physician Group</name>
    </receivedOrganization>
  </intendedRecipient>
</informationRecipient>
```

Figure 9: Digital signature Example

```
<sdtc:signatureText mediaType="text/xml"
representation="B64">omSJUEdmde9j44zmMiromSJUEdmde9j44zmMir6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83
6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83MNYD83jmMdomSJUEdmde9j44zmMir
... MNYD83jmMdomSJUEdmde9j44zmMir6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83
4zmMir6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83==</sdtc:signatureText>
```

Figure 10: legalAuthenticator Example

```
<legalAuthenticator>
  <time value="20120915223615-0800" />
  <signatureCode code="S" />
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53" codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Patricia</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
        <family>Primary</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>
```

Figure 11: authenticator Example

```
<authenticator>
  <time value="201209151030-0800" />
  <signatureCode code="S" />
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53" codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Patricia</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
        <family>Primary</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</authenticator>
```

Figure 12: Supporting Person participant Example

```

<participant typeCode="IND">
    <!-- typeCode "IND" represents an individual -->
    <associatedEntity classCode="NOK">
        <!-- classCode "NOK" represents the patient's next of kin-->
        <addr use="HP">
            <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Beaverton</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2008" use="MC" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Boris</given>
                <given qualifier="CL">Bo</given>
                <family>Betterhalf</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
<!-- Entities playing multiple roles are recorded in multiple participants -->
<participant typeCode="IND">
    <associatedEntity classCode="ECON">
        <!-- classCode "ECON" represents an emergency contact -->
        <addr use="HP">
            <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Beaverton</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2008" use="MC" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Boris</given>
                <given qualifier="CL">Bo</given>
                <family>Betterhalf</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>

```

Figure 13: inFulfillmentOf Example

```

<inFulfillmentOf typeCode="FLFS">
    <order classCode="ACT" moodCode="RQO">
        <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" extension="1298989898" />
        <code code="388975008" displayName="Weight Reduction Consultation"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="CPT4" />
    </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>

```

Figure 14: performer Example

```
<performer typeCode="PRF">
  <functionCode code="PCP"
    displayName="Primary Care Provider"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.88"
    codeSystemName="ParticipationFunction">
    <originalText>Primary Care Provider</originalText>
  </functionCode>
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53" codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Patricia</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
        <family>Primary</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id extension="219BX" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
      <name>The DoctorsTogether Physician Group</name>
      <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-5000" />
      <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>1004 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Portland</city>
        <state>OR</state>
        <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
      </addr>
    </representedOrganization>
  </assignedEntity>
</performer>
```

Figure 15: documentationOf Example

```
<documentationOf>
  <serviceEvent classCode="PCPR">
    <!-- The effectiveTime reflects the provision of care summarized in the document.
    In this scenario, the provision of care summarized is the lifetime for the patient -->
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="19750501" />
      <!-- The low value represents when the summarized provision of care began.
      In this scenario, the patient's date of birth -->
      <high value="20120915" />
      <!-- The high value represents when the summarized provision of care being
ended.
      In this scenario, when chart summary was created -->
    </effectiveTime>
    <performer typeCode="PRF">
      <functionCode code="PCP"
        displayName="Primary Care Provider"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.88"
        codeSystemName="ParticipationFunction">
        <originalText>Primary Care Provider</originalText>
      </functionCode>
      <assignedEntity>
        <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53"
          codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy" />
        <addr>
          <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
          <city>Portland</city>
          <state>OR</state>
          <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
          <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
        <assignedPerson>
          <name>
            <given>Patricia</given>
            <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
            <family>Primary</family>
            <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
          </name>
        </assignedPerson>
        <representedOrganization>
          <id extension="219BX" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
          <name>The DoctorsTogether Physician Group</name>
          <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-5000" />
          <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>1004 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Portland</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
          </addr>
        </representedOrganization>
      </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
  </serviceEvent>
```

```
</documentationOf>
```

Figure 16: authorization Example

```
<authorization typeCode="AUTH">
    <consent classCode="CONS" moodCode="EVN">
        <id root="629deb70-5306-11df-9879-0800200c9a66" />
        <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" code="64293-4"
displayName="Procedure consent" />
        <statusCode code="completed" />
    </consent>
</authorization>
```

1.1.2 Care Plan (V2)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.15:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 22: Care Plan (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (optional) US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (required) Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section (optional) Goals Section (required) Health Concerns Section (V2) (required) Interventions Section (V3) (optional)

CARE PLAN FRAMEWORK

A Care Plan (including Home Health Plan of Care (HHPoC)) is a consensus-driven dynamic plan that represents a patient's and Care Team Members' prioritized concerns, goals, and planned interventions. It serves as a blueprint shared by all Care Team Members (including the patient, their caregivers and providers), to guide the patient's care. A Care Plan integrates multiple interventions proposed by multiple providers and disciplines for multiple conditions.

A Care Plan represents one or more Plan(s) of Care and serves to reconcile and resolve conflicts between the various Plans of Care developed for a specific patient by different providers. While both a plan of care and a care plan include the patient's life goals and require Care Team Members (including patients) to prioritize goals and interventions, the reconciliation process becomes more complex as the number of plans of care increases. The Care Plan also serves to enable longitudinal coordination of care.

The CDA Care Plan represents an instance of this dynamic Care Plan at a point in time. The CDA document itself is NOT dynamic.

Key differentiators between a Care Plan CDA and CCD (another “snapshot in time” document):

There are 2 required sections:

- o Health Concerns
- o Interventions

There are 2 optional sections:

- o Goals

- o Outcomes

- Provides the ability to identify patient and provider priorities with each act

- Provides a header participant to indicate occurrences of Care Plan review

A care plan document can include entry references from the information in these sections to the information (entries) in other sections.

Please see Volume 1 of this guide to view a Care Plan Relationship diagram and story board.

Table 23: Care Plan (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.15:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28741	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28742	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.15
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32877	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28745	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32959	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10 (Care Plan Document Type)
setId	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32321	
versionNumber	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32322	
informationRecipient	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31993	
intendedRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-31994	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31996	
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31997	
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31998	
informationRecipient	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31999	
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-32320	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
receivedOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32000	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32001	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-32002	
standardIndustryClassCode	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32003	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
authenticator	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31910	
time	1..1	SHALL		1198-31911	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
signatureCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31912	
sdtc:signatureText	0..1	MAY		1198-31913	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31914	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31915	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31916	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31917	ONESELF
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31918	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 11 (HL7RoleCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.111
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31677	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31678	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = VRF
functionCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31679	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31680	425268008
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31681	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
time	1..1	SHALL		1198-31682	
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31683	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31686	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = ASSIGNED
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31684	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31685	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32367	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31895	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31896	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = IND
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				31897	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31898	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 (INDRoleclassCodes)
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31899	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31900	
documentationOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-31901	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-31902	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31903	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PCPR
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-31904	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-32330	
high	0..1	MAY		1198-32331	
performer	1..*	SHALL		1198-31905	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31907	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31908	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-31909	
assignedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-32328	
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-32329	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
relatedDocument	0..*	MAY		1198-29893	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31889	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.11610 (x_ActRelationshipDocument)
parentDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-29894	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-32949	
setId	1..1	SHALL		1198-29895	
versionNumber	1..1	SHALL		1198-29896	
componentOf	0..1	SHOULD		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32004	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-32005	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-32007	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28753	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-28754	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28755	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28756	Health Concerns Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.58:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28761	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28762	Goals Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.60
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28763	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28764	Interventions Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-29596	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29597	Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.61

1.1.3 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier:
[urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01](#)).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28741) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.15" (CONF:1198-28742).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32877).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32934).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28745).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Care Plan Document Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32959).
- 4. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **setID** (CONF:1198-32321).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **versionNumber** (CONF:1198-32322).

1.1.3.1 informationRecipient

- 6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-31993) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **intendedRecipient** (CONF:1198-31994).
 - i. This intendedRecipient **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31996).
 - ii. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1198-31997).
 - iii. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-31998).
 - iv. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-31999).
 - 1. The informationRecipient, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-32320).
 - v. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **receivedOrganization** (CONF:1198-32000).
 - 1. The receivedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32001).
 - 2. The receivedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-32002).
 - 3. The receivedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **standardIndustryClassCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32003).

1.1.3.2 authenticator

- 7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **authenticator** (CONF:1198-31910) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **time** (CONF:1198-31911).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **signatureCode** (CONF:1198-31912).
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:signatureText** (CONF:1198-31913).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-31914).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31915).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-31916).
 - 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ONESELF"** Self (CONF:1198-31917).

2. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" (CodeSystem: HL7RoleCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.111) (CONF:1198-31918).

1.1.3.3 participant

8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31677) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="VRF" Verifier (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-31678).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **functionCode** (CONF:1198-31679).
 - i. This functionCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="425268008" Review of Care Plan (CONF:1198-31680).
 - ii. This functionCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-31681).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **time** (CONF:1198-31682).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31683).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ASSIGNED" (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110) (CONF:1198-31686).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31684).
 - iii. This associatedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-31685).
 1. The code, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32367).

1.1.3.4 participant

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31895) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="IND" Indirect (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-31896).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31897).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [INDRoleclassCodes](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-31898).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31899).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-31900).

1.1.3.5 documentationOf

The serviceEvent describes the provision of healthcare over a period of time. The duration over which care was provided is indicated in serviceEvent/effectiveTime. Additional data from outside this duration may also be included if it is relevant to care provided during that time range (e.g., reviewed during the stated time range).

10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-31901) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-31902).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "PCPR" Care Provision (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-31903).
 - ii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-31904).
 1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-32330).
 2. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1198-32331).
 - iii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-31905) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-31907).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31908).
 - b. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-31909).
 - c. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-32328).
 - i. This assignedPerson **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-32329).

1.1.3.6 relatedDocument

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **relatedDocument** (CONF:1198-29893) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **x_ActRelationshipDocument** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11610 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-31889).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **parentDocument** (CONF:1198-29894).
 - i. This parentDocument **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32949).
 - ii. This parentDocument **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **setId** (CONF:1198-29895).
 - iii. This parentDocument **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **versionNumber** (CONF:1198-29896).

1.1.3.7 componentOf

12. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-32004) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-32005).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-32007).

1.1.3.8 component

13. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28753).
 - a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-28754).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28755) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Concerns Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28756).
 - ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28761) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Goals Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.60) (CONF:1198-28762).
 - iii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28763) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Interventions Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28764).
 - iv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29596) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.61) (CONF:1198-29597).
 - v. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31044).

Table 24: x_ActRelationshipDocument

Value Set: x_ActRelationshipDocument urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11610 Used to enumerate the relationships between two clinical documents for document management.			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
RPLC	HL7ActRelationshipType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 02	Replaces
APND	HL7ActRelationshipType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 02	Is appendage
XFRM	HL7ActRelationshipType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 02	Transformation

Table 25: Care Plan Document Type

Value Set: Care Plan Document Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10 (Clinical Focus: Terms used to identify documents that represent a Care Plan),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: This value set expansion is currently missing two pending LOINC concepts: 93023-0 Pharmacist Plan of care note and 93024-8 Pharmacist Consult Note.),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
18776-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Plan of care note
64295-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nurse Plan of care note
74156-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Oncology Plan of care and summary note
77442-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiology Plan of care note
77443-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Allergy and immunology Plan of care note
77444-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Audiology Plan of care note
77445-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Critical care medicine Plan of care note
77446-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Child and adolescent psychiatry Plan of care note
80739-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Infectious disease Plan of care note
80740-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Hematology Plan of care note
...			

Figure 17: Care Plan Patient authenticator Example

```
<!-- This authenticator represents patient agreement or  
sign-off of the Care Plan-->  
<authenticator>  
    <time value="20130802" />  
    <signatureCode code="S" />  
    <sdtc:signatureText mediaType="text/xml"  
representation="B64">omSJUEdmde9j44zmMiromSJUEdmde9j44zmMirdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83  
6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83MNYD83jmMdomSJUEdmde9j44zmMir6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83  
MNYD83jmMdomSJUEdmde9j44zmMir6edjzMMIjdMDSSsWdIJdksIJR3373jeu83==</sdtc:signatureText>  
    <assignedEntity>  
        <id extension="996-756-495" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />  
        <code code="ONESELF" displayName="Self" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"  
codeSystemName="HL7 Role code" />  
    </assignedEntity>  
</authenticator>
```

Figure 18: Care Plan Review Example

```
<!-- This participant represents the Care Plan review.  
If the date in the time element is in the past,  
then this review has already taken place.  
If the date in the time element is in the future,  
then this is the date of the next scheduled review. -->  
<!-- This example shows a Care Plan Review that has already taken place -->  
<participant typeCode="IND">  
    <functionCode code="425268008" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"  
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Review of Care Plan" />  
    <time value="20130801" />  
    <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">  
        <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />  
    </associatedEntity>  
</participant>
```

Figure 19: Care Plan Caregiver participant Example

```
<participant typeCode="IND">
    <functionCode code="407543004" displayName="Primary Carer"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
    <!-- Caregiver -->
    <associatedEntity classCode="CAREGIVER">
        <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Ann Arbor</city>
            <state>MI</state>
            <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:(999)555-1212" use="WP" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
                <given>Martha</given>
                <family>Jones</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

Figure 20: Care Plan performer Example

```
<performer typeCode="PRF">
    <time value="20130715223615-0800" />
    <assignedEntity>
        <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="59058001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT" displayName="General Physician" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
            <city>Portland</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)-1004" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Patricia</given>
                <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
                <family>Primary</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</performer>
```

Figure 21: Care Plan relatedDocument Example

```
<!-- This document is the second in a set - relatedDocument  
describes the parent document-->  
<relatedDocument typeCode="RPLC">  
  <parentDocument>  
    <id root="223769be-f6ee-4b04-a0ce-b56ae998c880" />  
    <code code="18776-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"  
displayName="Care Plan" />  
    <setId root="004bb033-b948-4f4c-b5bf-a8dbd7d8dd40" />  
    <versionNumber value="1" />  
  </parentDocument>  
</relatedDocument>
```

1.1.4 Consultation Note (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.4:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 26: Consultation Note (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (optional) Chief Complaint Section (optional) Reason for Visit Section (optional) Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (optional) History of Present Illness Section (required) General Status Section (optional) Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (optional) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Section (optional) Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional) US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (required) Mental Status Section (V2) (optional) Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Results Section (entries required) (V3) (optional) Past Medical History (V3) (optional) Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (optional) Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (required) Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional) Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Family History Section (V3) (optional) Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required)

Contained By:	Contains:
	(V3) (required)

The Consultation Note is generated by a request from a clinician for an opinion or advice from another clinician. Consultations may involve face-to-face time with the patient or may fall under the auspices of telemedicine visits. Consultations may occur while the patient is inpatient or ambulatory. The Consultation Note should also be used to summarize an Emergency Room or Urgent Care encounter. A Consultation Note includes the reason for the referral, history of present illness, physical examination, and decision-making components (Assessment and Plan).

Table 27: Consultation Note (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.4:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8375	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10040	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.4
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32502	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17176	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31 (ConsultDocumentType)
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31656	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31657	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CALLBACK
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31658	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31659	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 (HL7RoleClass) = ASSIGNED
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31660	
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31661	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-31662	
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31663	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31664	
scopingOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-31665	
inFulfillmentOf	1..*	SHALL		1198-8382	
order	1..1	SHALL		1198-29923	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-29924	
componentOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-8386	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-8387	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8388	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-	US Realm Date and Time

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8389	(DT.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3)
responsibleParty	0..1	MAY		1198-8391	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32904	
encounterParticipant	0..*	MAY		1198-8392	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32902	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-8397	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-28895	
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28896	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28897	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28898	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28899	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28900	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28901	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28904	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28905	Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28906	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28907	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4)
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28908	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28909	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier:)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28910	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28911	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28912	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28913	Chief Complaint Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.1.13.2.1
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28915	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28916	Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.13
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28917	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28918	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28919	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28920	General Status Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.2.5
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28921	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28922	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28923	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28924	Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28925	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Medications Section (entries

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				28926	required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28928	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28929	Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28930	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28931	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28932	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28933	Results Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28934	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28935	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28936	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28937	Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28942	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28943	Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28944	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28945	Functional Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30237	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Review of Systems Section

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				30238	(identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.18)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30904	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30905	Medical Equipment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30906	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30907	Mental Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30909	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30910	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.57)

1.1.5 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(v3\)](#) template (identifier:
[urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01](#)).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8375) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.4"** (CONF:1198-10040).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32502).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32935).

The Consultation Note recommends use of the document type code 11488-4 "Consult Note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ConsultDocumentType](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31 DYNAMIC](#) (CONF:1198-17176).

1.1.5.1 participant

This participant represents the person to contact for questions about the consult summary. This call back contact individual may be a different person than the individual(s) identified in the author or legalAuthenticator participant.

4. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31656) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CALLBCK" call back contact (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **DYNAMIC**) (CONF:1198-31657).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31658).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ASSIGNED" assigned entity (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **DYNAMIC**) (CONF:1198-31659).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31660).
 - iii. This associatedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1198-31661).
 - iv. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-31662).
 - v. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31663).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-31664).
 - vi. This associatedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **scopingOrganization** (CONF:1198-31665).

1.1.5.2 inFulfillmentOf

The inFulfillmentOf element describes prior orders that are fulfilled (in whole or part) by the service events described in the Consultation Note. For example, a prior order might be the consultation that is being reported in the note.

5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **inFulfillmentof** (CONF:1198-8382).
 - a. Such inFulfillmentOfs **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **order** (CONF:1198-29923). Where a referral is being fulfilled by this consultation, this id would be the same as the id in the Patient Referral Act template.
 - i. This order **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-29924).

1.1.5.3 componentOf

A Consultation Note is always associated with an encounter; the id element of the encompassingEncounter is required to be present and represents the identifier for the encounter.

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-8386).
 - a. This componentOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-8387).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8388).
 - ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-8389).

- iii. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **responsibleParty** (CONF:1198-8391).
 - 1. The responsibleParty, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32904).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson or a representedOrganization or both (CONF:1198-32905).

The encounterParticipant element represents persons who participated in the encounter and not necessarily the entire episode of care.

- iv. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **encounterParticipant** (CONF:1198-8392).
 - 1. The encounterParticipant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32902).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson or a representedOrganization or both (CONF:1198-32906).

1.1.5.4 component

- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-8397).
 - a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-28895).
 - i. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28896) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) (CONF:1198-28897).
 - ii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28898) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment and Plan Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-28899).
 - iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28900) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-28901).
 - iv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28904) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) (CONF:1198-28905).
 - v. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28906) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-28907).

- vi. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28908) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28909).
- vii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28910) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28911).
- viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28912) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) (CONF:1198-28913).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28915) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) (CONF:1198-28916).
- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28917) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28918).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28919) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [General Status Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5) (CONF:1198-28920).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28921) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Past Medical History \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28922).
- xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28923) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28924).

xiv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28925) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries required\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28926).

xv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28928) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28929).

xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28930) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28931).

xvii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28932) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28933).

xviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28934) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28935).

xix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28936) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28937).

xx. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28942) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directives Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28943).

xxi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28944) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28945).

xxii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30237) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#)
(identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
(CONF:1198-30238).

xxiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30904) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medical Equipment Section \(v2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30905).

xxiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30906) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Section \(v2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30907).

xxv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30909) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#)
(identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
(CONF:1198-30910).

xxvi. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-28939).

xxvii. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain a Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) when either a Chief Complaint Section (1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) or a Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) is present (CONF:1198-28940).

xxviii. **SHALL** include a Reason for Referral or Reason for Visit section (CONF:1198-9504).

xxix. **SHALL** include an Assessment and Plan Section, or both an Assessment Section and a Plan of Treatment Section (CONF:1198-9501).

Table 28: ConsultDocumentType

Value Set: ConsultDocumentType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31 (Clinical Focus: A classification of a document by the author's specialty, role, setting, or some combination of these properties to find documents that are consider a consultation.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190516. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11488-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Consult note
34099-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiology Consult note
34100-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Intensive care unit Consult note
34101-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	General medicine Outpatient Consult note
34102-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Psychiatry Hospital Consult note
34103-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Pulmonary Consult note
34104-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Hospital Consult note
34749-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Anesthesiology Outpatient Consult note
34756-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dentistry Consult note
34758-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dermatology Consult note
...			

Figure 22: Consultation Note Callback participant Example

```
<participant typeCode="CALLBCK">
    <time value="20050329224411+0500" />
    <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">
        <id extension="99999999" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="20000000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
displayName="Allopathic & Osteopathic Physicians" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>1002 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
            <city>Ann Arbor</city>
            <state>MI</state>
            <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:555-555-1002" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Henry</given>
                <family>Seven</family>
                <suffix>DO</suffix>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

Figure 23: Consultation Note (V2) inFulfillmentOf Example

```
<inFulfillmentOf typeCode="FLFS">
    <order classCode="ACT" moodCode="RQO">
        <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" extension="1298989898" />
        <code code="388975008" displayName="Weight Reduction Consultation"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="CPT4" />
    </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>
```

Figure 24: Consultation Note structuredBody Example

```
<component>
  <structuredBody>
    <component>
      <section>
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1"
          extension="2015-08-01" />
        <!-- Allergies section template -->
        <code code="48765-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Allergies, adverse reactions, alerts"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" />
        <title>Allergies, Adverse Reactions, Alerts</title>
        ...
      ...
      </section>
    </component>
    <component>
      <section>
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8" />
        <!-- Assessment-->
        <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
          code="51848-0" displayName="ASSESSMENT" />
        <title>ASSESSMENT</title>
        ...
      ...
      </section>
    </component>
    <component>
      <section>
        <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4" />
        <!-- History of Present Illness -->
        <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
          code="10164-2" displayName="HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS" />
        <title>HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS</title>
        ...
      ...
      </section>
    </component>
    <component>
      <section>
        <!--MEDICATION SECTION (V2) (coded entries required) -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
        <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="HISTORY OF MEDICATION USE" />
        <title>MEDICATIONS</title>
        ...
      ...
      </section>
    </component>
    <component>
      <section>
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10" extension="2015-08-01" />
        <!-- Physical Exam (V3) -->
```

```

<code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
      code="29545-1" displayName="PHYSICAL FINDINGS" />
<title>PHYSICAL EXAMINATION</title>
...
</section>
</component>
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10"
                extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Plan of Treatment Section (V2) template -->
    <code code="18776-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="Treatment plan" />
    <title>PLAN OF CARE</title>
    ...
  </section>
</component>
<component>
  <section>
    <!-- Problem Section (entries required) (V3) -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1" extension="2015-08-01"
/>
    <code code="11450-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="PROBLEM LIST" />
    <title>PROBLEMS</title>
    ...
  </section>
</component>
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7"
                extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) -->
    <code code="47519-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="HISTORY OF PROCEDURES" />
    <title>PROCEDURES</title>
    ...
  </section>
</component>
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1"
                extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Reason for Referral Section V2 -->
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
          code="42349-1" displayName="REASON FOR REFERRAL" />
    <title>REASON FOR REFERRAL</title>
    ...
  </section>
</component>

```

```

        </section>
    </component>
    <component>
        <section>
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1" extension="2015-08-01"
/>
            <!-- Results Section (entries required) (V3) -->
            <code code="30954-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                  codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="RESULTS" />
            <title>RESULTS</title>
            ...

        </section>
    </component>
    <component>
        <section>
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17" extension="2015-08-01"
/>
            <!-- Social history section (V3)-->
            <code code="29762-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                  displayName="Social History" />
            <title>SOCIAL HISTORY</title>
            ...

        </section>
    </component>
    <component>
        <section>
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1" extension="2015-08-01"
/>
            <!-- Vital Signs Section (V3)-->
            <code code="8716-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                  codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="VITAL SIGNS" />
            <title>VITAL SIGNS</title>
            ...

        </section>
    </component>
</structuredBody>
</component>

```

1.1.6 Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.2:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 29: Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (required) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional)

Contained By:	Contains:
	<p>Nutrition Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Mental Status Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Results Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Payers Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Social History Section (V3) (required)</p> <p>Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Family History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p>

This document type was originally based on the Continuity of Care Document (CCD) Release 1.1 which itself was derived from HITSP C32 and CCD Release 1.0.

The Continuity of Care Document (CCD) represents a core data set of the most relevant administrative, demographic, and clinical information facts about a patient's healthcare, covering one or more healthcare encounters. It provides a means for one healthcare practitioner, system, or setting to aggregate all of the pertinent data about a patient and forward it to another to support the continuity of care.

The primary use case for the CCD is to provide a snapshot in time containing the germane clinical, demographic, and administrative data for a specific patient. The key characteristic of a CCD is that the ServiceEvent is constrained to "PCPR". This means it does not function to report new ServiceEvents associated with performing care. It reports on care that has already been provided. The CCD provides a historical tally of the care over a range of time and is not a record of new services delivered.

More specific use cases, such as a Discharge Summary, Transfer Summary, Referral Note, Consultation Note, or Progress Note, are available as alternative documents in this guide.

Table 30: Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.2:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8450	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10038	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.2
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32516	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17180	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17181	34133-9
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32138	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
author	1..*	SHALL		1198-9442	
assignedAuthor	1..1	SHALL		1198-9443	
documentationOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-8452	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-8480	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8453	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PCPR
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8481	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-8454	
high	1..1	SHALL		1198-8455	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8482	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8458	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = PRF
assignedEntity	0..1	MAY		1198-8459	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30882	
assignedPerson	0..1	MAY		1198-32467	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30659	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30660	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30661	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30662	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30663	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30664	Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30665	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30666	Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30667	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30668	Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30669	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30670	Results Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30671	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30672	Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30673	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30674	Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.22:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30675	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30676	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30677	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30678	Functional Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30679	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30680	Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.2.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30681	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30682	Medical Equipment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30683	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30684	Payers Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30685	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30686	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30687	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30688	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30689	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30690	Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32143	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32144	Mental Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32624	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32625	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)

1.1.7 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8450) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.2" (CONF:1198-10038).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32516).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32936).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17180).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="34133-9" Summarization of Episode Note (CONF:1198-17181).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32138).

1.1.7.1 author

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **author** (CONF:1198-9442).
 - a. Such authors **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedAuthor** (CONF:1198-9443).
 - i. Such assignedAuthors **SHALL** contain (exactly one [1..1] assignedPerson) or (exactly one [1..1] assignedAuthoringDevice and exactly one [1..1] representedOrganization) (CONF:1198-8456).
 - ii. If assignedAuthor has an associated representedOrganization with no assignedPerson or assignedAuthoringDevice, then the value for "ClinicalDocument/author/assignedAuthor/id/@NullFlavor" **SHALL** be "NA" "Not applicable" 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008 NullFlavor STATIC (CONF:1198-8457).

1.1.7.2 documentationOf

The documentationOf relationship in a Continuity Care Document contains the representation of providers who are wholly or partially responsible for the safety and well-being of a subject of care.

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-8452).

The main activity being described by a CCD is the provision of healthcare over a period of time. This is shown by setting the value of serviceEvent/@classCode to “PCPR” (care provision) and indicating the duration over which care was provided in serviceEvent/effectiveTime. Additional data from outside this duration may also be included if it is relevant to care provided during that time range (e.g., reviewed during the stated time range).

NOTE: Implementations originating a CCD should take care to discover what the episode of care being summarized is. For example, when a patient fills out a form providing relevant health history, the episode of care being documented might be from birth to the present.

- a. This documentationOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-8480).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="PCPR"** Care Provision (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8453).
 - ii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-8481).
 1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-8454).
 2. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1198-8455).

1.1.7.3 performer

The serviceEvent/performer represents the healthcare providers involved in the current or pertinent historical care of the patient. Preferably, the patient’s key healthcare providers would be listed, particularly their primary physician and any active consulting physicians, therapists, and counselors.

- iii. This serviceEvent **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-8482).
 1. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="PRF"** Participation physical performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8458).
 2. The performer, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-8459).
 - a. The assignedEntity, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30882) such that it
 - i. If this assignedEntity is an assignedPerson, the assignedEntity/id **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1198-32466).
 - b. The assignedEntity, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1198-32467).

1.1.7.4 component

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30659).

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30660).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30661) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30662).
 - ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30663) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries required\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30664).
 - iii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30665) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30666).
 - iv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30667) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries required\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30668).
 - v. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30669) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30670).
 - vi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30671) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directives Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30672).
 - vii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30673) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounters Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30674).
 - viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30675) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(v3\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30676).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30677) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Section \(v2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30678).
- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30679) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30680).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30681) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medical Equipment Section \(v2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30682).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30683) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Payers Section \(v3\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30684).
- xiii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30685) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30686).
- xiv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30687) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(v3\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30688).
- xv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30689) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30690).

xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32143) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Section \(V2\)](#)
(identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-32144).

xvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32624) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#)
(identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
(CONF:1198-32625).

Figure 25: CCD (V2) author Example

```
<author>
  <time value="201209151030-0800" />
  <assignedAuthor>
    <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" codeSystemName="Healthcare Provider Taxonomy" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1004 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
      <city>Portland</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Patricia</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
        <family>Primary</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Figure 26: CCD (V2) Performer Example

```
<performer typeCode="PRF">
    <functionCode code="PP" displayName="Primary Performer"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.443" codeSystemName="Provider Role">
        <originalText>Primary Care Provider</originalText>
    </functionCode>
    <assignedEntity>
        <id extension="5555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" codeSystemName="NUCC" />
        <addr>
            ...
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1004" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Patricia</given>
                <given qualifier="CL">Patty</given>
                <family>Primary</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
        <representedOrganization>
            ...
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedEntity>
</performer>
```

Figure 27: CCD (V2) serviceEvent Example

```
<documentationOf>
    <serviceEvent classCode="PCPR">
        <!-- The effectiveTime reflects the provision of care summarized in the document.
            In this scenario, the provision of care summarized is the lifetime for
            the patient -->
        <effectiveTime>
            <low value="19750501" />
            <!-- The low value represents when the summarized provision of care began.
                In this scenario, the patient's date of birth -->
            <high value="20120915" />
            <!-- The high value represents when the summarized provision of care being
                ended. In this scenario, when chart summary was created -->
        </effectiveTime>
        <performer typeCode="PRF">
            ...
        </performer>
    </serviceEvent>
</documentationOf>
```

1.1.8 Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.5:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 31: Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 (optional) Findings Section (DIR) (required) Fetus Subject Context (optional) Observer Context (optional) Procedure Context (optional) SOP Instance Observation (optional) Text Observation (optional) Code Observations (optional) Quantity Measurement Observation (optional) US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (optional) Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) (optional) Physician of Record Participant (V2) (optional) US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (optional)

A Diagnostic Imaging Report (DIR) is a document that contains a consulting specialist's interpretation of image data. It conveys the interpretation to the referring (ordering) physician and becomes part of the patient's medical record. It is for use in Radiology, Endoscopy, Cardiology, and other imaging specialties.

Table 32: Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.5:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8404	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10042	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.5
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32515	2014-06-09
id	1..1	SHALL		1198-30932	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-30933	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14833	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14834	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5 (LOINC Imaging Document Codes)
informant	0..0	SHALL NOT		1198-8410	
informationRecipient	0..*	MAY		1198-8411	
participant	0..1	MAY		1198-8414	
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31198	
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31199	
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-31200	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
inFulfillmentOf	0..*	MAY		1198-30936	
order	1..1	SHALL		1198-30937	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30938	
documentationOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-8416	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-8431	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8430	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
id	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8418	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8419	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8422	Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.6.2.1:2014-06-09
relatedDocument	0..1	MAY		1198-8432	
parentDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-32089	
id	1..1	SHALL		1198-32090	
componentOf	0..1	MAY		1198-30939	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-30940	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30941	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-30943	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.5.3
responsibleParty	0..1	MAY		1198-30945	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-30946	
encounterParticipant	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30948	Physician of Record Participant (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.6.2.2:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-14907	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30695	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30696	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30697	Findings Section (DIR) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.6.1.2
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30698	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30699	DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.6.1.1
component	0..*	MAY		1198-31055	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				31056	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31057	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31207	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.59 (DIRSectionTypeCodes)
title	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31058	
text	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31059	
subject	0..*	MAY		1198-31215	
relatedSubject	1..1	SHALL		1198-31216	Fetus Subject Context (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3)
author	0..*	MAY		1198-31217	
assignedAuthor	1..1	SHALL		1198-31218	Observer Context (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31213	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31214	Procedure Context (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31357	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31358	Text Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31359	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31360	Code Observations (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31361	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31362	Quantity Measurement Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31363	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31364	SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..*	MAY		1198-31208	

1.1.9 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8404) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.5" (CONF:1198-10042).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1198-32515).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32937).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1198-30932).
 - a. This id **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root (CONF:1198-30933).

OIDs SHALL be represented in dotted decimal notation, where each decimal number is either 0 or starts with a nonzero digit. More formally, an OID SHALL be in the form of the regular expression: ([0-2])(.[(1-9][0-9]*|0))+

- i. The ClinicalDocument/id/@root attribute **SHALL** be a syntactically correct OID, and **SHALL NOT** be a UUID (CONF:1198-30934).
- ii. OIDs **SHALL** be no more than 64 characters in length (CONF:1198-30935).

Preferred code is 18748-4 LOINC Diagnostic Imaging Report

4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-14833).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [LOINC Imaging Document Codes](#) urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5 DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-14834).
5. **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **informant** (CONF:1198-8410).

1.1.9.1 informationRecipient

6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-8411).
 - a. The physician requesting the imaging procedure (ClinicalDocument/participant[@typeCode=REF]/associatedEntity), if present, **SHOULD** also be recorded as an informationRecipient, unless in the local setting another physician (such as the attending physician for an inpatient) is known to be the appropriate recipient of the report (CONF:1198-8412).
 - b. When no referring physician is present, as in the case of self-referred screening examinations allowed by law, the intendedRecipient **MAY** be absent. The intendedRecipient **MAY** also be the health chart of the patient, in which case the receivedOrganization **SHALL** be the scoping organization of that chart (CONF:1198-8413).

1.1.9.2 participant

If participant is present, the associatedEntity/associatedPerson element SHALL be present and SHALL represent the physician requesting the imaging procedure (the referring physician AssociatedEntity that is the target of ClinicalDocument/participant@typeCode=REF).

7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **participant** (CONF:1198-8414) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31198).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31199).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-31200).

1.1.9.3 inFulfillmentOf

An inFulfillmentOf element represents the Placer Order that is either a group of orders (modeled as PlacerGroup in the Placer Order RMIM of the Orders & Observations domain) or a single order item (modeled as ObservationRequest in the same RMIM). This optionality reflects two major approaches to the grouping of procedures as implemented in the installed base of imaging information systems. These approaches differ in their handling of grouped procedures and how they are mapped to identifiers in the Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) image and structured reporting data. The example of a CT examination covering chest, abdomen, and pelvis will be used in the discussion below. In the IHE Scheduled Workflow model, the Chest CT, Abdomen CT, and Pelvis CT each represent a Requested Procedure, and all three procedures are grouped under a single Filler Order. The Filler Order number maps directly to the DICOM Accession Number in the DICOM imaging and report data. A widely deployed alternative approach maps the requested procedure identifiers directly to the DICOM Accession Number. The Requested Procedure ID in such implementations may or may not be different from the Accession Number, but is of little identifying importance because there is only one Requested Procedure per Accession Number. There is no identifier that formally connects the requested procedures ordered in this group.

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **inFulfillmentof** (CONF:1198-30936).
 - a. The inFulfillmentOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **order** (CONF:1198-30937).
 - i. This order **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30938).
Note: DICOM Accession Number in the DICOM imaging and report data

1.1.9.4 documentationOf

Each serviceEvent indicates an imaging procedure that the provider describes and interprets in the content of the DIR. The main activity being described by this document is the interpretation of the imaging procedure. This is shown by setting the value of the @classCode attribute of the serviceEvent element to ACT, and indicating the duration over which care was provided in the effectiveTime element. Within each documentationOf element, there is one serviceEvent element. This event is the unit imaging procedure corresponding to a billable item. The type of imaging procedure may be further described in the serviceEvent/code element. This guide makes no specific recommendations about the vocabulary to use for describing this event. In IHE Scheduled Workflow environments, one serviceEvent/id element contains the DICOM

Study Instance UID from the Modality Worklist, and the second serviceEvent/id element contains the DICOM Requested Procedure ID from the Modality Worklist. These two ids are in a single serviceEvent. The effectiveTime for the serviceEvent covers the duration of the imaging procedure being reported. This event should have one or more performers, which may participate at the same or different periods of time. Service events map to DICOM Requested Procedures. That is, serviceEvent/id is the ID of the Requested Procedure.

9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-8416) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-8431) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8430).
 - ii. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8418).
 - iii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8419).
 1. The value of serviceEvent/code **SHALL NOT** conflict with the ClinicalDocument/code. When transforming from DICOM SR documents that do not contain a procedure code, an appropriate nullFlavor **SHALL** be used on serviceEvent/code (CONF:1198-8420).
 - iv. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Physician Reading Study Performer \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-8422).

1.1.9.5 relatedDocument

A DIR may have three types of parent document:

- A superseded version that the present document wholly replaces (typeCode = RPLC). DIRs may go through stages of revision prior to being legally authenticated. Such early stages may be drafts from transcription, those created by residents, or other preliminary versions. Policies not covered by this specification may govern requirements for retention of such earlier versions. Except for forensic purposes, the latest version in a chain of revisions represents the complete and current report.
- An original version that the present document appends (typeCode = APND). When a DIR is legally authenticated, it can be amended by a separate addendum document that references the original.
- A source document from which the present document is transformed (typeCode = XFRM). A DIR may be created by transformation from a DICOM Structured Report (SR) document or from another DIR. An example of the latter case is the creation of a derived document for inclusion of imaging results in a clinical document.

10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **relatedDocument** (CONF:1198-8432).
 - a. The relatedDocument, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **parentDocument** (CONF:1198-32089).
 - i. This parentDocument **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1198-32090).
 1. OIDs **SHALL** be represented in dotted decimal notation, where each decimal number is either 0 or starts with a nonzero digit. More

- formally, an OID **SHALL** be in the form of the regular expression: ([0-2]).([1-9][0-9][*]|0))+ (CONF:1198-10031).
2. OIDs **SHALL** be no more than 64 characters in length (CONF:1198-10032).
 - b. When a Diagnostic Imaging Report has been transformed from a DICOM SR document, relatedDocument/@typeCode **SHALL** be XFRM, and relatedDocument/parentDocument/id **SHALL** contain the SOP Instance UID of the original DICOM SR document (CONF:1198-8433).

1.1.9.6 componentOf

The id element of the encompassingEncounter represents the identifier for the encounter. When the diagnostic imaging procedure is performed in the context of a hospital stay or an outpatient visit for which there is an Encounter Number, that number should be present as the ID of the encompassingEncounter. The effectiveTime represents the time interval or point in time in which the encounter took place. The encompassing encounter might be that of the hospital or office visit in which the diagnostic imaging procedure was performed. If the effective time is unknown, a nullFlavor attribute can be used.

11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-30939).

The id element of the encompassingEncounter represents the identifier for the encounter. When the diagnostic imaging procedure is performed in the context of a hospital stay or an outpatient visit for which there is an Encounter Number, that number should be present as the ID of the encompassingEncounter.

The effectiveTime represents the time interval or point in time in which the encounter took place. The encompassing encounter might be that of the hospital or office visit in which the diagnostic imaging procedure was performed. If the effective time is unknown, a nullFlavor attribute can be used.

- a. The componentOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-30940).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30941).
 1. In the case of transformed DICOM SR documents, an appropriate null flavor **MAY** be used if the id is unavailable (CONF:1198-30942).
 - ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-30943).
 - iii. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **responsibleParty** (CONF:1198-30945).
 1. The responsibleParty, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-30946).
 - a. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] assignedPerson OR contain zero or one [0..1] representedOrganization (CONF:1198-30947).
 - iv. This encompassingEncounter **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [Physician of Record Participant \(V2\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.2:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30948).

1.1.9.7 component

12. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-14907).

a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30695).

i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30696) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**Findings Section \(DIR\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2) (CONF:1198-30697).

ii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30698) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1) (CONF:1198-30699).

a. The DICOM Object Catalog section (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1), if present, **SHALL** be the first section in the document Body (CONF:1198-31206).

iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **component** (CONF:1198-31055) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **section** (CONF:1198-31056).

a. This section **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-31057).

For sections listed in the DIR Section Type Codes table, the code element must contain a LOINC code or DCM code for sections that have no LOINC equivalent

i. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet

[**DIRSectionTypeCodes**](#)

urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.59 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-31207).

Note: The section/code **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC or DICOM for sections not listed in the DIR Section Type Codes table

There is no equivalent to section/title in DICOM SR, so for a CDA to SR transformation, the section/code will be transferred and the title element will be dropped.

b. This section **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **title** (CONF:1198-31058).

c. This section **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:1198-31059).

i. If clinical statements are present, the section/text **SHALL** represent faithfully all such statements and **MAY** contain additional text (CONF:1198-31060).

- ii. All text elements **SHALL** contain content. Text elements **SHALL** contain PCDATA or child elements (CONF:1198-31061).
- iii. The text elements (and their children) **MAY** contain Web Access to DICOM Persistent Object (WADO) references to DICOM objects by including a linkHtml element where @href is a valid WADO URL and the text content of linkHtml is the visible text of the hyperlink (CONF:1198-31062).
- d. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **subject** (CONF:1198-31215) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Fetus Subject Context](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3) (CONF:1198-31216).

This author element is used when the author of a section is different from the author(s) listed in the Header

- e. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **author** (CONF:1198-31217) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Observer Context](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4) (CONF:1198-31218).

If the service context of a section is different from the value specified in documentationOf/serviceEvent, then the section SHALL contain one or more entries containing Procedure Context (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5), which will reset the context for any clinical statements nested within those elements

- f. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31213) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Context](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5) (CONF:1198-31214).
- g. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31357) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Text Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12) (CONF:1198-31358).
- h. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31359) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Code Observations](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13) (CONF:1198-31360).

- i. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31361) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Quantity Measurement Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14) (CONF:1198-31362).
- j. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31363) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **SOP Instance Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) (CONF:1198-31364).
- k. This section **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **component** (CONF:1198-31208).
 - i. **SHALL** contain child elements (CONF:1198-31210).
- l. All sections defined in the DIR Section Type Codes table **SHALL** be top-level sections (CONF:1198-31211).
- m. **SHALL** contain at least one text element or one or more component elements (CONF:1198-31212).

Table 33: LOINC Imaging Document Codes

Value Set: LOINC Imaging Document Codes urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5 (Clinical Focus: The subset of document codes in LOINC that represent imaging procedures/reports. Such documents contain a consulting specialist's interpretation of image data and are used in Radiology, Endoscopy, Cardiology, and other imaging specialties.),(Data Element Scope: Document type),(Inclusion Criteria: As Defined and managed by LOINC at https://loinc.org/oids/1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5/),(Exclusion Criteria: Only codes in inclusion criteria)			
This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190517. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11525-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	US Pelvis Fetus for pregnancy
18742-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Arthroscopy study
18744-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Bronchoscopy study
18745-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiac catheterization study
18746-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Colonoscopy study
18748-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diagnostic imaging study
18751-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Endoscopy study
18753-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Flexible sigmoidoscopy study
18756-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	MR Spine study
24531-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	US Retroperitoneum
...			

Table 34: DIRSectionTypeCodes

Value Set: DIRSectionTypeCodes urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.59 The Section Type codes used by DIR are all narrative document sections. The codes in this table are drawn from LOINC (http://www.loinc.org/) and DICOM (http://medical.nema.org/). The section/code should be selected from LOINC or DICOM for sections not listed in this table. Value Set Source: http://www.loinc.org/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
121181	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	DICOM Object Catalog
121060	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	History
121062	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Request
121064	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Current Procedure Descriptions
121066	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Prior Procedure Descriptions
121068	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Previous Findings
121070	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Findings (DIR)
121072	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Impressions
121074	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Recommendations
121076	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Conclusions
...			

Figure 28: DIR Participant Example

```
<participant typeCode="REF">
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <id nullFlavor="NI" />
        <addr nullFlavor="NI" />
        <telecom nullFlavor="NI" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Amanda</given>
                <family>Assigned</family>
                <suffix>MD</suffix>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

1.1.10 Discharge Summary (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 35: Discharge Summary (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Review of Systems Section (optional) Chief Complaint Section (optional)

Contained By:	Contains:
	<p>Reason for Visit Section (optional)</p> <p>Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (optional)</p> <p>History of Present Illness Section (optional)</p> <p>Hospital Course Section (required)</p> <p>Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section (optional)</p> <p>Hospital Discharge Physical Section (optional)</p> <p>Hospital Discharge Instructions Section (optional)</p> <p>Hospital Consultations Section (optional)</p> <p>Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (required)</p> <p>Nutrition Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) (required)</p> <p>Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Past Medical History (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Social History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Family History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (required)</p>

The Discharge Summary is a document which synopsizes a patient's admission to a hospital, LTPAC provider, or other setting. It provides information for the continuation of care following discharge. The Joint Commission requires the following information to be included in the Discharge Summary (<http://www.jointcommission.org/>):

- The reason for hospitalization (the admission)
- The procedures performed, as applicable
- The care, treatment, and services provided
- The patient's condition and disposition at discharge
- Information provided to the patient and family
- Provisions for follow-up care

The best practice for a Discharge Summary is to include the discharge disposition in the display of the header.

Table 36: Discharge Summary (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8463	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10044	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32517	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17178	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17179	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1 (DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode)
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-8467	
componentOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-8471	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-8472	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-32611	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-8473	
high	1..1	SHALL		1198-8475	
dischargeDispositionCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8476	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.33 (NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status)
responsibleParty	0..1	MAY		1198-8479	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32613	
encounterParticipant	0..*	MAY		1198-8478	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32615	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-9539	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30518	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30519	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30520	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					0.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30521	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30522	Hospital Course Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30523	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30524	Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30525	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30526	Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.11:2015-08-01)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30527	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30528	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30529	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30530	Chief Complaint Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30531	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30532	Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30533	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30534	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30535	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30536	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30537	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30538	Functional Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30539	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30540	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30541	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30542	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.4
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30543	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30544	Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30545	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30546	Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30547	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30548	Hospital Consultations Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.42
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30549	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30550	Hospital Discharge Instructions Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.41
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30551	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30552	Hospital Discharge Physical Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.26

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30553	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30554	Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30555	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30556	Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30557	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30558	Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30559	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30560	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30561	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30562	Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30563	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30564	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30565	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30566	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30567	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30568	Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..1	MAY		1198-31586	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31587	Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.2.11.1:2015-08-01)

1.1.11 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: [urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01](#)).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8463) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8"** (CONF:1198-10044).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32517).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32938).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17178).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1 DYNAMIC](#) (CONF:1198-17179).

1.1.11.1 participant

The participant element in the Discharge Summary header follows the General Header Constraints for participants. Discharge Summary does not specify any use for functionCode for participants. Local policies will determine how this element should be used in implementations.

4. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-8467).
 - a. When participant/@typeCode is IND, associatedEntity/@classCode **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 INDRoleclassCodes STATIC 2011-09-30 (CONF:1198-8469).

1.1.11.2 componentOf

The Discharge Summary is always associated with a Hospital Admission using the encompassingEncounter element in the header.

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-8471).

- a. This componentOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-8472).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-32611).

The admission date is recorded in the componentOf/encompassingEncounter/effectiveTime/low.

1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-8473).

The discharge date is recorded in the componentOf/encompassingEncounter/effectiveTime/high.

2. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1198-8475).

The dischargeDispositionCode records the disposition of the patient at time of discharge. Access to the National Uniform Billing Committee (NUBC) code system requires a membership. The following conformance statement aligns with HITSP C80 requirements.

The dischargeDispositionCode, @displayName, or NUBC UB-04 Print Name, must be displayed when the document is rendered.

- ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **dischargeDispositionCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.33 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8476).

The responsibleParty element represents only the party responsible for the encounter, not necessarily the entire episode of care.

- iii. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **responsibleParty** (CONF:1198-8479).
 1. The responsibleParty, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32613).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson or a representedOrganization or both (CONF:1198-32898).

The encounterParticipant element represents persons who participated in the encounter and not necessarily the entire episode of care.

- iv. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **encounterParticipant** (CONF:1198-8478).
 1. The encounterParticipant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32615).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson or a representedOrganization or both (CONF:1198-32899).

1.1.11.3 component

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-9539).

In this template (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.8.2), coded entries are optional.

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30518).

- i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30519) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30520).
- ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30521) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Course Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5) (CONF:1198-30522).
- iii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30523) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Discharge Diagnosis Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30524).
- iv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30525) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Discharge Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30526).
- v. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30527) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30528).
- vi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30529) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) (CONF:1198-30530).
- vii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30531) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) (CONF:1198-30532).
- viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30533) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57) (CONF:1198-30534).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30535) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30536).
- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30537) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30538).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30539) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Past Medical History \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30540).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30541) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-30542).
- xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30543) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Admission Diagnosis Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30544).
- xiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30545) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Admission Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30546).
- xv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30547) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Consultations Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42) (CONF:1198-30548).
- xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30549) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Discharge Instructions Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41) (CONF:1198-30550).
- xvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30551) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Discharge Physical Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26) (CONF:1198-30552).

xviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30553) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16) (CONF:1198-30554).

xix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30555) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30556).

xx. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30557) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30558).

xxi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30559) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30560).

xxii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30561) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) (CONF:1198-30562).

xxiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30563) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18) (CONF:1198-30564).

xxiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30565) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30566).

xxv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30567) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-30568).

xxvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-31586) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Discharge Medications Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11.1:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-31587).

xxvii. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain a Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) when either a Chief Complaint Section (1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) or a Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) is present (CONF:1198-30569).

Table 37: DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode

Value Set: DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1 (Clinical Focus: Kind of discharge summary document classified by author role),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: A list of LOINC terms, intended to identify Discharge Summary Notes where component contains "Discharge Summary Note", Timing = "Patient", Property = Find" , scale = "Doc"),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11490-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician Discharge summary
18842-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Discharge summary
28655-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Attending Discharge summary
29761-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dentistry Discharge summary
34105-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Hospital Discharge summary
34106-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician Hospital Discharge summary
34745-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nurse Discharge summary
57058-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Maternal discharge summary note
59258-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Emergency department Discharge summary
59259-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Psychiatry Discharge summary
...			

Table 38: NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status

Value Set: NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.33 National Uniform Billing Committee (NUBC) code system. Value Set Source: http://www.nubc.org			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
01	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged to Home or Self Care (Routine Discharge)
02	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged/transferred to a Short-Term General Hospital for Inpatient Care
03	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged/transferred to Skilled Nursing Facility (SNF) with Medicare Certification in Anticipation of Skilled Care
04	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged/transferred to a Facility that Provides Custodial or Supportive Care
05	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged/transferred to a Designated Cancer Center or Children's Hospital
06	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Discharged/transferred to Home Under Care of an Organized Home Health Service Organization in Anticipation of Covered Skilled Care
07	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Left Against Medical Advice or Discontinued Care
08	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Reserved for Assignment by the NUBC
09	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Admitted as an Inpatient to this Hospital
20	NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.30 1.5	Expired
...			

Figure 29: Discharge Summary encompassing Encounter Example

```
<componentOf>
  <encompassingEncounter>
    <id extension="9937012" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.12" codeSystemName="CPT-4" code="99213"
displayName="Evaluation and Management" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20090227130000+0500" />
      <high value="20090227130000+0500" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <dischargeDispositionCode code="01" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.112"
displayName="Routine Discharge" codeSystemName="HL7 Discharge Disposition" />
    <location>
      <healthCareFacility>
        <id root="2.16.540.1.113883.19.2" />
      </healthCareFacility>
    </location>
  </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>
```

1.1.12 History and Physical (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.3:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 39: History and Physical (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (required) Chief Complaint Section (optional) Reason for Visit Section (optional) Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (optional) History of Present Illness Section (optional) General Status Section (required) Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (required) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional) Instructions Section (V2) (optional) US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (required) Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Results Section (entries optional) (V3) (required) Past Medical History (V3) (required) Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (required) Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Physical Exam Section (V3) (required) Social History Section (V3) (required) Family History Section (V3) (required)

Contained By:	Contains:
	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (required)

A History and Physical (H&P) note is a medical report that documents the current and past conditions of the patient. It contains essential information that helps determine an individual's health status. The first portion of the report is a current collection of organized information unique to an individual. This is typically supplied by the patient or the caregiver, concerning the current medical problem or the reason for the patient encounter. This information is followed by a description of any past or ongoing medical issues, including current medications and allergies. Information is also obtained about the patient's lifestyle, habits, and diseases among family members.

The next portion of the report contains information obtained by physically examining the patient and gathering diagnostic information in the form of laboratory tests, imaging, or other diagnostic procedures.

The report ends with the clinician's assessment of the patient's situation and the intended plan to address those issues.

A History and Physical Examination is required upon hospital admission as well as before operative procedures. An initial evaluation in an ambulatory setting is often documented in the form of an H&P note.

Table 40: History and Physical (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.3:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8283	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10046	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.3
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32518	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17185	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17186	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.22 (HPDocumentType)
informationRecipient	0..*	MAY		1198-32482	
intendedRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-32483	
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-8286	
inFulfillmentOf	0..*	MAY		1198-8336	
componentOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-8338	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-8339	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8340	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8341	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3
responsibleParty	0..1	MAY		1198-8345	
encounterParticipant	0..*	MAY		1198-8342	
location	0..1	MAY		1198-8344	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-8349	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30570	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30571	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30572	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					0.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30573	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30574	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30575	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30576	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30577	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30578	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30579	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30580	Chief Complaint Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30581	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30582	Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30583	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30584	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30585	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30586	General Status Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30587	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30588	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				30589	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30590	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30591	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30592	Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30593	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31385	Instructions Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30595	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30596	Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30597	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30598	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30599	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30600	Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30601	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30602	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30603	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30604	Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				30605	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30606	Results Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30607	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30608	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30609	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30610	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30611	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30612	Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01

1.1.13 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8283) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.3" (CONF:1198-10046).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32518).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32939).

The H&P Note recommends use of a single document type code, 34117-2 "History and physical note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17185).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [HPDocumentType](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.22 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-17186).
4. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-32482).

- a. The informationRecipient, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **intendedRecipient** (CONF:1198-32483).

1.1.13.1 participant

The participant element in the H&P header follows the General Header Constraints for participants. H&P Note does not specify any use for functionCode for participants. Local policies will determine how this element should be used in implementations.

5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-8286).

A special class of participant is the supporting person or organization: an individual or an organization that has a relationship to the patient, including parents, relatives, caregivers, insurance policyholders, and guarantors. In the case of a supporting person who is also an emergency contact or next-of-kin, a participant element should be present for each role recorded.

- a. When participant/@typeCode is IND, associatedEntity/@classCode **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 INDRoleclassCodes **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:1198-8333).

1.1.13.2 inFulfillmentOf

inFulfillmentOf elements describe the prior orders that are fulfilled (in whole or part) by the service events described in this document. For example, the prior order might be a referral and the H&P Note may be in partial fulfillment of that referral.

6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **inFulfillmentof** (CONF:1198-8336).

1.1.13.3 componentOf

The H&P Note is always associated with an encounter.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-8338).
 - a. This componentOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-8339).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8340).

The effectiveTime represents the time interval or point in time in which the encounter took place.

- ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-8341).

The responsibleParty element records only the party responsible for the encounter, not necessarily the entire episode of care.

- iii. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **responsibleParty** (CONF:1198-8345).
 1. The responsibleParty element, if present, **SHALL** contain an assignedEntity element, which **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson

element, a representedOrganization element, or both (CONF:1198-8348).

The encounterParticipant elements represent only those participants in the encounter, not necessarily the entire episode of care.

- iv. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **encounterParticipant** (CONF:1198-8342).
 - 1. An encounterParticipant element, if present, **SHALL** contain an assignedEntity element, which **SHALL** contain an assignedPerson element, a representedOrganization element, or both (CONF:1198-8343).
- v. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **location** (CONF:1198-8344).

1.1.13.4 component

- 8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-8349).

In this template (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.3.2), coded entries are optional.

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30570).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30571) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30572).
 - ii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30573) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) (CONF:1198-30574).
 - iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30575) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30576).
 - iv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30577) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment and Plan Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30578).
 - v. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30579) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) (CONF:1198-30580).
- vi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30581) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) (CONF:1198-30582).
- vii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30583) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30584).
- viii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30585) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [General Status Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5) (CONF:1198-30586).
- ix. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30587) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Past Medical History \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30588).
- x. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30589) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-30590).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30591) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30592).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30593) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instructions Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31385).
- xiii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30595) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30596).

xiv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30597) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30598).

xv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30599) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30600).

xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30601) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30602).

xvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30603) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)
(CONF:1198-30604).

xviii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30605) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30606).

xix. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30607) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
(CONF:1198-30608).

xx. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30609) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30610).

xxi. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30611) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30612).

- xxii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain a Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) or a Chief Complaint Section (1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) or a Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) (CONF:1198-30613).
- xxiii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09), or an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) and a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30614).
- xxiv. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-30615).
- xxv. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain a Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) when either a Chief Complaint Section (1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) or a Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) is present (CONF:1198-30616).

Table 41: HPDocumentType

<p>Value Set: HPDocumentType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.22 (Clinical Focus: Subclassification of history & physical document by setting, author role, and author specialty),(Data Element Scope: ClinicalDocument.code@code in H&P Document template in C-CDA R2.1), (Inclusion Criteria: Some selected LOINC codes for information that uses H&P Document template to represent the information in CDA),(Exclusion Criteria:)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190517.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.22/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11492-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Provider-unspecified, History and physical note
28626-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician History and physical note
34094-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiology Hospital Admission history and physical note
34095-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Comprehensive history and physical note
34096-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nursing facility Comprehensive history and physical note
34115-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Medical student Hospital History and physical note
34116-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician Nursing facility History and physical note
34117-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	History and physical note
34138-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Targeted history and physical note
34763-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	General medicine Admission history and physical note
...			

Figure 30: H&P encompassing Encounter Example

```
<componentOf>
  <encompassingEncounter>
    <id extension="9937012" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.12" codeSystemName="CPT-4"
          code="99213" displayName="Evaluation and Management" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20090227130000+0500" />
      <high value="20090227130000+0500" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <location>
      <healthCareFacility>
        <id root="2.16.540.1.113883.19.2" />
      </healthCareFacility>
    </location>
  </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>
```

1.1.14 Operative Note (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.7:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 42: Operative Note (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Operative Note Fluids Section (optional) Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section (optional) Surgical Drains Section (optional) Procedure Description Section (required) Procedure Disposition Section (optional) Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section (required) Procedure Specimens Taken Section (required) Postoperative Diagnosis Section (required) Procedure Implants Section (optional) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Anesthesia Section (V2) (required) Procedure Indications Section (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure Section (V2) (optional) US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (required) Complications Section (V3) (required) Procedure Findings Section (V3) (required) Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) (required)

The Operative Note is a frequently used type of procedure note with specific requirements set forth by regulatory agencies.

The Operative Note is created immediately following a surgical or other high-risk procedure. It records the pre- and post-surgical diagnosis, pertinent events of the procedure, as well as the condition of the patient following the procedure. The report should be sufficiently detailed to support the diagnoses, justify the treatment, document the course of the procedure, and provide continuity of care.

Table 43: Operative Note (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.7:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8483	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10048	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.7
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32519	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17187	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17188	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1 (SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode)
documentationOf	1..*	SHALL		1198-8486	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-8493	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8494	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3
performer	1..1	SHALL		1198-8489	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8495	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = PPRF
functionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-32963	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30 (Care Team Member Function)
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-10917	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8490	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
performer	0..*	MAY		1198-32736	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32738	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = SPRF
functionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-32964	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30 (Care Team Member Function)
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32737	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32739	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1.1066 (Healthcare Provider

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					Taxonomy)
authorization	0..1	MAY		1198-32404	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32408	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = AUTH
consent	1..1	SHALL		1198-32405	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32409	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CONS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32410	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32411	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-9585	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30485	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30486	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30487	Anesthesia Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30488	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30489	Complications Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30490	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30491	Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.34:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30492	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30493	Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.18.2.9
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30494	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30495	Procedure Findings Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30496	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30497	Procedure Specimens Taken Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30498	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30499	Procedure Description Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30500	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30501	Postoperative Diagnosis Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30502	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30503	Procedure Implants Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30504	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30505	Operative Note Fluids Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30506	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30507	Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30508	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30509	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30510	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30511	Planned Procedure Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				30512	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30513	Procedure Disposition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30514	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30515	Procedure Indications Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30516	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30517	Surgical Drains Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13)

1.1.15 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8483) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.7" (CONF:1198-10048).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32519).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32940).

The Operative Note recommends use of a single document type code, 11504-8 "Provider-unspecified Operation Note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty data in the CDA header. Some of the LOINC codes in the Surgical Operation Note Document Type Code table are pre-coordinated with the practice setting or the training or professional level of the author. Use of pre-coordinated codes is not recommended because of potential conflict with other information in the header. When these codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17187).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-17188).

1.1.15.1 documentationOf

A serviceEvent represents the main act, such as a colonoscopy or an appendectomy, being documented. A serviceEvent can further specialize the act inherent in the ClinicalDocument/code, such as where the ClinicalDocument/code is simply "Surgical Operation Note" and the procedure is "Appendectomy." serviceEvent is required in the Operative Note and it must be equivalent to or further specialize the value inherent in the ClinicalDocument/code; it shall not conflict with the value inherent in the ClinicalDocument/code, as such a conflict would create ambiguity. serviceEvent/effectiveTime can be used to indicate the time the actual event (as opposed to the encounter surrounding the event) took place. If the date and the duration of the procedure is known, serviceEvent/effectiveTime/low is used with a width element that describes the duration; no high element is used. However, if only the date is known, the date is placed in both the low and high elements.

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-8486).
 - a. Such documentationOfs **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-8493).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-8494).
 1. The serviceEvent/effectiveTime **SHALL** be present with effectiveTime/low (CONF:1198-8488).
 2. If a width is not present, the serviceEvent/effectiveTime **SHALL** include effectiveTime/high (CONF:1198-10058).
 3. When only the date and the length of the procedure are known a width element **SHALL** be present and the serviceEvent/effectiveTime/high **SHALL NOT** be present (CONF:1198-10060).

1.1.15.2 performer

This performer represents a clinicians who actually and principally carry out the serviceEvent. Typically, these are clinicians who have surgical privileges in their institutions such as Surgeons, Obstetrician/Gynecologists, and Family Practice Physicians. The performer may also be non-physician providers (NPPs) who have surgical privileges. There may be more than one primary performer in the case of complicated surgeries. There are occasionally co-surgeons. Usually they will be billing separately and will each dictate their own notes. An example may be spinal surgery , where a general surgeon and an orthopedic surgeon both are present and billing off the same Current Procedural Terminology (CPT) codes. Typically two Operative Notes are generated; however, each will list the other as a co-surgeon. Any assistants are identified as a secondary performer (SPRF) in a second performer participant.

- ii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **performer** (CONF:1198-8489) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode= "PPRF" Primary performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8495).
 2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **functionCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Care Team Member Function

- urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32963).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-10917).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8490).

1.1.15.3 performer

This performer represents any assistants.

- iii. This serviceEvent **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-32736) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRF" Secondary performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-32738).
 2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **functionCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Care Team Member Function](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32964).
 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32737).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32739).
- iv. The value of serviceEvent/code **SHALL** be from ICD9 CM Procedures (CodeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.104), CPT-4 (CodeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12), or values descending from 71388002 (Procedure) from the SNOMED CT (CodeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) ValueSet Procedure 2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.28 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8487).

Authorization represents consent. Consent, if present, shall be represented by authorization/consent.

5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **authorization** (CONF:1198-32404).
 - a. The authorization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="AUTH" authorized by (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32408).
 - b. The authorization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consent** (CONF:1198-32405).
 - i. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="CONS" consent (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32409).

- ii. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1198-32410).
- iii. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-32411).

1.1.15.4 component

- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-9585).
 - a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30485).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30486) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Anesthesia Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30487).
 - ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30488) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Complications Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30489).
 - iii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30490) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Preoperative Diagnosis Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30491).
 - iv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30492) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9) (CONF:1198-30493).
 - v. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30494) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Findings Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30495).
 - vi. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30496) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Specimens Taken Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31) (CONF:1198-30497).
 - vii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30498) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Description Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27) (CONF:1198-30499).
viii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30500) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Postoperative Diagnosis Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35) (CONF:1198-30501).
ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30502) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Implants Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40) (CONF:1198-30503).
x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30504) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Operative Note Fluids Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12) (CONF:1198-30505).
xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30506) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14) (CONF:1198-30507).
xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30508) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30509).
xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30510) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30511).
xiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30512) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Disposition Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12) (CONF:1198-30513).
xv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30514) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Indications Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30515).

xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30516) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Surgical Drains Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13) (CONF:1198-30517).

Table 44: SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode

Value Set: SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1 (Clinical Focus: Surgical operation note kind classified by author specialization),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190516.			
Value Set Source:	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1/expansion		
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11504-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Surgical operation note
28573-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician, Operation note
28583-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dentist Operation note
28624-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Podiatry Operation note
34137-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Outpatient Surgical operation note
34818-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Otolaryngology Surgical operation note
34868-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Orthopaedic surgery Surgical operation note
34870-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Plastic surgery Surgical operation note
34874-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Surgery Surgical operation note
34877-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Urology Surgical operation note
...			

Figure 31: Operative Note performer Example

```
<performer typeCode="PPRF">
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="1" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code code="2086S0120X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" codeSystemName="NUCC"
displayName="Pediatric Surgeon" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1013 Healthcare Drive</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Ann Arbor</city>
      <state>MI</state>
      <postalCode>99999</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:(555)555-1013" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
        <given>Carl</given>
        <family>Cutter</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</performer>
```

Figure 32: Operative Note serviceEvent Example

```
<serviceEvent classCode="PROC">
  <code code="801460020" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
displayName="Laparoscopic Appendectomy" />
  <effectiveTime>
    <low value="201003292240" />
    <width value="15" unit="m" />
  </effectiveTime>
  ...
</serviceEvent>
```

1.1.16 Procedure Note (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.6:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 45: Procedure Note (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (optional) Chief Complaint Section (optional) Reason for Visit Section (optional) Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (optional)

Contained By:	Contains:
	<p>History of Present Illness Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Description Section (required)</p> <p>Procedure Disposition Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Specimens Taken Section (optional)</p> <p>Medical (General) History Section (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Implants Section (optional)</p> <p>Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Medications Administered Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Anesthesia Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Indications Section (V2) (required)</p> <p>Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Planned Procedure Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (required)</p> <p>Complications Section (V3) (required)</p> <p>Past Medical History (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Procedure Findings Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) (required)</p> <p>Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Social History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Family History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p>

A Procedure Note encompasses many types of non-operative procedures including interventional cardiology, gastrointestinal endoscopy, osteopathic manipulation, and many other specialty fields. Procedure Notes are differentiated from Operative Notes because they do not involve incision or excision as the primary act.

The Procedure Note is created immediately following a non-operative procedure. It records the indications for the procedure and, when applicable, postprocedure diagnosis, pertinent events of the procedure, and the patient's tolerance for the procedure. It should be detailed enough to justify the procedure, describe the course of the procedure, and provide continuity of care.

Table 46: Procedure Note (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.6:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8496	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10050	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.6
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32520	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17182	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17183	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.6.1 (ProcedureNoteDocumentType Codes)
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-8504	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8505	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.88 (HL7ParticipationFunction) = IND
functionCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8506	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.88 (HL7ParticipationFunction) = PCP
associatedEntity/@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8507	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = PROV
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-8508	
documentationOf	1..*	SHALL		1198-8510	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-10061	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-10062	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-26449	
performer	1..1	SHALL		1198-8520	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8521	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = PPRF
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-14911	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-14912	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
performer	0..*	MAY		1198-32732	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32734	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = SPRF
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-32733	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32735	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
authorization	0..1	MAY		1198-32412	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32413	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = AUTH
consent	1..1	SHALL		1198-32414	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32415	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CONS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32416	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32417	
componentOf	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30871	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-30872	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32395	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-30873	
encounterParticipant	0..1	MAY		1198-30874	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30875	REF
location	1..*	SHALL		1198-30876	
healthCareFacility	1..1	SHALL		1198-30877	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30878	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-9588	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30352	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30353	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30387	Complications Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30355	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30356	Procedure Description Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30357	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30358	Procedure Indications Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30359	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30360	Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.36:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30361	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30362	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30363	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30364	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30365	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30366	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30367	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30368	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30369	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Anesthesia Section (V2)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				30370	(identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30371	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30372	Chief Complaint Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.1.13.2.1
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30373	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30374	Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.13
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30375	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30376	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30377	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30378	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30379	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30380	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.4
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30381	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30382	Medical (General) History Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.39
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30383	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30384	Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30388	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30389	Medications Administered Section (V2) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.38:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30390	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30391	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30392	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30393	Planned Procedure Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30394	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30395	Procedure Disposition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.18.2.12
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30396	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30397	Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.18.2.9
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30398	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30399	Procedure Findings Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30400	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30401	Procedure Implants Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.40
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30402	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30403	Procedure Specimens Taken Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.31
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30404	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30405	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					0.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30406	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30407	Reason for Visit Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30408	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30409	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30410	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30411	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)

1.1.17 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8496) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.6" (CONF:1198-10050).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32520).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32941).

The Procedure Note recommends use of a single document type code, 28570-0 "Procedure Note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17182).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProcedureNoteDocumentTypeCodes](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.6.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-17183).

1.1.17.1 participant

The participant element in the Procedure Note header follows the General Header Constraints for participants.

4. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-8504) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="IND" Individual (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationFunction urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.88 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8505).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] functionCode="PCP" Primary Care Physician (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationFunction urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.88 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8506).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] associatedEntity/@classCode="PROV" Provider (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8507).
 - i. This associatedEntity/@classCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-8508).

1.1.17.2 documentationOf

A serviceEvent is required in the Procedure Note to represent the main act, such as a colonoscopy or a cardiac stress study, being documented. It must be equivalent to or further specialize the value inherent in the ClinicalDocument/@code (such as where the ClinicalDocument/@code is simply "Procedure Note" and the procedure is "colonoscopy"), and it shall not conflict with the value inherent in the ClinicalDocument/@code, as such a conflict would create ambiguity. A serviceEvent/effectiveTime element indicates the time the actual event (as opposed to the encounter surrounding the event) took place.

serviceEvent/effectiveTime may be represented two different ways in the Procedure Note. For accuracy to the second, the best method is effectiveTime/low together with effectiveTime/high. If a more general time, such as minutes or hours, is acceptable OR if the duration is unknown, an effectiveTime/low with a width element may be used. If the duration is unknown, the appropriate HL7 null value such as "NI" or "NA" must be used for the width element.

5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-8510) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-10061).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-10062).
 1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-26449).
 2. The serviceEvent/effectiveTime **SHALL** be present with effectiveTime/low (CONF:1198-8513).
 3. If a width is not present, the serviceEvent/effectiveTime **SHALL** include effectiveTime/high (CONF:1198-8514).
 4. When only the date and the length of the procedure are known a width element **SHALL** be present and the serviceEvent/effectiveTime/high **SHALL NOT** be present (CONF:1198-8515).

1.1.17.3 performer

This performer participant represents clinicians who actually and principally carry out the serviceEvent. Typically, these are clinicians who have the appropriate privileges in their institutions such as gastroenterologists, interventional radiologists, and family practice

physicians. Performers may also be non-physician providers (NPPs) who have other significant roles in the procedure such as a radiology technician, dental assistant, or nurse. Any assistants are identified as a secondary performer (SPRF) in a second performer participant.

- ii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **performer** (CONF:1198-8520) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PPRF" Primary Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8521).
 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-14911).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-14912).

1.1.17.4 performer

This performer identifies any assistants.

- iii. This serviceEvent **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-32732) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRF" Secondary Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-32734).
 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-32733).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32735).
- iv. The value of Clinical Document /documentationOf/serviceEvent/code **SHALL** be from ICD9 CM Procedures (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.104), CPT-4 (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12), or values descending from 71388002 (Procedure) from the SNOMED CT (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.28 Procedure **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8511).

Authorization represents consent. Consent, if present, shall be represented by authorization/consent.

6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **authorization** (CONF:1198-32412).
 - a. The authorization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="AUTH" authorized by (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32413).
 - b. The authorization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consent** (CONF:1198-32414).

- i. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@classCode="CONS"` consent (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32415).
- ii. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@moodCode="EVN"` event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1198-32416).
- iii. This consent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `statusCode` (CONF:1198-32417).

1.1.17.5 componentOf

- 7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] `componentOf` (CONF:1198-30871).
 - a. The `componentOf`, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `encompassingEncounter` (CONF:1198-30872).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] `id` (CONF:1198-32395).
 - ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `code` (CONF:1198-30873).
 - iii. This encompassingEncounter **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] `encounterParticipant` (CONF:1198-30874) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@typeCode="REF"` Referrer (CONF:1198-30875).
 - iv. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] `location` (CONF:1198-30876).
 - 1. Such locations **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `healthCareFacility` (CONF:1198-30877).
 - a. This healthCareFacility **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] `id` (CONF:1198-30878).

1.1.17.6 component

- 8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `component` (CONF:1198-9588).
 - a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `structuredBody` (CONF:1198-30352).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `component` (CONF:1198-30353) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Complications Section \(V3\)](#) (`identifier:` urn:hl7:ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30387).
 - ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `component` (CONF:1198-30355) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Description Section](#) (`identifier:` urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27) (CONF:1198-30356).
 - iii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `component` (CONF:1198-30357) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Indications Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30358).
- iv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30359) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Postprocedure Diagnosis Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30360).
- v. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30361) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)
(CONF:1198-30362).
- vi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30363) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment and Plan Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30364).
- vii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30365) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30366).
- viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30367) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30368).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30369) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Anesthesia Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30370).
- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30371) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1)
(CONF:1198-30372).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30373) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) (CONF:1198-30374).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30375) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30376).
- xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30377) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Past Medical History \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30378).
- xiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30379) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-30380).
- xv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30381) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medical \(General\) History Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.39) (CONF:1198-30382).
- xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30383) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30384).
- xvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30388) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Administered Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30389).
- xviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30390) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30391).
- xix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30392) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30393).
- xx. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30394) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Disposition Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12)
(CONF:1198-30395).
- xxi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30396) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9) (CONF:1198-30397).
- xxii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30398) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Findings Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30399).
- xxiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30400) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Implants Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40)
(CONF:1198-30401).
- xxiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30402) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Specimens Taken Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31) (CONF:1198-30403).
- xxv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30404) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30405).
- xxvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30406) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reason for Visit Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)
(CONF:1198-30407).
- xxvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30408) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
(CONF:1198-30409).

xxviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30410) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30411).

xxix. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09), or an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) and a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30412).

xxx. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-30414).

xxxi. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain a Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13) when either a Chief Complaint Section (1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1) or a Reason for Visit Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12) is present (CONF:1198-30415).

Table 47: ProcedureNoteDocumentTypeCodes

Value Set: ProcedureNoteDocumentTypeCodes urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.6.1 A value set of LOINC document codes for Procedure Notes.			
Specific URL Pending Value Set Source: http://search.loinc.org			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
28570-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Provider-unspecified Procedure note
11505-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician procedure note
18744-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Bronchoscopy study
18745-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiac catheterization study
18746-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Colonoscopy study
18751-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Endoscopy study
18753-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Flexible sigmoidoscopy study
18836-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cardiac stress study Procedure
28577-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dentist procedure note
28625-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Podiatry procedure note
...			

Figure 33: Procedure Note performer Example

```

<performer typeCode="PPRF">
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="IO00017" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
    <code code="207RG0100X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="NUCC"
displayName="Gastroenterologist" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1001 Hospital Lane</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Ann Arbor</city>
      <state>MI</state>
      <postalCode>99999</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:(999)555-1212" />
  <assignedPerson>
    <name>
      <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
      <given>Tony</given>
      <family>Tum</family>
    </name>
  </assignedPerson>
</assignedEntity>
</performer>

```

Figure 34: Procedure Note serviceEvent Example

```

<documentationOf>
  <serviceEvent classCode="PROC">
    <code code="118155006" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Gastrointestinal tract endoscopy" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="201003292240" />
      <width value="15" unit="m" />
    </effectiveTime>
    ...
  </serviceEvent>
</documentationOf>

```

1.1.18 Progress Note (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.9:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 48: Progress Note (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (optional) Chief Complaint Section (optional) Objective Section (optional) Subjective Section (optional) Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional)

Contained By:	Contains:
	<p>Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Nutrition Section (optional)</p> <p>Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>Instructions Section (V2) (optional)</p> <p>US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (optional)</p> <p>US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (required)</p> <p>Results Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Interventions Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p>

This template represents a patient's clinical status during a hospitalization, outpatient visit, treatment with a LTPAC provider, or other healthcare encounter.

Taber's medical dictionary defines a Progress Note as "An ongoing record of a patient's illness and treatment. Physicians, nurses, consultants, and therapists record their notes concerning the progress or lack of progress made by the patient between the time of the previous note and the most recent note."

Mosby's medical dictionary defines a Progress Note as "Notes made by a nurse, physician, social worker, physical therapist, and other health care professionals that describe the patient's condition and the treatment given or planned."

A Progress Note is not a re-evaluation note. A Progress Note is not intended to be a Progress Report for Medicare. Medicare B Section 1833(e) defines the requirements of a Medicare Progress Report.

Table 49: Progress Note (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.9:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7588	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10052	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.9
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32521	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17189	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-17190	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1 (ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode)
documentationOf	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7603	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-7604	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-26420	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PCPR
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-9480	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10068	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.3.1
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-9481	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3
componentOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-7595	
encompassingEncounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-7596	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-7597	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-7598	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-7599	
location	1..1	SHALL		1198-30879	
healthCareFacility	1..1	SHALL		1198-30880	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30881	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-9591	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-30617	
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30618	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30619	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30620	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30621	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30622	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30623	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30624	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30625	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30626	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30627	Chief Complaint Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30628	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30629	Interventions Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30639	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31386	Instructions Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30641	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30642	Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30643	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30644	Objective Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30645	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30646	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30647	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30648	Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30649	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30650	Results Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30651	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30652	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30653	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30654	Subjective Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30655	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30656	Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32626	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32627	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57

1.1.19 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7588) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.9" (CONF:1198-10052).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32521).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32942).

The Progress Note recommends use of a single document type code, 11506-3 "Subsequent evaluation note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-17189).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-17190).

1.1.19.1 documentationOf

A documentationOf can contain a serviceEvent to further specialize the act inherent in the ClinicalDocument/code. In a Progress Note, a serviceEvent can represent the event of writing the Progress Note. The serviceEvent/effectiveTime is the time period the note documents.

4. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-7603).
 - a. The documentationOf, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-7604).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="PCPR" Care Provision (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-26420).
 - ii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-9480) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.3.1" (CONF:1198-10068).
 - iii. This serviceEvent **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-9481).
 1. The serviceEvent/effectiveTime element **SHOULD** be present with effectiveTime/low element (CONF:1198-9482).
 2. If a width element is not present, the serviceEvent **SHALL** include effectiveTime/high (CONF:1198-10066).

1.1.19.2 componentOf

The Progress Note is always associated with an encounter by the componentOf/encompassingEncounter element in the header. The effectiveTime element for an encompassingEncounter represents the time or time interval in which the encounter took place. A single encounter may contain multiple Progress Notes; hence the effectiveTime elements for a Progress Note (recorded in serviceEvent) and for an encounter (recorded in encompassingEncounter) represent different time intervals. For outpatient encounters that are a point in time, set effectiveTime/high, effectiveTime/low, and effectiveTime/@value to the same time. All visits take place at a specific location. When available, the location ID is included in the encompassingEncounter/location/healthCareFacility/id element.

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **componentOf** (CONF:1198-7595).
 - a. This componentOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encompassingEncounter** (CONF:1198-7596).
 - i. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-7597).
 - ii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1198-7598).
 1. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-7599).
 - iii. This encompassingEncounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **location** (CONF:1198-30879).
 1. This location **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **healthCareFacility** (CONF:1198-30880).
 - a. This healthCareFacility **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30881).

1.1.19.3 component

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-9591).

In this template (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.9.2), coded entries are optional

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-30617).
 - i. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30618) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) (CONF:1198-30619).
 - ii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30620) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30621).
 - iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30622) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment and Plan Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30623).
- iv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30624) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30625).
- v. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30626) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Chief Complaint Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1)
(CONF:1198-30627).
- vi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30628) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Interventions Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30629).
- vii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30639) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instructions Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-31386).
- viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30641) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-30642).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30643) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Objective Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1)
(CONF:1198-30644).
- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30645) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30646).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30647) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30648).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30649) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30650).
- xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30651) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
(CONF:1198-30652).
- xiv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30653) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Subjective Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2)
(CONF:1198-30654).
- xv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30655) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [vital Signs Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-30656).
- xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32626) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
(CONF:1198-32627).
- xvii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09), or an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) and a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30657).
- xviii. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-30658).

Table 50: ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode

Value Set: ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1 (Clinical Focus: Progress note kind classified by setting, author role, and author specialization),(Data Element Scope: ClinicalDocument.code@code in Progress Note Document template in C-CDA R2.1),(Inclusion Criteria: LOINC document concepts representing a transfer summary where component = 'progress note' and scale = 'DOC),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190516. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11506-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Progress note
11507-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Occupational therapy Progress note
11508-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical therapy Progress note
11509-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Podiatry Progress note
11510-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Psychology Progress note
11512-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Speech-language pathology Progress note
15507-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Emergency department Progress note
18733-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Attending Progress note
28569-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Consultant Progress note
28575-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nurse practitioner Progress note
...			

Figure 35: Progress Note serviceEvent Example

```
<documentationOf>
  <serviceEvent classCode="PCPR">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.3.1" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="200503291200" />
      <high value="200503291400" />
    </effectiveTime>
    ...
  </serviceEvent>
</documentationOf>
```

Figure 36: Progress Note encompassing Encounter Example

```

<componentOf>
  <encompassingEncounter>
    <id extension="9937012" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.12" codeSystemName="CPT-4" code="99213"
          displayName="Evaluation and Management" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20090227130000+0500" />
      <high value="20090227130000+0500" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <location>
      <healthCareFacility>
        <id root="2.16.540.1.113883.19.2" />
      </healthCareFacility>
    </location>
  </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

```

1.1.20 Referral Note (V2)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.14:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 51: Referral Note (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDED) (optional) Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (optional) History of Present Illness Section (optional) General Status Section (optional) US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (required) Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (required) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Section (optional) Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Reason for Referral Section (V2) (required) Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional) Mental Status Section (V2) (optional) Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) (optional) Results Section (entries required) (V3) (optional) Past Medical History (V3) (optional) Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (optional) Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (required) Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional) Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)

Contained By:	Contains:
	Family History Section (V3) (optional) Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (required)

A Referral Note communicates pertinent information from a provider who is requesting services of another provider of clinical or non-clinical services. The information in this document includes the reason for the referral and additional information that would augment decision making and care delivery.

Examples of referral situations are when a patient is referred from a family physician to a cardiologist for cardiac evaluation or when patient is sent by a cardiologist to an emergency department for angina or when a patient is referred by a nurse practitioner to an audiologist for hearing screening or when a patient is referred by a hospitalist to social services.

Table 52: Referral Note (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.14:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28947	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28948	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.14
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32911	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28949	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.3 (ReferralDocumentType)
informationRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-31589	
intendedRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-31590	
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31591	
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31592	
informationRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-31593	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31594	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31642	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31924	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = IND
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31643	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31925	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 (INDRoleclassCodes)
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31644	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31645	US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31647	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31648	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CALLBCK
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31649	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32419	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = ASSIGNED
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31650	
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31651	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-31652	
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31653	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31654	
scopingOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-31655	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-29062	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-29063	
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-29066	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29067	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-29068	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29069	Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-29074	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29075	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.4
component	0..1	MAY		1198-29076	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29077	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-29082	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-29083	Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					(identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.2.1:2015-08-01)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29086	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29087	Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 29088	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29089	Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 29090	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29091	Results Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 29092	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29093	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5. 3.1.3.18)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 29094	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29095	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 29096	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29097	Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 29098	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29099	Functional Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 29100	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 29101	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 30780	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30781	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.57
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198- 30796	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30926	Mental Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30798	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30799	Medical Equipment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30911	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30912	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30913	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30914	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.2.8
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30915	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30916	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30917	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30918	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198- 30919	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198- 30920	General Status Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.2.5

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30922	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30923	Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-30924	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30925	Reason for Referral Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: [urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01](#)).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28947) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.14" (CONF:1198-28948).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32911).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32943).

The Referral Note recommends use of the document type code 57133-1 "Referral Note", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type. For example, an Obstetrics and Gynecology Referral note would not be authored by a Pediatric Cardiologist. The type of referral and the target of the referral are specified via the participant (and not via the author).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ReferralDocumentType](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.3 DYNAMIC](#) (CONF:1198-28949).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-31589).
 - a. This informationRecipient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **intendedRecipient** (CONF:1198-31590).
 - i. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1198-31591).
 - ii. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-31592).
 - iii. This intendedRecipient **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-31593).
 1. This informationRecipient **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier:

urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-31594).

5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31642) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="IND" Indirect (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-31924).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31643).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [INRoleclassCodes](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-31925).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31644).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [US Realm Patient Name \(PTN.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1) (CONF:1198-31645).

This participant represents the clinician to contact for questions about the referral note. This call back contact individual may be a different person than the individual(s) identified in the author or legalAuthenticator participant.

6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31647) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CALLBCK" call back contact (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 DYNAMIC) (CONF:1198-31648).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31649).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ASSIGNED" assigned entity (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110) (CONF:1198-32419).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31650).
 - iii. This associatedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1198-31651).
 - iv. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-31652).
 - v. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31653).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-31654).
 - vi. This associatedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **scopingOrganization** (CONF:1198-31655).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29062).
 - a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-29063).
 - i. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29066) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-29067).

- ii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29068) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directives Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29069).
- iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29074) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-29075).
- iv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29076) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29077).
- v. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29082) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29083).
- vi. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29086) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29087).
- vii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29088) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-29089).
- viii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29090) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29091).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29092) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18) (CONF:1198-29093).

- x. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29094) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29095).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29096) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29097).
- xii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29098) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-29099).
- xiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-29100) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-29101).
- xiv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30780) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57) (CONF:1198-30781).
- xv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30796) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30926).
- xvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30798) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medical Equipment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30799).
- xvii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30911) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30912).

xviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30913) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) (CONF:1198-30914).

xix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30915) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30916).

xx. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30917) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30918).

xxi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30919) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] General Status Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5) (CONF:1198-30920).

xxii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30922) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30923).

xxiii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30924) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Reason for Referral Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30925).

xxiv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09), or an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) and a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-29102).

xxv. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-29103).

Table 53: ReferralDocumentType

Value Set: ReferralDocumentType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.3 (Clinical Focus: A LOINC concept that indicates the focus of the referral note),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA r2.1 @code in ReferralNote(V2) [ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.14:2015-08-01 (open)] DYNAMIC),(Inclusion Criteria: LOINC document concepts for referral notes),(Exclusion Criteria: only those in the inclusion criteria)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190516.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.3/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
57133-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Referral note
57134-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dentistry Referral note
57135-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dermatology Referral note
57136-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diabetology Referral note
57137-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Endocrinology Referral note
57138-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Gastroenterology Referral note
57139-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	General medicine Referral note
57141-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Infectious disease Referral note
57142-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Kinesiotherapy Referral note
57143-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Mental health Referral note
...			

Figure 37: Referral Note informationRecipient Example

```
<informationRecipient>
  <intendedRecipient>
    <informationRecipient>
      <name>
        <given>Nancy</given>
        <family>Nightingale</family>
        <suffix qualifier="AC">RN</suffix>
      </name>
    </informationRecipient>
    <receivedOrganization>
      <name>Community Health and Hospitals</name>
      <telecom value="tel:+1(555)-555-1002" use="WP" />
      <addr use="WP">
        <streetAddressLine>Cardiac Stepdown Unit, 4B </streetAddressLine>
        <streetAddressLine>1002 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
        <city>Ann Arbor</city>
        <state>MI</state>
        <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
      </addr>
    </receivedOrganization>
  </intendedRecipient>
</informationRecipient>
```

Figure 38: Referral Note Caregiver Example

```
<participant typeCode="IND">
  <functionCode code="407543004" displayName="Primary Carer"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
  <!-- Caregiver -->
  <associatedEntity classCode="CAREGIVER">
    <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Ann Arbor</city>
      <state>MI</state>
      <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel: 1+(555)555-1212" use="WP" />
    <associatedPerson>
      <name>
        <prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
        <given>Martha</given>
        <family>Jones</family>
      </name>
    </associatedPerson>
  </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

Figure 39: Referral Note Callback Contact Example

```
<participant typeCode="CALLBCK">
  <time value="20050329224411+0500" />
  <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">
    <id extension="99999999" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="200000000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" />
    displayName="Allopathic & Osteopathic Physicians" />
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1002 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
      <city>Ann Arbor</city>
      <state>MI</state>
      <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:555-555-1002" />
    <associatedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Henry</given>
        <family>Seven</family>
        <suffix>DO</suffix>
      </name>
    </associatedPerson>
  </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

1.1.21 Transfer Summary (V2)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.13:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 54: Transfer Summary (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Assessment Section (optional) Review of Systems Section (optional) History of Present Illness Section (optional) General Status Section (optional) Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (required) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Section (optional) Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (optional) Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Reason for Referral Section (V2) (required) Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional) Course of Care Section (optional) Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional) Mental Status Section (V2) (optional) Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional) Results Section (entries required) (V3) (required)

Contained By:	Contains:
	<p>Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Past Medical History (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Payers Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Social History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Family History Section (V3) (optional)</p> <p>Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (required)</p> <p>Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)</p>

This document describes constraints on the Clinical Document Architecture (CDA) header and body elements for a Transfer Summary. The Transfer Summary standardizes critical information for exchange of information between providers of care when a patient moves between health care settings. Standardization of information used in this form will promote interoperability; create information suitable for reuse in quality measurement, public health, research, and for reimbursement.

Table 55: Transfer Summary (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.13:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28239	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28240	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.13
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32907	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28243	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.4 (TransferDocumentType)
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-29838	
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31599	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31872	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = IND
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31600	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31873	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 (INDRoleclassCodes)
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31601	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31602	
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31626	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31627	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CALLBCK
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-31628	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31641	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 (HL7RoleClass) = ASSIGNED
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31629	
addr	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31630	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1198-31631	
associatedPerson	1..1	SHALL		1198-31632	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-31633	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
scopingOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-31634	
documentationOf	1..1	SHALL		1198-31570	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-31571	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31572	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PCPR
code	0..1	MAY		1198-32650	
performer	1..*	SHALL		1198-31574	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31575	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = PRF
functionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-32651	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28251	
structuredBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-28252	
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28253	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28254	Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.21.1:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28255	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28256	Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28257	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28258	Physical Exam Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.2.10:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28261	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28262	Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.22.1:2015-08-01

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28263	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28264	Family History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28265	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28266	Functional Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28271	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28272	Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28273	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28274	Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28275	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28276	Medical Equipment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28277	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28278	Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28279	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28280	Payers Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28281	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28282	Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				28283	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28284	Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28285	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28286	Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28287	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28288	Results Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28289	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28290	Social History Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-28291	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28292	Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28327	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28328	Mental Status Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01
component	0..1	MAY		1198-28838	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-28839	General Status Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5
component	0..1	MAY		1198-30239	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30240	Review of Systems Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-30776	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-30777	Nutrition Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-31342	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31343	Reason for Referral Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-31561	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31562	Past Medical History (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31563	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31564	History of Present Illness Section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-31565	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31566	Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-31567	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-31568	Assessment Section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32445	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32446	Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32447	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32448	Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01)
component	0..1	MAY		1198-32648	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32649	Course of Care Section (identifier:)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: [urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01](#)).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28239) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.13" (CONF:1198-28240).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32907).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32946).

The Transfer Summary recommends use of the document type code 18761-7 "Provider Unspecified Transfer Summary", with further specification provided by author or performer, setting, or specialty. When pre-coordinated codes are used, any coded values describing the author or performer of the service act or the practice setting must be consistent with the LOINC document type. For example, an Obstetrics and Gynecology Transfer Summary note would not be authored by a Pediatric Cardiologist.

Pre-coordinated codes are those that indicate the specialty or service provided in the LOINC Long Common Name (Print Name in the TransferDocumentType valueSet table).

When using a generic type of code such as 18761-7 (Provider - Unspecified Transfer Summary), the types of services involved in the care are handled in documentationOf/serviceEvent with the use of serviceEvent/code (e.g., use a SNOMED CT procedure code such as 69031006 (Excision of breast tissue) while performers/providers involved in the care can be identified using the functionCode (bound to Healthcare Provider Taxonomy role codes).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [TransferDocumentType](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.4 DYNAMIC](#) (CONF:1198-28243).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-29838).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31599) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="IND" indirect (CodeSystem: [HL7ParticipationType](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90](#)) (CONF:1198-31872).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31600).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [INDRoleclassCodes](#) [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 DYNAMIC](#) (CONF:1198-31873).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31601).
 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-31602).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-31626) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="CALLBCK"** Call back contact (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1198-31627).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-31628).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ASSIGNED"** assigned entity (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110) (CONF:1198-31641).
 - ii. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31629).
 - iii. This associatedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1198-31630).
 - iv. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-31631).
 - v. This associatedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedPerson** (CONF:1198-31632).
 - 1. This associatedPerson **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-31633).
 - vi. This associatedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **scopingOrganization** (CONF:1198-31634).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **documentationOf** (CONF:1198-31570).

The serviceEvent in a Transfer Note contains the representation of providers who are wholly or partially responsible for the safety and well-being of a subject of care.

- a. This documentationOf **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-31571).
 - i. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="PCPR"** Care Provision (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-31572).

Use serviceEvent/code when using a generic document type code such as 18761-7 (Provider-Unspecified Transfer Summary) to represent the service.

- ii. This serviceEvent **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-32650).
- iii. This serviceEvent **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-31574) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="PRF"** Participation of Physical Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **DYNAMIC**) (CONF:1198-31575).

Use performer/functionCode when using a generic document type code such as 18761-7 (Provider-Unspecified Transfer Summary) to represent the provider.

- 2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **functionCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32651).

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28251).

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **structuredBody** (CONF:1198-28252).

- i. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28253) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directives Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28254).
- ii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28255) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28256).
- iii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28257) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Physical Exam Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28258).
- iv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28261) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounters Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28262).
- v. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28263) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28264).
- vi. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28265) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Section \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-28266).
- vii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28271) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Discharge Diagnosis Section \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28272).
- viii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28273) such that it
 - 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunizations Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) (identifier:

- urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28274).
- ix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28275) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medical Equipment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28276).
- x. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28277) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medications Section \(entries required\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28278).
- xi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28279) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Payers Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28280).
- xii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28281) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Plan of Treatment Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28282).
- xiii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28283) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28284).
- xiv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28285) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedures Section \(entries required\) \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-28286).
- xv. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28287) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Results Section \(entries required\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-28288).
- xvi. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28289) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Section \(V3\)](#)
 (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-28290).
- xvii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-28291) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Section \(entries required\) \(V3\)](#)
 (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-28292).
- xviii. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-28327) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Section \(V2\)](#)
 (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-28328).
- xix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-28838) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [General Status Section](#)
 (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5)
 (CONF:1198-28839).
- xx. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-30239) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Review of Systems Section](#)
 (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)
 (CONF:1198-30240).
- xi. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-30776) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Section](#)
 (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)
 (CONF:1198-30777).
- xxii. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-31342) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reason for Referral Section \(V2\)](#)
 (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09)
 (CONF:1198-31343).
- xxiii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-31561) such that it
1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Past Medical History \(V3\)](#)
 (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-31562).
- xxiv. This structuredBody **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **component**
 (CONF:1198-31563) such that it

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [History of Present Illness Section](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4) (CONF:1198-31564).
xxv. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-31565) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment and Plan Section \(v2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)
(CONF:1198-31566).
- xxvi. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-31567) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)
(CONF:1198-31568).
- xxvii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32445) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Admission Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-32446).
- xxviii. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32447) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Admission Diagnosis Section \(v3\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01)
(CONF:1198-32448).
- xxix. This structuredBody **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **component** (CONF:1198-32648) such that it
 1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Course of Care Section](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64)
(CONF:1198-32649).
- xxx. This structuredBody **SHALL** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09), or an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) and a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31582).
- xxxi. This structuredBody **SHALL NOT** contain an Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09) when either an Assessment Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8) or a Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09) is present (CONF:1198-31583).

Table 56: TransferDocumentType

Value Set: TransferDocumentType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.4 (Clinical Focus: A LOINC concept that indicates the focus of the Patient Transfer note),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA r2.1 @code in TransferSummary(V2) [ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.13:2015-08-01 (open)] DYNAMIC),(Inclusion Criteria: LOINC document concepts representing a transfer summary where component = 'transfer summary note' and scale = 'DOC'),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190516.			
Value Set Source:			
https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.4/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
18761-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Transfer summary note
28616-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physician Transfer note
28651-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nurse Transfer note
34755-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Critical care medicine Transfer summary note
34770-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	General medicine Transfer summary note
68482-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Nurse Hospital Transfer summary note
68565-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Obstetrics and Gynecology Transfer summary note
68569-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Occupational therapy Transfer summary note
68583-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Orthopaedic surgery Transfer summary note
68596-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Plastic surgery Transfer summary note
...			

Figure 40: Transfer Summary participant (Support) Example

```
<participant typeCode="IND">
    <time xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="19590101" />
        <high value="20111025" />
    </time>
    <associatedEntity classCode="ECON">
        <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Ann Arbor</city>
            <state>MI</state>
            <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:(999)555-1212" use="WP" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
                <given>Martha</given>
                <family>Jones</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
<participant typeCode="IND">
    <functionCode code="407543004" displayName="Primary Carer"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
    <time xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="19590101" />
        <high value="20111025" />
    </time>
    <associatedEntity classCode="CAREGIVER">
        <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Ann Arbor</city>
            <state>MI</state>
            <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:(999)555-1212" use="WP" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
                <given>Martha</given>
                <family>Jones</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

Figure 41: Transfer Summary Callback Contact Example

```
<participant typeCode="CALLBCK">
    <time value="20050329224411+0500" />
    <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">
        <id extension="99999999" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="200000000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
displayName="Allopathic & Osteopathic Physicians" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>1002 Healthcare Drive </streetAddressLine>
            <city>Ann Arbor</city>
            <state>MI</state>
            <postalCode>97857</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:555-555-1002" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Henry</given>
                <family>Seven</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

1.1.22 Unstructured Document (V3)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.10:2015-08-01 (open)]

An Unstructured Document (UD) document type can (1) include unstructured content, such as a graphic, directly in a text element with a mediaType attribute, or (2) reference a single document file, such as a word-processing document using a text/reference element.

For guidance on how to handle multiple files, on the selection of media types for this IG, and on the identification of external files, see the examples that follow the constraints below.

IHE's XDS-SD (Cross-Transaction Specifications and Content Specifications, Scanned Documents Module) profile addresses a similar, more restricted use case, specifically for scanned documents or documents electronically created from existing text sources, and limits content to PDF-A or text. This Unstructured Documents template is applicable not only for scanned documents in non-PDF formats, but also for clinical documents produced through word processing applications, etc.

For conformance with both specifications, implementers need to ensure that their documents at a minimum conform with the SHALL constraints from either specification.

Table 57: Unstructured Document (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.10:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7710	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10054	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.10
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32522	2015-08-01
recordTarget	1..*	SHALL		1198-31089	
patientRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-31090	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-31091	
custodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-31096	
assignedCustodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-31097	
representedCustodianOrganization	1..1	SHALL		1198-31098	
component	1..1	SHALL		1198-31085	
nonXMLBody	1..1	SHALL		1198-31086	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-31087	

1.1.23 Properties

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7710) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.10" (CONF:1198-10054).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32522).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32944).

1.1.23.1 recordTarget

3. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **recordTarget** (CONF:1198-31089).

- a. Such recordTargets **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **patientRole** (CONF:1198-31090).
 - i. This patientRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-31091).

1.1.23.2 custodian

- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **custodian** (CONF:1198-31096).
 - a. This custodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedCustodian** (CONF:1198-31097).
 - i. This assignedCustodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **representedCustodianOrganization** (CONF:1198-31098).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **component** (CONF:1198-31085).

1.1.23.3 nonXMLBody

An Unstructured Document must include a nonXMLBody component with a single text element. The text element can reference an external file using a reference element, or include unstructured content directly with a mediaType attribute. The nonXMLBody/text element also has a "compression" attribute that can be used to indicate that the unstructured content was compressed before being Base64Encoded. At a minimum, a compression value of "DF" for the deflate compression algorithm (RFC 1951 [URL:<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1951.txt>]) must be supported although it is not required that content be compressed.

- a. This component **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **nonXMLBody** (CONF:1198-31086).
 - i. This nonXMLBody **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-31087).
 - 1. If the text element does not contain a reference element with a value attribute, then it **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @representation="B64" and exactly one [1..1] @mediaType (CONF:1198-7624).
 - 2. The value of @mediaType, if present, **SHALL** be drawn from the value set 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.7.1 SupportedFileFormats STATIC 2010-05-12 (CONF:1198-7623).

Table 58: SupportedFileFormats

Value Set: SupportedFileFormats urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.7.1 A value set of the file formats supported by the Unstructured Document IG. Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
application/m sword	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	MSWORD
application/p df	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	PDF
text/plain	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	Plain Text
text/rtf	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	RTF Text
text/html	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	HTML Text
image/gif	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	GIF Image
image/tiff	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	TIF Image
image/jpeg	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	JPEG Image
image/png	Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79	PNG Image

Figure 42: nonXMLBody Example with Embedded Content

```
<component>
  <nonXMLBody>
    <text mediaType="text/rtf" representation="B64">elxydGY...</text>
  </nonXMLBody>
</component>
```

Figure 43: nonXMLBody Example with Referenced Content

```
<component>
  <nonXMLBody>
    <text>
      <reference value="UD_sample.pdf" />
    </text>
  </nonXMLBody>
</component>
```

Figure 44: nonXMLBody Example with Compressed Content

```
<component>
  <nonXMLBody>
    <text mediaType="text/rtf" representation="B64"
compression="DF">dhUhkasd437hbjfQS7...</text>
  </nonXMLBody>
</component>
```

1.1.24 US Realm Header for Patient Generated Document (V2)

[ClinicalDocument: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.29.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

This template is designed to be used in conjunction with the US Realm Header (V2). It includes additional conformances which further constrain the US Realm Header (V2).

The Patient Generated Document Header template is not a separate document type. The document body may contain any structured or unstructured content from C-CDA.

Table 59: US Realm Header for Patient Generated Document (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
ClinicalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.29.1:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28458	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28459	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.29.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32917	2015-08-01
recordTarget	1..1	SHALL		1198-28460	
patientRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-28461	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28462	
patient	1..1	SHALL		1198-28465	
guardian	0..*	MAY		1198-28469	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1198-28470	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28473	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
languageCommunication	0..*	SHOULD		1198-28474	
preferenceInd	0..1	MAY		1198-28475	
providerOrganization	0..1	MAY		1198-28476	
author	1..*	SHALL		1198-28477	
assignedAuthor	1..1	SHALL		1198-28478	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28479	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28481	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28676	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
dataEnterer	0..1	MAY		1198-28678	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28679	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-28680	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					Relationship Role Type)
informant	0..*	MAY		1198-28681	
relatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28682	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-28683	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28684	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
custodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-28685	
assignedCustodian	1..1	SHALL		1198-28686	
representedCustodianOrganization	1..1	SHALL		1198-28687	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28688	
informationRecipient	0..*	MAY		1198-28690	
intendedRecipient	1..1	SHALL		1198-28691	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1198-28692	
@root	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28693	
legalAuthenticator	0..1	MAY		1198-28694	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28695	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28696	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-28697	
@code	0..1	MAY		1198-28698	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
authenticator	0..*	MAY		1198-28699	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28700	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28701	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28702	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-28703	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-28704	
associatedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28705	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28706	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
inFulfillmentOf	0..*	MAY		1198-28707	
order	1..1	SHALL		1198-28708	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28709	
documentationOf	0..*	MAY		1198-28710	
serviceEvent	1..1	SHALL		1198-28711	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28712	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1198-28713	
functionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-28714	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-28715	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28716	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-28718	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)

1. Conforms to [US Realm Header \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.1.1:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28458) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.29.1" (CONF:1198-28459).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32917).
 - c. When asserting this templateId, all C-CDA 2.1 section and entry templates that had a previous version in C-CDA R1.1 **SHALL** include both the C-CDA 2.1 templateId and the C-CDA R1.1 templateId root without an extension. See C-CDA R2.1 Volume 1 - Design Considerations for additional detail (CONF:1198-32945).

The recordTarget records the patient whose health information is described by the clinical document; each recordTarget must contain at least one patientRole element.

If the document receiver is interested in setting up a translator for the encounter with the patient, the receiver of the document will have to infer the need for a translator, based upon the language skills identified for the patient, the patient's language of preference and the predominant language used by the organization receiving the CDA.

HL7 Vocabulary simply describes guardian as a relationship to a ward. This need not be a formal legal relationship. When a guardian relationship exists for the patient, it can be represented, regardless of who is present at the time the document is generated. This need not be a formal legal relationship. A child's parent can be represented in the guardian role. In this case, the guardian/code element would encode the personal relationship of "mother" for the child's mom or "father" for the child's dad. An elderly person's child can be represented in the guardian role. In this case, the guardian/code element would encode the personal relationship of "daughter" or "son", or if a legal relationship existed, the relationship of "legal guardian" could be encoded.

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **recordTarget** (CONF:1198-28460).
 - a. This recordTarget **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **patientRole** (CONF:1198-28461).
 - i. This patientRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28462).
 - ii. This patientRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **patient** (CONF:1198-28465).
 1. This patient **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **guardian** (CONF:1198-28469).
 - a. The guardian, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28470).
 - b. The guardian, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28473).
 2. This patient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **languageCommunication** (CONF:1198-28474).
 - a. The languageCommunication, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **preferenceInd** (CONF:1198-28475).
Note: Indicates a preference for information about care delivery and treatments be communicated (or translated if needed) into this language.

If more than one languageCommunication is present, only one languageCommunication element SHALL have a preferenceInd with a value of 1.

If present, this organization represents the provider organization where the person is claiming to be a patient.

- iii. This patientRole **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **providerOrganization** (CONF:1198-28476).
Note: If present, this organization represents the provider organization where the person is claiming to be a patient.

The author element represents the creator of the clinical document. The author may be a device, or a person. The person is the patient or the patient's advocate.

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **author** (CONF:1198-28477).
 - a. Such authors **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedAuthor** (CONF:1198-28478).
 - i. This assignedAuthor **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28479).
 - ii. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28481).
 1. The code, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28676).

The dataEnterer element represents the person who transferred the content, written or dictated by someone else, into the clinical document. The guiding rule of thumb is that an author provides the content found within the header or body of the document, subject to their own interpretation, and the dataEnterer adds that information to the electronic system. In other words, a dataEnterer transfers information from one source to another (e.g., transcription from paper form to electronic system). If the dataEnterer is missing, this role is assumed to be played by the author.

5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **dataEnterer** (CONF:1198-28678).
 - a. The dataEnterer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-28679).
 - i. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28680).

The informant element describes the source of the information in a medical document.

Assigned health care providers may be a source of information when a document is created. (e.g., a nurse's aide who provides information about a recent significant health care event that occurred within an acute care facility.) In these cases, the assignedEntity element is used.

When the informant is a personal relation, that informant is represented in the relatedEntity element, even if the personal relation is a medical professional. The code element of the relatedEntity describes the relationship between the informant and the patient. The relationship between the informant and the patient needs to be described to help the receiver of the clinical document understand the information in the document.

Each informant can be either an assignedEntity (a clinician serving the patient) OR a relatedEntity (a person with a personal or legal relationship with the patient). The constraints here apply to relatedEntity.

6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informant** (CONF:1198-28681) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **relatedEntity** (CONF:1198-28682).
 - i. This relatedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28683).

1. The code, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28684).

The custodian element represents the organization or person that is in charge of maintaining the document. The custodian is the steward that is entrusted with the care of the document. Every CDA document has exactly one custodian. The custodian participation satisfies the CDA definition of Stewardship. Because CDA is an exchange standard and may not represent the original form of the authenticated document (e.g., CDA could include scanned copy of original), the custodian represents the steward of the original source document. The custodian may be the document originator, a health information exchange, or other responsible party. Also, the custodian may be the patient or an organization acting on behalf of the patient, such as a PHR organization.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **custodian** (CONF:1198-28685).
 - a. This custodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedCustodian** (CONF:1198-28686).
 - i. This assignedCustodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **representedCustodianOrganization** (CONF:1198-28687).

The representedCustodianOrganization may be the person when the document is not maintained by an organization.

- i. This assignedCustodian **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **representedCustodianOrganization** (CONF:1198-28687).

The combined @root and @extension attributes record the custodian organization's identity in a secure, trusted, and unique way.

1. This representedCustodianOrganization **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28688).

The informationRecipient element records the intended recipient of the information at the time the document is created. For example, in cases where the intended recipient of the document is the patient's health chart, set the receivedOrganization to be the scoping organization for that chart.

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **informationRecipient** (CONF:1198-28690).
 - a. The informationRecipient, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **intendedRecipient** (CONF:1198-28691).

The combined @root and @extension attributes to record the information recipient's identity in a secure, trusted, and unique way.

- i. This intendedRecipient **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28692).

For a provider, the id/@root ="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" indicates the National Provider Identifier where id/@extension is the NPI number for the provider.

The ids MAY reference the id of a person or organization entity specified elsewhere in the document.

1. The id, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @root (CONF:1198-28693).

In a patient authored document, the legalAuthenticator identifies the single person legally responsible for the document and must be present if the document has been legally authenticated. (Note that per the following section, there may also be one or more document authenticators.)

Based on local practice, patient authored documents may be provided without legal authentication. This implies that a patient authored document that does not contain this element has not been legally authenticated.

The act of legal authentication requires a certain privilege be granted to the legal authenticator depending upon local policy. All patient documents have the potential for legal authentication, given the appropriate legal authority.

Local policies MAY choose to delegate the function of legal authentication to a device or system that generates the document. In these cases, the legal authenticator is the person accepting responsibility for the document, not the generating device or system.

Note that the legal authenticator, if present, must be a person.

9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **legalAuthenticator** (CONF:1198-28694).

- a. The legalAuthenticator, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-28695).

The combined @root and @extension attributes to record the information recipient's identity in a secure, trusted, and unique way.

- i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28696).
- ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28697).
 1. The code, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28698).

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **authenticator** (CONF:1198-28699).

- a. The authenticator, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-28700).

The combined @root and @extension attributes to record the authenticator's identity in a secure, trusted, and unique way.

- i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28701).
- ii. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28702).

The participant element identifies other supporting participants, including parents, relatives, caregivers, insurance policyholders, guarantors, and other participants related in some way to the patient.

A supporting person or organization is an individual or an organization with a relationship to the patient. A supporting person who is playing multiple roles would be recorded in multiple participants (e.g., emergency contact and next-of-kin)

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-28703).

Unless otherwise specified by the document specific header constraints, when participant/@typeCode is IND, associatedEntity/@classCode SHALL be selected from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33 INDRoleclassCodes STATIC 2011-09-30

- a. The participant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode** (CONF:1198-28704).
 - b. The participant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **associatedEntity** (CONF:1198-28705).
 - i. This associatedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28706).
12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **inFulfillmentof** (CONF:1198-28707).
- a. The **inFulfillmentOf**, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **order** (CONF:1198-28708).

A scheduled appointment or service event in a practice management system may be represented using this id element.

- i. This **order** **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28709).
13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **documentationof** (CONF:1198-28710).
- a. The **documentationOf**, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **serviceEvent** (CONF:1198-28711).

The code should be selected from a value set established by the document-level template for a specific type of Patient Generated Document.

- i. This **serviceEvent** **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28712).
- ii. This **serviceEvent** **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-28713).

The functionCode SHALL be selected from value set ParticipationType 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10901

When indicating the performer was the primary care physician the functionCode shall be =”PCP”

- 1. The performer, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **functionCode** (CONF:1198-28714).
- 2. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-28715).

The combined @root and @extension attributes record the performer’s identity in a secure, trusted, and unique way.

- a. This **assignedEntity** **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28716).

If the assignedEntity is an individual, the code SHOULD be selected from value set PersonalandLegalRelationshipRoleType value set

- b. This **assignedEntity** **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28718).

Figure 45: Patient Generated Document recordTarget Example

```

<recordTarget>
  <patientRole>
    <id extension="444-22-2222" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.1" />
    <!-- Example Social Security Number using the actual SSN OID. -->
    <addr use="HP">
      <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
      <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Beaverton</city>
      <state>OR</state>
      <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
      <country>US</country>
      <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2003" use="HP" />
    <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
    <patient>
      <!-- The first name element represents what the patient is known as -->
      <name use="L">
        <given>Eve</given>
        <!-- The "SP" is "Spouse" from
            HL7 Code System EntityNamePartQualifier 2.16.840.1.113883.5.43 -->
        <family qualifier="SP">Betterhalf</family>
      </name>
      <!-- The second name element represents another name
          associated with the patient -->
      <name>
        <given>Eve</given>
        <!-- The "BR" is "Birth" from
            HL7 Code System EntityNamePartQualifier 2.16.840.1.113883.5.43 -->
        <family qualifier="BR">Everywoman</family>
      </name>
      <administrativeGenderCode code="F" displayName="Female"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.1" codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender" />
      <!-- Date of birth need only be precise to the day -->
      <birthTime value="19750501" />
      <maritalStatusCode code="M" displayName="Married"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.2" codeSystemName="MaritalStatusCode" />
      <religiousAffiliationCode code="1013" displayName="Christian (non-Catholic,
non-specific)" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.1076" codeSystemName="HL7 Religious
Affiliation" />
      <!-- CDC Race and Ethnicity code set contains the five minimum
          race and ethnicity categories defined by OMB Standards -->
      <raceCode code="2106-3" displayName="White"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <!-- The raceCode extension is only used if raceCode is valued -->
      <sdtc:raceCode code="2076-8" displayName="Hawaiian or Other Pacific Islander"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <ethnicGroupCode code="2186-5" displayName="Not Hispanic or Latino"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.238" codeSystemName="Race & Ethnicity - CDC" />
      <guardian>
        <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.1" extension="111-22-3333" />
        <code code="POWATT" displayName="Power of Attorney"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19830" codeSystemName="ResponsibleParty" />
        <addr use="HP">
          <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
          <city>Beaverton</city>
          <state>OR</state>

```

```

<postalCode>97867</postalCode>
    <country>US</country>
</addr>
<telecom value="tel:+1(555)555-2008" use="MC" />
<guardianPerson>
    <name>
        <given>Boris</given>
        <given qualifier="CL">Bo</given>
        <family>Betterhalf</family>
    </name>
</guardianPerson>
</guardian>
<birthplace>
    <place>
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>4444 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Beaverton</city>
            <state>OR</state>
            <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
    </place>
</birthplace>
<languageCommunication>
    <languageCode code="eng" />
    <!-- "eng" is ISO 639-2 alpha-3 code for "English" -->
    <modeCode code="ESP" displayName="Expressed spoken"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.60" codeSystemName="LanguageAbilityMode" />
    <proficiencyLevelCode code="G" displayName="Good"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.61" codeSystemName="LanguageAbilityProficiency" />
    <!-- Patient's preferred language -->
    <preferenceInd value="true" />
</languageCommunication>
</patient>
<providerOrganization>
    <id extension="219BX" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
    <name>The DoctorsTogether Physician Group</name>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-5000" />
    <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>1007 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Portland</city>
        <state>OR</state>
        <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
    </addr>
</providerOrganization>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

```

Figure 46: Patient Generated Document author Example

```
<author>
    <time value="20121126145000-0500" />
    <assignedAuthor>
        <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
        <id extension="adameveryman@direct.sampleHISP.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.1234"
/>
        <!--
The PGD Header Template includes further conformance constraints on the code element
to encode the personal or legal
relationship of the author when they are person who is not acting in the role of a
clinician..
-->
        <code code="ONESELF" displayName="Self" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"
codeSystemName="HL7 Role code" />
        <addr use="HP">
            <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
            <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Boston</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
        <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Adam</given>
                <family>Everyman</family>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Figure 47: Patient Generated Document author device Example

```
<!-- The Author below documents the system used to create the Patient Generated Document.
In this scenario the Patient is using a fictitious PHR Service called
MyPersonalHealthRecord.com.
It is a service which consumers purchase to receive and create their electronic health
records.
It is not a Patient Portal that is tethered to some other EMR or medical insurance
records system.
The service is developed by a company call ACME PHR Solutions, Inc. -->
<author>
    <time value="20121126145000-0500" />
    <assignedAuthor>
        <id extension="777.11" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
        <addr nullFlavor="NA" />
        <telecom nullFlavor="NA" />
        <assignedAuthoringDevice>
            <manufacturerModelName>ACME PHR</manufacturerModelName>
            <softwareName>MyPHR v1.0</softwareName>
        </assignedAuthoringDevice>
        <representedOrganization>
            <id extension="999" root="1.2.3.4.5.6.7.8.9.12345" />
            <name>ACME PHR Solutions, Inc.</name>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:123-123-12345" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>4 Future Way</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Provenance</city>
                <state>RI</state>
                <postalCode>02919</postalCode>
            </addr>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Figure 48: Patient Generated Document dataEnterer Example

```
<dataEnterer>
  <assignedEntity>
    <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
    a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
    <id extension="adameveryman@direct.sampleHISP.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.1234"
/>
    <code code="ONESELF" displayName="Self" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"
codeSystemName="HL7 Role code" />
    <addr use="HP">
      <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
      <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Boston</city>
      <state>MA</state>
      <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
      <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
    <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Adam</given>
        <family>Everyman</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</dataEnterer>
```

Figure 49: Patient Generated Document informant Example <informant>

```
<informant>
  <assignedEntity>
    <!-- id using HL7 example OID. -->
    <id extension="999.1" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code code="ONESELF" displayName="Self" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"
codeSystemName="HL7 Role code" />
    <addr use="HP">
      <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
      <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Boston</city>
      <state>MA</state>
      <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
      <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
    <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Adam</given>
        <family>Everyman</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</informant>
```

Figure 50: Patient Generated Document informant RelEnt Example

```
<informant>
  <!-- An Errata has been accepted to allow relatedEntity under Informant. #XXXX -->
  <relatedEntity classCode="IND">
    <!-- id using HL7 example OID. -->
    <id extension="999.17" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code code="SIS" displayName="Sister" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1"
codeSystemName="Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type" />
    <addr use="HP">
      <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
      <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Boston</city>
      <state>MA</state>
      <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
      <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
      <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
    <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Alice</given>
        <family>Everyman</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </relatedEntity>
</informant>
```

Figure 51: Patient Generated Document custodian Example

```
<custodian>
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <!-- id using HL7 example OID. -->
      <id extension="999.3" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
      <name>MyPersonalHealthRecord.Com</name>
      <telecom value="tel:(555)555-1212" use="WP" />
      <addr use="WP">
        <streetAddressLine>123 Boylston Street</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Blue Hill</city>
        <state>MA</state>
        <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
        <country>USA</country>
      </addr>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>
```

Figure 52: Patient Generated Document informationRecipient

```
<!-- The document is intended for multiple recipients, Adam himself and his PCP physician.
-->
<informationRecipient>
    <intendedRecipient>
        <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
        <id extension="adameveryman@direct.sampleHISP.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.1234"
/>
        <informationRecipient>
            <name>
                <given>Adam</given>
                <family>Everyman</family>
            </name>
        </informationRecipient>
        <receivedOrganization>
            <!-- id using HL7 example OID. -->
            <id extension="999.3" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
            <name>MyPersonalHealthRecord.Com</name>
        </receivedOrganization>
    </intendedRecipient>
</informationRecipient>
<informationRecipient>
    <intendedRecipient>
        <!-- Unique/Trusted id using HL7 example OID. -->
        <id extension="999.4" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
        <!-- The physician's NPI number -->
        <id extension="1122334455" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <!-- The physician's Direct Address -->
        <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
        <id extension="DrP@direct.sampleHISP2.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.4321" />
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:(781)555-1212" />
        <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:DrP@direct.sampleHISP2.com" />
        <informationRecipient>
            <name>
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Patricia</given>
                <family>Primary</family>
            </name>
        </informationRecipient>
        <receivedOrganization>
            <!-- Unique/Trusted id using HL7 example OID. -->
            <id extension="999.2" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
            <!-- NPI for the organization -->
            <id extension="1234567890" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
            <name>Good Health Internal Medicine</name>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:(781)555-1212" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>100 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Boston</city>
                <state>MA</state>
                <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
                <country>USA</country>
            </addr>
        </receivedOrganization>
    </intendedRecipient>
</informationRecipient>
```

```

        </addr>
    </receivedOrganization>
</intendedRecipient>
</informationRecipient>

```

Figure 53: Patient Generated Document legalAuthenticator Example

```

<legalAuthenticator>
    <time value="20121126145000-0500" />
    <signatureCode code="S" />
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
        <id extension="adameveryman@direct.sampleHISP.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.1234"
/>
        <addr use="HP">
            <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
            <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Boston</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
        <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Adam</given>
                <family>Everyman</family>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>

```

Figure 54: Patient Generated Document authenticator Example

```
<authenticator>
    <time value="20121126145000-0500" />
    <signatureCode code="S" />
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- Identifier based on the person's Direct Address which is a secure and trusted
mechanism for identifying
a person discretely. The root of the id is the OID of the HISP Assigning Authority for
the Direct Address-->
        <id extension="adameveryman@direct.sampleHISP.com" root="2.16.123.123.12345.1234"
/>
        <addr use="HP">
            <!-- HP is "primary home" from codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
            <streetAddressLine>2222 Home Street</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Boston</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <!-- HP is "primary home" from HL7 AddressUse 2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119 -->
        <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2004" use="HP" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Adam</given>
                <family>Everyman</family>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</authenticator>
```

Figure 55: Patient Generated Document participant Example

```
<participant typeCode="IND">
    <time xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="19551125" />
        <high value="20121126" />
    </time>
    <associatedEntity classCode="NOK">
        <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
        <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Blue Bell</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom value="tel:(555)555-2006" use="WP" />
        <associatedPerson>
            <name>
                <prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
                <given>Martha</given>
                <family>Mum</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>
```

Figure 56: Patient Generated Document inFulfillmentOf Example

```
<inFulfillmentOf>
    <order>
        <!-- The root identifies the EMR system at the Good Health Internal Medicine
Practice -->
        <id extension="Ord12345" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6.1234567890.4" />
    </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>
```

2 SECTION-LEVEL TEMPLATES

This chapter contains the section-level templates referenced by one or more of the document types of this consolidated guide. These templates describe the purpose of each section and the section-level constraints.

Section-level templates are always included in a document. One and only one of each section type is allowed in a given document instance. Please see the document context tables to determine the sections that are contained in a given document type. Please see the conformance verb in the conformance statements to determine if it is required (SHALL), strongly recommended (SHOULD), or optional (MAY).

Each section-level template contains the following:

- Template metadata (e.g., templateId, etc.)
- Description and explanatory narrative
- LOINC section code
- Section title
- Requirements for a text element
- Entry-level template names and Ids for referenced templates (required and optional)

Narrative Text

The text element within the section stores the narrative to be rendered, as described in the CDA R2 specification, and is referred to as the CDA narrative block.

The content model of the CDA narrative block schema is handcrafted to meet requirements of human readability and rendering. The schema is registered as a MIME type (text/x-hl7-text+xml), which is the fixed media type for the text element.

As noted in the CDA R2 specification, the document originator is responsible for ensuring that the narrative block contains the complete, human readable, attested content of the section. Structured entries support computer processing and computation and are not a replacement for the attestable, human-readable content of the CDA narrative block. The special case of structured entries with an entry relationship of "DRIV" (is derived from) indicates to the receiving application that the source of the narrative block is the structured entries, and that the contents of the two are clinically equivalent. As for all CDA documents—even when a report consisting entirely of structured entries is transformed into CDA—the encoding application must ensure that the authenticated content (narrative plus multimedia) is a faithful and complete rendering of the clinical content of the structured source data. As a general guideline, a generated narrative block should include the same human readable content that would be available to users viewing that content in the originating system. Although content formatting in the narrative block need not be identical to that in the originating system, the narrative block should use elements from the CDA narrative block schema to provide sufficient formatting to support human readability when rendered according to the rules defined in Section Narrative Block (§ 4.3.5) of the CDA R2 specification.

By definition, a receiving application cannot assume that all clinical content in a section (i.e., in the narrative block and multimedia) is contained in the structured entries unless the entries in the section have an entry relationship of "DRIV".

Additional specification information for the CDA narrative block can be found in the CDA R2 specification in sections 1.2.1, 1.2.3, 1.3, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 4.3.4.2, and 6.

2.1 Admission Diagnosis Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 60: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (optional)
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	

This section contains a narrative description of the problems or diagnoses identified by the clinician at the time of the patient's admission. This section may contain a coded entry which represents the admitting diagnoses.

Table 61: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-9930	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10391	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32563	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15479	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15480	46241-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30865	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32749	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32750	42347-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32751	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-9932	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-9933	
entry	0..1	SHOULD		1198-9934	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15481	Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-9930) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43" (CONF:1198-10391).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32563).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15479).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="46241-6" Hospital Admission diagnosis (CONF:1198-15480).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30865).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32749) such that it

- i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42347-5" Admission Diagnosis (CONF:1198-32750).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32751).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-9932).
 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-9933).
 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-9934).
 - a. The entry, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Admission Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15481).

Figure 57: Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.43" extension="2015-08-01"/>
  <code code="46241-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="Hospital Admission Diagnosis">
    <translation code="42347-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="Admission Diagnosis"></translation>
  </code>
  <title>HOSPITAL ADMISSION DIAGNOSIS</title>
  <text>Appendicitis</text>
  <entry>
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <!--Admission Diagnosis template -->
      ...
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.2 Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 62: Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Admission Medication (V2) (optional)

The section contains the medications taken by the patient prior to and at the time of admission to the facility.

Table 63: Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-10098	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10392	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32560	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15482	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15483	42346-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32142	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-10100	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-10101	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-10102	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15484	Admission Medication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-10098) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.44" (CONF:1198-10392).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32560).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15482).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42346-7" Medications on Admission (CONF:1198-15483).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32142).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-10100).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-10101).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-10102) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Admission Medication \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15484).

2.3 Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 64: Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (optional)

This section contains data defining the patient's advance directives and any reference to supporting documentation, including living wills, healthcare proxies, and CPR and resuscitation status. If the referenced documents are available, they can be included in the exchange package.

The most recent directives are required, if known, and should be listed in as much detail as possible. This section differentiates between "advance directives" and "advance directive documents". The former is the directions to be followed whereas the latter refers to a legal document containing those directions.

Table 65: Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7928	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10376	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32497	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15340	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15342	42348-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30812	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7930	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7931	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-7957	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15443	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-32891	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-32892	Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7928) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21" (CONF:1198-10376).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32497).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15340).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42348-3" Advance Directives (CONF:1198-15342).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30812).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7930).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7931).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7957) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directive Observation \(v3\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-15443).
- 6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-32891) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directive Organizer \(v2\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01)
 (CONF:1198-32892).

2.3.1 Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21.1:2015-08-01
 (open)]

Table 66: Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (optional)

This section contains data defining the patient's advance directives and any reference to supporting documentation, including living wills, healthcare proxies, and CPR and resuscitation status. If the referenced documents are available, they can be included in the exchange package.

The most recent directives are required, if known, and should be listed in as much detail as possible. This section differentiates between "advance directives" and "advance directive documents". The former is the directions to be followed whereas the latter refers to a legal document containing those directions.

Table 67: Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32800	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-30227	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-30228	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .21.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32512	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32929	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32930	42348-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-32932	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-32933	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-30235	
observation	0..1	MAY		1198-30236	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)
organizer	0..1	MAY		1198-32420	Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01)

1. Conforms to [Advance Directives Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32800).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-30227) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21.1" (CONF:1198-30228).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32512).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-32929).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42348-3" Advance Directives (CONF:1198-32930).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32931).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-32932).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-32933).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present **SHALL** contain an Advance Directive Observation *OR* an Advance Directive Organizer:

- 7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-30235) such that it
 - a. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [Advance Directive Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30236).
 - b. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [Advance Directive Organizer \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32420).
 - c. This entry **SHALL** contain *EITHER* an Advance Directive Observation (V2) *OR* an Advance Directive Organizer (CONF:1198-32881).

Figure 58: Advance Directives Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <!-- C-CDA Advance Directives Section (required entries)template id -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.21.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="42348-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" />
  <title>ADVANCE DIRECTIVES</title>
  <text>
    Narrative Text
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108" />
      <!-- ***Advance Directive Organizer template -->
      <id root="af6ebdf2-d996-11e2-a5b8-f23c91aec05e" />
    </organizer>
  </entry>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108" />
      <!-- ***Advance Directive Organizer template -->
      <id root="af6ebdf2-d996-11e2-a5b8-f23c91aec05e" />
    </organizer>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.4 Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 68: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (required) History and Physical (V3) (required) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Allergy Concern Act (V3) (optional)

This section lists and describes any medication allergies, adverse reactions, idiosyncratic reactions, anaphylaxis/anaphylactoid reactions to food items, and metabolic variations or adverse reactions/allergies to other substances (such as latex, iodine, tape adhesives). At a minimum, it should list currently active and any relevant historical allergies and adverse reactions.

Table 69: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7800	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10378	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32544	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15345	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15346	48765-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32139	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7802	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7803	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7804	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15444	Allergy Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7800) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6" (CONF:1198-10378).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32544).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15345).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="48765-2" Allergies, adverse reactions, alerts (CONF:1198-15346).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32139).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7802).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7803).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7804) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergy Concern Act \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15444).

2.4.1 Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 70: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (required) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (required)	Allergy Concern Act (V3) (required)

This section lists and describes any medication allergies, adverse reactions, idiosyncratic reactions, anaphylaxis/anaphylactoid reactions to food items, and metabolic variations or adverse reactions/allergies to other substances (such as latex, iodine, tape adhesives). At a minimum, it should list currently active and any relevant historical allergies and adverse reactions.

Table 71: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32824	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7527	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10379	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .6.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32545	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15349	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15350	48765-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32140	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7534	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7530	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-7531	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15446	Allergy Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01

1. Conforms to [Allergies and Intolerances Section \(entries optional\) \(V3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32824).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-7527) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1" (CONF:1198-10379).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32545).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15349).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="48765-2" Allergies, adverse reactions, alerts (CONF:1198-15350).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32140).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1198-7534).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1198-7530).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7531) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergy Concern Act \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15446).

Figure 59: Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.6.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="48765-2" displayName="Allergies, adverse reactions, alerts"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <title>Allergies</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- Allergy Concern Act template -->
      ...
      </act>
    </entry>
  </section>
```

2.5 Anesthesia Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 72: Anesthesia Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional)
Operative Note (V3) (required)	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional)

The Anesthesia Section records the type of anesthesia (e.g., general or local) and may state the actual agent used. This may be a subsection of the Procedure Description Section. The full details of anesthesia are usually found in a separate Anesthesia Note.

Table 73: Anesthesia Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8066	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10380	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32531	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15351	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15352	59774-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30830	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8068	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8069	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8092	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-15447	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8094	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-31127	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8066) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25" (CONF:1098-10380).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32531).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15351).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59774-0" Anesthesia (CONF:1098-15352).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30830).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8068).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8069).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8092) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15447).
- 6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8094) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31127).

Figure 60: Anesthesia Section (V2) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="59774-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName=" Anesthesia" />
  <title>Procedure Anesthesia</title>
  <text> Conscious sedation with propofol 200 mg IV </text>
  <entry>
    <procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Procedure activity procedure template -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </procedure>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Medication activity template -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </substanceAdministration>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.6 Assessment and Plan Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 74: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Planned Act (V2) (optional)

This section represents the clinician's conclusions and working assumptions that will guide treatment of the patient. The Assessment and Plan Section may be combined or separated to meet local policy requirements.

See also the Assessment Section: templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8 and Plan of Treatment Section (V2): templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09

Table 75: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7705	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10381	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32583	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15353	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15354	51847-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32141	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7707	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-7708	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-15448	Planned Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7705) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9" (CONF:1098-10381).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32583).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15353).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="51847-2" Assessment and Plan (CONF:1098-15354).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32141).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7707).
4. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7708) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15448).

Figure 61: Assessment and Plan Section (V2) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.9" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" code="51847-2"
displayName="ASSESSMENT AND PLAN" />
  <title>ASSESSMENT AND PLAN</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <act moodCode="RQO" classCode="ACT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39" />
      <!-- Planned Act -->
      ...
      </act>
    </entry>
  </section>
```

2.7 Assessment Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8 (open)]

Table 76: Assessment Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

The Assessment Section (also referred to as “impression” or “diagnoses” outside of the context of CDA) represents the clinician's conclusions and working assumptions that will guide treatment of the patient. The assessment may be a list of specific disease entities or a narrative block.

Table 77: Assessment Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7711	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10382	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8
code	1..1	SHALL		81-14757	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-14758	51848-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26472	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-16774	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7713	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7711) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8" (CONF:81-10382).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-14757).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="51848-0" Assessments (CONF:81-14758).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26472).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-16774).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7713).

Figure 62: Assessment Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.8"/>
  <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC" code="51848-0"
    displayName="ASSESSMENTS"/>
  <title>ASSESSMENTS</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
</section>

```

2.8 Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13 (open)]

Table 78: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

This section records the patient's chief complaint (the patient's own description) and/or the reason for the patient's visit (the provider's description of the reason for visit). Local policy determines whether the information is divided into two sections or recorded in one section serving both purposes.

Table 79: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7840	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10383	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15449	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15450	46239-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26473	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7842	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7843	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7840) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13" (CONF:81-10383).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15449).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="46239-0" Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit (CONF:81-15450).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26473).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7842).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7843).

Figure 63: Chief Complaint and Reason for Visit Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.13"/>
  <code code="46239-0"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="CHIEF COMPLAINT AND REASON FOR VISIT"/>
  <title> CHIEF COMPLAINT</title>
  <text>Back Pain</text>
</section>

```

2.9 Chief Complaint Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1 (open)]

Table 80: Chief Complaint Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

This section records the patient's chief complaint (the patient's own description).

Table 81: Chief Complaint Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7832	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10453	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15451	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15452	10154-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26474	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7834	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7835	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7832) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1" (CONF:81-10453).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15451).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10154-3" Chief Complaint (CONF:81-15452).
- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26474).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7834).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7835).

Figure 64: Chief Complaint Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.1.13.2.1"/>
  <code code="10154-3"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="CHIEF COMPLAINT"/>
  <title> CHIEF COMPLAINT</title>
  <text>Back Pain</text>
</section>
```

2.10 Complications Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 82: Complications Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (required) Operative Note (V3) (required)	Problem Observation (V3) (optional)

This section contains problems that occurred during or around the time of a procedure. The complications may be known risks or unanticipated problems.

Table 83: Complications Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8174	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10384	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32538	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15453	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15454	55109-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30860	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8176	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8177	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-8795	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15455	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8174) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37" (CONF:1198-10384).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32538).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15453).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="55109-3" Complications (CONF:1198-15454).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30860).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8176).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8177).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-8795) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15455).

Note: When no coded entries or negation of entries are present, narrative section/text will be provided containing details of the complication(s) or that there were no complications.

Figure 65: Complications Section (V3) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.37" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="55109-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Complications" />
  <title>Complications</title>
  <text>Asthmatic symptoms while under general anesthesia.</text>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Problem Observation -->
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.11 Course of Care Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64 (open)]

Table 84: Course of Care Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	

The Course of Care section describes what happened during the course of an encounter.

Table 85: Course of Care Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-32640	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32642	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32641	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32645	8648-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32646	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-32643	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-32644	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-32640) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64" (CONF:1098-32642).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-32641).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="8648-8" Hospital Course Narrative (CONF:1098-32645).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32646).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-32643).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-32644).

Figure 66: Course of Care Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.64"
    extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
    code="8648-8" displayName="Hospital Course Narrative" />
  <title>Hospital Course of Care</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>This patient was only recently transferred after a recurrent
      GI bleed as described below.</paragraph>
    <paragraph>He presented to the ER today c/o a dark stool yesterday
      but a normal brown stool today. On exam he was hypotensive in the
      80s resolved after .... .... .... </paragraph>
    <paragraph>Lab at discharge: Glucose 112, BUN 16, creatinine 1.1,
      electrolytes normal. H. pylori antibody pending. Admission
      hematocrit 16%, discharge hematocrit 29%. WBC 7300, platelet
      count 256,000. Urinalysis normal. Urine culture: No growth. INR
      1.1, PTT 40.</paragraph>
    <paragraph>He was transfused with 6 units of packed red blood cells
      with .... .... ....</paragraph>
    <paragraph>GI evaluation 12 September: Colonoscopy showed single red
      clot in .... .... ....</paragraph>
  </text>
</section>

```

2.12 DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1 (open)]

Table 86: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	Study Act (required)

DICOM Object Catalog lists all referenced objects and their parent Series and Studies, plus other DICOM attributes required for retrieving the objects.

DICOM Object Catalog sections are not intended for viewing and contain empty section text.

Table 87: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8525	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10454	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15456	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15457	121181
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26475	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
entry	1..*	SHALL		81-8530	
act	1..1	SHALL		81-15458	Study Act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8525) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1" (CONF:81-10454).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15456).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="121181" Dicom Object Catalog (CONF:81-15457).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) (CONF:81-26475).
3. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:81-8530).
 - a. Such entries **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [study Act](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6) (CONF:81-15458).
4. A DICOM Object Catalog **SHALL** be present if the document contains references to DICOM Images. If present, it **SHALL** be the first section in the document (CONF:81-8527).

Figure 67: DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 Example

```
<section classCode="DOCSECT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.1"/>
  <code code="121181"
    codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
    codeSystemName="DCM"
    displayName="DICOM Object Catalog"/>
  <entry>
    <!-- **** Study Act **** -->
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6"/>
      <id root="1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.114289542805"/>
      <code code="113014"
        codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
        codeSystemName="DCM"
        displayName="Study"/>
      <!-- **** Series Act****-->
      <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
          <id root="1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.20060823223142485051"/>
          <code code="113015"
            codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
            codeSystemName="DCM"
            displayName="Series">
            ...
          </code>
        <!-- **** SOP Instance UID *** -->
        <!-- 2 References -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="DGIMG" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8"/>
            ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="DGIMG" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8"/>
            ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
      </act>
    </entryRelationship>
  </act>
</entry>
</section>
```

2.13 Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 88: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) (optional)

This template represents problems or diagnoses present at the time of discharge which occurred during the hospitalization. This section includes an optional entry to record patient diagnoses specific to this visit. Problems that need ongoing tracking should also be included in the Problem Section.

Table 89: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7979	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10394	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32549	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15355	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15356	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 11535-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30861	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32834	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32835	78375-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32836	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7981	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7982	
entry	0..1	SHOULD		1198-7983	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15489	Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7979) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24" (CONF:1198-10394).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32549).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15355).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="11535-2" Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-15356).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30861).

- c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32834) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@code="78375-3"` Discharge Diagnosis (CONF:1198-32835).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"` (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32836).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7981).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7982).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-7983).
 - a. The entry, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Discharge Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15489).

Figure 68: Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <!-- Discharge Diagnosis Section Template Id -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.24" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="11535-2" displayName="Hospital Discharge Diagnosis"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC">
    <!-- Code being sought for Discharge Diagnosis - note: Concept will not be
Prognosis -->
    <translation code="C-CDAV2-DDN" displayName="Discharge Diagnosis"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
  </code>
  <title>Discharge Diagnosis</title>
  <text>Diverticula of intestine</text>
  <entry>
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Hospital discharge Diagnosis act -->
      ...
      </act>
    </entry>
  </section>
```

2.14 Discharge Diet Section (*DEPRECATED*)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.33:2014-06-09
(open)]

This section records a narrative description of the expectations for diet and nutrition, including nutrition prescription, proposals, goals, and order requests for monitoring, tracking, or improving the nutritional status of the patient, used in a discharge from a facility such as an emergency department, hospital, or nursing home.

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED IN C-CDA R2 AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for deprecation: This template has been replaced by the Nutrition Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57).

Table 90: Discharge Diet Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.33:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7975	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	1098-10455	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.33
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32593	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15459	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15460	42344-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31140	
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7977	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7978	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7975) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.33" (CONF:1098-10455).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32593).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15459).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42344-2" Discharge Diet (CONF:1098-15460).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem (CONF:1098-31140).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7977).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7978).

2.15 Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 91: Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	Discharge Medication (V3) (optional)

This section contains the medications the patient is intended to take or stop after discharge. Current, active medications must be listed. The section may also include a patient's prescription history and indicate the source of the medication list.

Table 92: Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7816	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10396	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32561	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15359	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15360	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 10183-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32480	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32854	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32855	75311-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32856	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7818	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7819	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7820	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15490	Discharge Medication (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7816) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11" (CONF:1198-10396).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32561).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15359).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10183-2" Hospital Discharge medications (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-15360).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32480).
- c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32854) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75311-1" Discharge medications (CONF:1198-32855).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32856).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7818).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7819).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7820) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Discharge Medication (v3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01) (CONF:1198-15490).

2.15.1 Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 93: Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	Discharge Medication (V3) (required)

This section contains the medications the patient is intended to take or stop after discharge. Current, active medications must be listed. The section may also include a patient's prescription history and indicate the source of the medication list.

Table 94: Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32812	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7822	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10397	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .11.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32562	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15361	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15362	10183-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32145	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32857	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32858	75311-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32859	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7824	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7825	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-7826	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15491	Discharge Medication (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01)

1. Conforms to [Discharge Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32812).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-7822) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11.1" (CONF:1198-10397).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32562).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15361).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10183-2" Hospital Discharge Medications (CONF:1198-15362).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32145).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32857) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75311-1" Discharge Medications (CONF:1198-32858).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32859).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7824).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7825).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

- 7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7826) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Discharge Medication (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01) (CONF:1198-15491).

Figure 69: Discharge Medication Section (V3) (entries required) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.11.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="10183-2" displayName="Hospital Discharge Medications"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC">
    <translation code="75311-1" displayName="Discharge Medications"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
  </code>
  <title>Discharge Medications</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Discharge Medication Entry -->
      ...
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
  ...
</section>

```

2.16 Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 95: Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional)	Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)

This section lists and describes any healthcare encounters pertinent to the patient's current health status or historical health history. An encounter is an interaction, regardless of the setting, between a patient and a practitioner who is vested with primary responsibility for diagnosing, evaluating, or treating the patient's condition. It may include visits, appointments, or non-face-to-face interactions. It is also a contact between a patient and a practitioner who has primary responsibility (exercising independent judgment) for assessing and treating the patient at a given contact. This section may contain all encounters for the time period being summarized, but should include notable encounters.

Table 96: Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7940	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10386	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32547	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15461	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15462	46240-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31136	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7942	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7943	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7951	
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-15465	Encounter Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7940) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22" (CONF:1198-10386).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32547).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15461).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="46240-8" Encounters (CONF:1198-15462).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-31136).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7942).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7943).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7951) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15465).

2.16.1 Encounters Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 97: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Encounter Activity (V3) (required)

This section lists and describes any healthcare encounters pertinent to the patient's current health status or historical health history. An encounter is an interaction, regardless of the setting, between a patient and a practitioner who is vested with primary responsibility for diagnosing, evaluating, or treating the patient's condition. It may include visits, appointments, as well as non-face-to-face interactions. It is also a contact between a patient and a practitioner who has primary responsibility (exercising independent judgment) for assessing and treating the patient at a given contact. This section may contain all encounters for the time period being summarized, but should include notable encounters.

Table 98: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32815	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8705	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10387	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .22.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32548	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15466	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15467	46240-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31137	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8707	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8708	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-8709	
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-15468	Encounter Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01

1. Conforms to [Encounters Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32815).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-8705) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22.1" (CONF:1198-10387).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32548).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15466).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="46240-8" Encounters (CONF:1198-15467).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 STATIC) (CONF:1198-31137).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1198-8707).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1198-8708).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-8709) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15468).

Figure 70: Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.22.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- Encounters Section - Entries required -->
  <code code="46240-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="History of encounters" />
  <title>Encounters</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIIV">
    <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Encounter Activities -->
      ...
      </encounter>
    </entry>
  </section>
```

2.17 Family History Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 99: Family History Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Family History Organizer (V3) (optional)

This section contains data defining the patient's genetic relatives in terms of possible or relevant health risk factors that have a potential impact on the patient's healthcare risk profile.

Table 100: Family History Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7932	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10388	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32607	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15469	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15470	10157-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32481	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7934	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7935	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-32430	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-32431	Family History Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7932) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15" (CONF:1198-10388).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32607).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15469).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10157-6" Family History (CONF:1198-15470).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32481).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7934).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7935).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-32430) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Organizer \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32431).

Figure 71: Family History Section (V3) Example

```

<section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.15" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <!-- Family history section template -->
    <code code="10157-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" />
    <title>Family history</title>
    <text>
        ...
    </text>
    <entry typeCode="DRIV">
        <organizer moodCode="EVN" classCode="CLUSTER">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45" />
            <!-- Family history organizer template -->
            ...
            </organizer>
        </entry>
    </section>

```

2.18 Fetus Subject Context

[relatedSubject: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3 (open)]

Table 101: Fetus Subject Context Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	

For reports on mothers and their fetus(es), information on a mother is mapped to recordTarget, PatientRole, and Patient. Information on the fetus is mapped to subject, relatedSubject, and SubjectPerson at the CDA section level. Both context information on the mother and fetus must be included in the document if observations on fetus(es) are contained in the document.

Table 102: Fetus Subject Context Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
relatedSubject (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9189	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10535	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9190	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-26455	121026
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26476	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
subject	1..1	SHALL		81-9191	
name	1..1	SHALL		81-15347	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9189) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3"** (CONF:81-10535).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9190).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="121026"** (CONF:81-26455).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"** (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) (CONF:81-26476).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **subject** (CONF:81-9191).

The name element is used to store the DICOM fetus ID, typically a pseudonym such as fetus_1.

- a. This subject **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:81-15347).

Figure 72: Fetus Subject Context Example

```
<relatedSubject>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.3"/>
  <code code="121026"
    codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
    displayName="Fetus"/>
  <subject>
    <name>fetus_1</name>
  </subject>
</relatedSubject>
```

2.19 Findings Section (DIR)

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2 (open)]

Table 103: Findings Section (DIR) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (required)	

The Findings section contains the main narrative body of the report. While not an absolute requirement for transformed DICOM SR reports, it is suggested that Diagnostic Imaging Reports authored in CDA follow Term Info guidelines for the codes in the various observations and procedures recorded in this section.

Table 104: Findings Section (DIR) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8531	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10456	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8531) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2" (CONF:81-10456).
- 2. This section **SHOULD** contain only the direct observations in the report, with topics such as Reason for Study, History, and Impression placed in separate sections. However, in cases where the source of report content provides a single block of text not separated into these sections, that text **SHALL** be placed in the Findings section (CONF:81-8532).

Figure 73: Findings Section (DIR) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.1.2"/>
  <code code="121070"
    codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
    codeSystemName="DCM"
    displayName="Findings"/>
  <title>Findings</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>
      <caption>Finding</caption>
      <content ID="Fnndng2">The cardiome diastinum is . </content>
    </paragraph>
    <paragraph>
      <caption>Diameter</caption>
      <content ID="Diam2">45mm</content>
    </paragraph>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12"/>
    ...
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.20 Functional Status Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 105: Functional Status Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Caregiver Characteristics (optional) Assessment Scale Observation (optional) Sensory Status (optional) Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Functional Status Organizer (V2) (optional) Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) (optional) Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) (optional) Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) (optional)

The Functional Status Section contains observations and assessments of a patient's physical abilities. A patient's functional status may include information regarding the patient's ability to perform Activities of Daily Living (ADLs) in areas such as Mobility (e.g., ambulation), Self-Care (e.g., bathing, dressing, feeding, grooming) or Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADLs) (e.g., shopping, using a telephone, balancing a check book). Problems that impact function (e.g., dyspnea, dysphagia) can be contained in the section.

Table 106: Functional Status Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7920	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10389	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32567	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14578	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14579	47420-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30866	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7922	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7923	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14414	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1098-14415	Functional Status Organizer (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14418	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14419	Functional Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14426	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14427	Caregiver Characteristics (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14580	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14581	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14582	
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-30783	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier:)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-32792	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31009	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-16779	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31011	Sensory Status (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14424	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14425	Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.73:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14422	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14423	Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.68:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-16777	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16778	Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.70:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7920) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14" (CONF:1098-10389).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32567).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14578).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="47420-5" Functional Status (CONF:1098-14579).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30866).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7922).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7923).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14414) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Organizer \(v2\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66:2014-06-09)
 (CONF:1098-14415).
- 6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14418) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Observation \(V2\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)
 (CONF:1098-14419).
- 7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14426) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Caregiver Characteristics](#) (identifier:
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72) (CONF:1098-14427).
- 8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14580) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Observation](#) (identifier:
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1098-14581).
- 9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14582) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Non-Medicinal Supply Activity \(V2\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09)
 (CONF:1098-30783).
- 10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-32792) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Self-Care Activities \(ADL and IADL\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128) (CONF:1098-31009).
- 11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-16779) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Sensory Status](#) (identifier:
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127) (CONF:1098-31011).
- 12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14424) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Cognitive Status Problem Observation \(DEPRECATED\)](#) (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.73:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-14425).
- 13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14422) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Problem Observation \(DEPRECATED\)](#) (identifier:
 urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.68:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-14423).
- 14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-16777) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Pressure Ulcer Observation \(DEPRECATED\)](#)
 (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.70:2014-06-09)
 (CONF:1098-16778).

Figure 74: Functional Status Section (V2) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <!-- Functional Status Section template V2-->
  <code code="47420-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Functional Status" />
  <title>FUNCTIONAL STATUS</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Self Care Activities (NEW)-->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128" />
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Sensory and Speech Status(NEW)-->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127" />
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Functional Status Organizer V2-->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </organizer>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Functional Status Observation V2-->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- ** Caregiver characteristics ** -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72" />
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.21 General Status Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5 (open)]

Table 107: General Status Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	

The General Status section describes general observations and readily observable attributes of the patient, including affect and demeanor, apparent age compared to actual age, gender, ethnicity, nutritional status based on appearance, body build and habitus (e.g., muscular, cachectic, obese), developmental or other deformities, gait and mobility, personal hygiene, evidence of distress, and voice quality and speech.

Table 108: General Status Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7985	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10457	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15472	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15473	10210-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26477	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7987	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7988	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7985) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5" (CONF:81-10457).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15472).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10210-3" General Status (CONF:81-15473).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26477).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7987).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7988).

Figure 75: General Status Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.5" />
  <code code="10210-3"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="GENERAL STATUS" />
  <title>GENERAL STATUS</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>Alert and in good spirits, no acute distress.
    </paragraph>
  </text>
</section>
```

2.22 Goals Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.60 (open)]

Table 109: Goals Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Care Plan (V2) (required)	Goal Observation (required)

This template represents patient Goals. A goal is a defined outcome or condition to be achieved in the process of patient care. Goals include patient-defined over-arching goals (e.g., alleviation of health concerns, desired/intended positive outcomes from interventions, longevity, function, symptom management, comfort) and health concern-specific or intervention-specific goals to achieve desired outcomes.

Table 110: Goals Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.60)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32819	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29584	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29585	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .60
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29586	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29587	61146-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-29588	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-30721	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-30722	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1098-30719	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-30720	Goal Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.121)

1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor="NI"** No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-32819).
 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-29584) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.60"** (CONF:1098-29585).
 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-29586).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="61146-7"** Goals (CONF:1098-29587).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-29588).
 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-30721).
 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-30722).
- If section/@nullFlavor is not present:
6. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-30719) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Goal Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121) (CONF:1098-30720).

Figure 76: Goals Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.60" />
  <code code="61146-7" displayName="Goals" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <title>Goals Section</title>
  <text />
  <entry>
    <observation />
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.23 Health Concerns Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 111: Health Concerns Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Care Plan (V2) (required)	Health Status Observation (V2) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (required) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)

This section contains data describing an interest or worry about a health state or process that could possibly require attention, intervention, or management. A Health Concern is a health related matter that is of interest, importance or worry to someone, who may be the patient, patient's family or patient's health care provider. Health concerns are derived from a variety of sources within an EHR (such as Problem List, Family History, Social History, Social Worker Note, etc.). Health concerns can be medical, surgical, nursing, allied health or patient-reported concerns.

Problem Concerns are a subset of Health Concerns that have risen to the level of importance that they typically would belong on a classic “Problem List”, such as “Diabetes Mellitus” or “Family History of Melanoma” or “Tobacco abuse”. These are of broad interest to multiple members of the care team.

Examples of other Health Concerns that might not typically be considered a Problem Concern include “Risk of Hyperkalemia” for a patient taking an ACE-inhibitor medication, or “Transportation difficulties” for someone who doesn't drive and has trouble getting to appointments, or “Under-insured” for someone who doesn't have sufficient insurance to properly cover their medical needs such as medications. These are typically most important to just a limited number of care team members.

Table 112: Health Concerns Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32802	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28804	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28805	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32862	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28806	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28807	75310-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-28808	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-28809	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-28810	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-30483	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-30484	Health Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09)
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-30768	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-30769	Health Concern Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-32308	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32309	Risk Concern Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136:2015-08-01)

1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor="NI"** No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32802).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28804) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58"** (CONF:1198-28805).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32862).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28806).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75310-3" Health concerns document (CONF:1198-28807).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-28808).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-28809).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-28810).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-30483) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Status Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30484).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-30768) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Concern Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30769).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-32308) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Risk Concern Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32309).

Figure 77: Health Concerns Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.58" />
  <code code="75310-3" displayName="Health Concerns Document"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <title>Health Concerns Section</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <!-- Health Status Observation -->
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <!-- Health Concern Act -->
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.24 Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.61 (open)]

Table 113: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Care Plan (V2) (optional)	Outcome Observation (required)

This template represents observations regarding the outcome of care from the interventions used to treat the patient. These observations represent status, at points in time, related to established care plan goals and/or interventions.

Table 114: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.61)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32821	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29578	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29579	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .61
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29580	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29581	11383-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-29582	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-29589	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-29590	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1098-31227	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31228	Outcome Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.144

1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor="NI"** No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-32821).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-29578) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.61"** (CONF:1098-29579).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-29580).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="11383-7"** Patient Problem Outcome (CONF:1098-29581).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-29582).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-29589).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-29590).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

6. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-31227) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Outcome Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.144) (CONF:1098-31228).

Figure 78: Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section Example

```

<section>
  <!-- Health Status Evaluations/Outcomes Section -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.61" />
  <code code="11383-7" displayName="Patient Problem Outcome"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <title>Health Status Evaluations/Outcomes Section</title>
  <text>
    <list>
      <item>
        <content styleCode="Bold">Pulse oximetry greater than 92% on room air</content>:
MET <list>
      <item>Evaluates Expected Outcome/Goal:
        <content styleCode="Bold">
          Pulse oximetry greater than 92% on room air
        </content>
      </item>
      <item>Supported by: Pulse oximetry 95% on room air (March 21, 2013 at
15:20)</item>
    </list>
    </item>
  </list>
  </text>
  <entry>
    <!-- Outcome Observation -->
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <!-- Outcome Observation -->
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  ...
</section>

```

2.25 History of Present Illness Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4 (open)]

Table 115: History of Present Illness Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (required) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

The History of Present Illness section describes the history related to the reason for the encounter. It contains the historical details leading up to and pertaining to the patient's current complaint or reason for seeking medical care.

Table 116: History of Present Illness Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7848	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10458	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15477	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15478	10164-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26478	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7850	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7851	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7848) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4" (CONF:81-10458).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15477).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10164-2" (CONF:81-15478).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26478).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7850).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7851).

Figure 79: History of Present Illness Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.4.2"/>
  <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
    code="10164-2"
    displayName="HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS"/>
  <title>HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>This patient was only recently discharged for a recurrent
    GI bleed as described below.</paragraph>
    <paragraph>He presented to the ER today c/o a dark stool yesterday
    but a normal brown stool today. On exam he was hypotensive in the
    80s resolved after ..... .... .... </paragraph>
    <paragraph>Lab at discharge: Glucose 112, BUN 16, creatinine 1.1,
    electrolytes normal. H. pylori antibody pending. Admission
    hematocrit 16%, discharge hematocrit 29%. WBC 7300, platelet
    count 256,000. Urinalysis normal. Urine culture: No growth. INR
    1.1, PTT 40.</paragraph>
    <paragraph>He was transfused with 6 units of packed red blood cells
    with ..... .... ....</paragraph>
    <paragraph>GI evaluation 12 September: Colonoscopy showed single red
    clot in ..... .... ....</paragraph>
  </text>
</section>
```

2.26 Hospital Consultations Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42 (open)]

Table 117: Hospital Consultations Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary [V3] (optional)	

The Hospital Consultations Section records consultations that occurred during the admission.

Table 118: Hospital Consultations Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9915	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10393	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15485	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15486	18841-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26479	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-9917	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-9918	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9915) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42" (CONF:81-10393).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15485).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="18841-7" Hospital Consultations Section (CONF:81-15486).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26479).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-9917).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-9918).

Figure 80: Hospital Consultations Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.42"/>
  <code code="18841-7" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Hospital Consultations Section"/>
  <title>HOSPITAL CONSULTATIONS</title>
  <text>
    <list listType="ordered">
      <item>Gastroenterology</item>
      <item>Cardiology</item>
      <item>Dietitian</item>
    </list>
  </text>
</section>

```

2.27 Hospital Course Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5 (open)]

Table 119: Hospital Course Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (required)	

The Hospital Course Section describes the sequence of events from admission to discharge in a hospital facility.

Table 120: Hospital Course Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7852	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10459	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15487	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15488	8648-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26480	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7854	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7855	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7852) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5" (CONF:81-10459).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15487).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="8648-8" Hospital Course (CONF:81-15488).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26480).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7854).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7855).

Figure 81: Hospital Course Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.5"/>
  <code code="8648-8"
    displayName="HOSPITAL COURSE"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"/>
  <title>Hospital Course</title>
  <text> The patient was admitted and started on Lovenox and
    nitroglycerin paste. The patient had ... </text>
</section>

```

2.28 Hospital Discharge Instructions Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41 (open)]

Table 121: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	

The Hospital Discharge Instructions Section records instructions at discharge.

Table 122: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9919	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10395	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15357	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15358	8653-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26481	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-9921	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-9922	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9919) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41" (CONF:81-10395).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15357).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="8653-8" Hospital Discharge Instructions (CONF:81-15358).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26481).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-9921).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-9922).

Figure 82: Hospital Discharge Instructions Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.41"/>
  <code code="8653-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="HOSPITAL DISCHARGE INSTRUCTIONS"/>
  <title>HOSPITAL DISCHARGE INSTRUCTIONS</title>
  <text>
    <list listType="ordered">
      <item>Take all of your prescription medication as directed.</item>
      <item>Make an appointment with your doctor to be seen two weeks from the date of your procedure.</item>
      <item>You may feel slightly bloated after the procedure because of air that was introduced during the examination.</item>
      <item>Call your physician if you notice:
        <br/>
        Bleeding or black stools.
        <br/>
        Abdominal pain.
        <br/>
        Fever or chills.
        <br/>
        Nausea or vomiting.
        <br/>
        Any unusual pain or problem.
        <br/>
        Pain or redness at the site where the intravenous needle was placed.
        <br/>
      </item>
      <item>Do not drink alcohol for 24 hours. Alcohol amplifies the effect of the sedatives given.</item>
      <item>Do not drive or operate machinery for 24 hours.</item>
    </list>
  </text>
</section>

```

2.29 Hospital Discharge Physical Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26 (open)]

Table 123: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	

The Hospital Discharge Physical Section records a narrative description of the patient's physical findings.

Table 124: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7971	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10460	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15363	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15364	10184-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26482	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7973	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7974	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7971) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26" (CONF:81-10460).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15363).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="10184-0" Hospital Discharge Physical (CONF:81-15364).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26482).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7973).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7974).

Figure 83: Hospital Discharge Physical Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.26"/>
  <code code="10184-0"
    displayName="HOSPITAL DISCHARGE PHYSICAL"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"/>
  <title>Hospital Discharge Physical</title>
  <text>GENERAL: Well-developed, slightly obese man.
    <br/>
    NECK: Supple, with no jugular venous distension.
    <br/>
    HEART: Intermittent tachycardia without murmurs or gallops.
    <br/>
    PULMONARY: Decreased breath sounds, but no clear-cut rales or wheezes.
    <br/>
    EXTREMITIES: Free of edema.
  </text>
</section>
```

2.30 Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16 (open)]

Table 125: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	

This section records the results of observations generated by laboratories, imaging procedures, and other procedures. The scope includes hematology, chemistry, serology, virology, toxicology, microbiology, plain x-ray, ultrasound, CT, MRI, angiography, echocardiography, nuclear medicine, pathology, and procedure observations. This section often includes notable results such as abnormal values or relevant trends, and could record all results for the period of time being documented.

Laboratory results are typically generated by laboratories providing analytic services in areas such as chemistry, hematology, serology, histology, cytology, anatomic pathology, microbiology, and/or virology. These observations are based on analysis of specimens obtained from the patient and submitted to the laboratory.

Imaging results are typically generated by a clinician reviewing the output of an imaging procedure, such as when a cardiologist reports the left ventricular ejection fraction based on the review of an echocardiogram.

Procedure results are typically generated by a clinician wanting to provide more granular information about component observations made during the performance of a procedure, such as when a gastroenterologist reports the size of a polyp observed during a colonoscopy.

Note that there are discrepancies between CCD and the lab domain model, such as the effectiveTime in specimen collection.

Table 126: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7910	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10398	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15365	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15366	11493-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26483	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7912	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7913	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7910) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16" (CONF:81-10398).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15365).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11493-4" Hospital Discharge Studies Summary (CONF:81-15366).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26483).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7912).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7913).

Figure 84: Hospital Discharge Studies Summary Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.16"/>
  <code code="11493-4"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="HOSPITAL DISCHARGE STUDIES SUMMARY"/>
  <title>Hospital Discharge Studies Summary</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
</section>

```

2.31 Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 127: Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)

The Immunizations Section defines a patient's current immunization status and pertinent immunization history. The primary use case for the Immunization Section is to enable communication of a patient's immunization status. The section should include current immunization status, and may contain the entire immunization history that is relevant to the period of time being summarized.

Table 128: Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7965	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10399	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32529	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15367	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15368	11369-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32146	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7967	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7968	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7969	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-15494	Immunization Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7965) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2" (CONF:1198-10399).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32529).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15367).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11369-6" Immunizations (CONF:1198-15368).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32146).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7967).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7968).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7969) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15494).

2.31.1 Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 129: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Immunization Activity (V3) (required)

The Immunizations Section defines a patient's current immunization status and pertinent immunization history. The primary use case for the Immunization Section is to enable communication of a patient's immunization status. The section should include current immunization status, and may contain the entire immunization history that is relevant to the period of time being summarized.

Table 130: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32833	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-9015	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10400	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32530	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15369	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15370	11369-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32147	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-9017	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-9018	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-9019	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-15495	Immunization Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01)

1. Conforms to [Immunizations Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32833).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-9015) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.2.1" (CONF:1198-10400).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32530).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15369).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11369-6" Immunizations (CONF:1198-15370).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32147).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1198-9017).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1198-9018).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-9019) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Immunization Activity (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15495).

Figure 85: Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) Example

```

<section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <!-- ***** Immunizations section template ***** -->
    <code code="11369-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="History of immunizations" />
    <title>Immunizations</title>
    <text>
        <table border="1" width="100%">
            <thead>
                <tr>
                    <th>Vaccine</th>
                    <th>Date</th>
                    <th>Status</th>
                </tr>
            </thead>
            <tbody>
                <tr>
                    <td>
                        <content ID="immun1" />Influenza virus vaccine, IM
                    </td>
                    <td>Nov 1999</td>
                    <td>Completed</td>
                </tr>
                <tr>
                    <td>
                        <content ID="immun2" />Influenza virus vaccine, IM
                    </td>
                    <td>Dec 1998</td>
                    <td>Completed</td>
                </tr>
                <tr>
                    <td>
                        <content ID="immun3" />
                        Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, IM
                    </td>
                    <td>Dec 1998</td>
                    <td>Completed</td>
                </tr>
                <tr>
                    <td>
                        <content ID="immun4" />Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids, IM
                    </td>
                    <td>1997</td>
                    <td>Refused</td>
                </tr>
            </tbody>
        </table>
    </text>
    <entry typeCode="DRIV">
        <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" negationInd="false">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52" />
            <!-- **** Immunization activity template **** -->
            ...
        </substanceAdministration>
    </entry>

```

```

    </substanceAdministration>
    </entry>
    ...
</section>

```

2.32 Implants Section (DEPRECATED)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.33:2014-06-09
(open)]

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED IN C-CDA R2 AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for Deprecation: Replaced by the Procedure Implants Section
(2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40)

Table 131: Implants Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.33:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8042	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32608	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.33
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32609	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15371	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15372	55122-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-26471	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8044	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8045	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8042) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.33" (CONF:1098-32608).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32609).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15371).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="55122-6" Implants (CONF:1098-15372).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-26471).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8044).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8045).

2.33 Instructions Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 132: Instructions Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
History and Physical (V3) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Instruction (V2) (required)

The Instructions Section records instructions given to a patient. List patient decision aids here.

Table 133: Instructions Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45:2014-06-09)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32835	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-10112	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31384	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .45
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32599	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15375	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15376	69730-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32148	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-10114	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-10115	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1098-10116	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31398	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)

1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor**= "NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-32835).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-10112) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.45" (CONF:1098-31384).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32599).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15375).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "69730-0" Instructions (CONF:1098-15376).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32148).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-10114).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-10115).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

6. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-10116) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Instruction (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31398).

Figure 86: Instructions Section (V2) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.45"
    extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="69730-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="INSTRUCTIONS" />
  <title>INSTRUCTIONS</title>
  <text>
    Patient may have low grade fever, mild joint pain and injection area
    tenderness
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" />
      <!-- *** Instructions template *** -->
      ...
      </act>
    </entry>
  </section>

```

2.34 Interventions Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 134: Interventions Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Care Plan (V2) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Handoff Communication Participants (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)

This template represents Interventions. Interventions are actions taken to maximize the prospects of the goals of care for the patient, including the removal of barriers to success. Interventions can be planned, ordered, historical, etc.

Interventions include actions that may be ongoing (e.g., maintenance medications that the patient is taking, or monitoring the patient's health status or the status of an intervention).

Instructions are nested within interventions and may include self-care instructions. Instructions are information or directions to the patient and other providers including how to care for the individual's condition, what to do at home, when to call for help, any additional appointments, testing, and changes to the medication list or medication instructions, clinical guidelines and a summary of best practice.

Instructions are information or directions to the patient. Use the Instructions Section when instructions are included as part of a document that is not a Care Plan. Use the Interventions Section, containing the Intervention Act containing the Instruction entry, when instructions are part of a structured care plan.

Table 135: Interventions Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8680	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	1198-10461	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32559	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15377	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15378	62387-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30864	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8682	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8683	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-30996	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-30997	Intervention Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32730	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32731	Planned Intervention Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY	Entry	1198-32402	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32403	Handoff Communication Participants (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.141)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8680) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3" (CONF:1198-10461).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32559).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15377).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="62387-6" Interventions Provided (CONF:1198-15378).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30864).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8682).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8683).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-30996) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Intervention Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30997).
- 6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-32730) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Intervention Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32731).
- 7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-32402) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Handoff Communication Participants](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141) (CONF:1198-32403).

Figure 87: Interventions Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.3" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="62387-6" displayName="Interventions Provided"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <title>Interventions Section</title>
  <text />
  <entry>
    <act />
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.35 Medical (General) History Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.39 (open)]

Table 136: Medical (General) History Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

The Medical History Section describes all aspects of the medical history of the patient even if not pertinent to the current procedure, and may include chief complaint, past medical history, social history, family history, surgical or procedure history, medication history, and other history information. The history may be limited to information pertinent to the current procedure or may be more comprehensive. The history may be reported as a collection of random clinical statements or it may be reported categorically. Categorical report formats may be divided into multiple subsections including Past Medical History, Social History.

Table 137: Medical (General) History Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.39)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8160	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10403	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.39
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15379	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15380	11329-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26484	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8162	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8163	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8160) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.39" (CONF:81-10403).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15379).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11329-0" Medical (General) History (CONF:81-15380).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26484).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8162).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8163).

2.36 Medical Equipment Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 138: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Organizer (optional)

This section defines a patient's implanted and external health and medical devices and equipment. This section lists any pertinent durable medical equipment (DME) used to help maintain the patient's health status. All equipment relevant to the diagnosis, care, or treatment of a patient should be included.

Devices applied to, or placed in, the patient are represented with the Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) template. Equipment supplied to the patient (e.g., pumps, inhalers, wheelchairs) is represented by the

Non-Medicinal Supply Activity V2 template.

These devices may be grouped together within a Medical Equipment Organizer. The organizer would probably not be used with devices applied in or on the patient but rather to organize a group of medical supplies the patient has been supplied with.

Table 139: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7944	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10404	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32523	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15381	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15382	46264-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30828	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7946	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7947	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-7948	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1098-30351	Medical Equipment Organizer (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.135)
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31125	
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-31861	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31885	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-31886	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7944) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23" (CONF:1098-10404).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32523).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15381).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="46264-8" Medical Equipment (CONF:1098-15382).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30828).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7946).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7947).
- 5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7948) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Medical Equipment Organizer (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135) (CONF:1098-30351).
- 6. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-31125) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31861).
- 7. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-31885) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31886).

Figure 88: Medical Equipment Section (V2) Example

```

<component>
    <section>
        <!-- Medical equipment section -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.23" extension="2014-06-09" />
        <code code="46264-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" />
        <title>MEDICAL EQUIPMENT</title>
        <text>
            <content styleCode="Bold">Medical Equipment</content>
            <list>
                <item>Implanted Devices: Cardiac Pacemaker July 3, 2013</item>
                <item>Implanted Devices: Upper GI Prosthesis, January 3, 2013</item>
                <item>Cane, February 2, 2003</item>
                <item>Biliary Stent, May 5, 2013</item>
            </list>
        </text>
        <entry>
            <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Medical Equipment Organizer template -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135" />
                ...
            </organizer>
        </entry>
        <entry>
            <supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Non-medicinal supply activity V2 template ***** -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
            ...
            </supply>
        </entry>
        <entry>
            <procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Procedure Activity Procedure V2-->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
            ...
            </procedure>
        </entry>
    </section>
</component>

```

2.37 Medications Administered Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 140: Medications Administered Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional)

The Medications Administered Section usually resides inside a Procedure Note describing a procedure. This section defines medications and fluids administered during the procedure, its related encounter,

or other procedure related activity excluding anesthetic medications. Anesthesia medications should be documented as described in the Anesthesia Section
templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.25.

Table 141: Medications Administered Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8152	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10405	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32525	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15383	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15384	29549-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30829	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8154	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8155	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8156	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15499	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8152) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38" (CONF:1098-10405).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32525).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15383).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="29549-3" Medications Administered (CONF:1098-15384).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30829).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8154).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8155).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8156).

- a. The entry, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**Medication Activity \(v2\)**](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15499).

Figure 89: Medications Administered Section (V2) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.38" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="29549-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="MEDICATIONS ADMINISTERED" />
  <title>MEDICATIONS ADMINISTERED</title>
  <text>
    <table border="1" width="100%">
      <thead>
        <tr>
          <th>Medication</th>
          <th>Directions</th>
          <th>Start Date</th>
          <th>Status</th>
          <th>Indications</th>
          <th>Fill Instructions</th>
        </tr>
      </thead>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td>
            <content ID="MedAdministered_1">
              Proventil 0.09 MG/ACTUAT inhalant solution
            </content>
          </td>
          <td>0.09 MG/ACTUAT inhalant solution, 2 puffs QID PRN wheezing</td>
          <td>20070103</td>
          <td>Active</td>
          <td>Pneumonia (233604007 SNOMED CT)</td>
          <td>Generic Substitution Allowed</td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- ** MEDICATION ACTIVITY V2 ** -->
      ...
    </substanceAdministration>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.38 Medications Section (entries optional) (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 142: Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
History and Physical (V3) (required) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional)

The Medications Section contains a patient's current medications and pertinent medication history. At a minimum, the currently active medications are listed. An entire medication history is an option. The section can describe a patient's prescription and dispense history and information about intended drug monitoring.

Table 143: Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7791	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10432	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32500	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15385	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15386	10160-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30824	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7793	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7794	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7795	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-10076	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7791) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1"** (CONF:1098-10432).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32500).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15385).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10160-0" History of medication use (CONF:1098-15386).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30824).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7793).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7794).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7795) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-10076).

2.38.1 Medications Section (entries required) (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 144: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (required)	Medication Activity (V2) (required)

The Medications Section contains a patient's current medications and pertinent medication history. At a minimum, the currently active medications are listed. An entire medication history is an option. The section can describe a patient's prescription and dispense history and information about intended drug monitoring.

This section requires either an entry indicating the subject is not known to be on any medications or entries summarizing the subject's medications.

Table 145: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1:2014-06-09)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32845	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7568	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10433	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32499	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15387	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15388	10160-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30825	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7570	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7571	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1098-7572	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-10077	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09

1. Conforms to [Medications Section \(entries optional\) \(v2\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1:2014-06-09).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-32845).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-7568) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1" (CONF:1098-10433).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32499).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-15387).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10160-0" History of medication use (CONF:1098-15388).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30825).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1098-7570).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1098-7571).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7572) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Medication Activity (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-10077).

Figure 90: Medications Section (entries required) (V2) Example

```
<section>
    <!--**MEDICATION SECTION (coded entries required) ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1.1" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Medications Section (entries optional) -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.1" extension="2014-06-09" />

    <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="HISTORY OF MEDICATION USE" />
    <title>MEDICATIONS</title>
    <text>
        Narrative Text
    </text>

    <entry>
        <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
            <!--**MEDICATION ACTIVITY V2 ** -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
            ....
        </substanceAdministration>
    </entry>
</section>
```

2.39 Mental Status Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 146: Mental Status Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional)	Assessment Scale Observation (optional)
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional)	Mental Status Organizer (V3) (optional)
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Mental Status Observation (V3) (optional)
Referral Note (V2) (optional)	

The Mental Status Section contains observations and evaluations related to a patient's psychological and mental competency and deficits including, but not limited to any of the following types of information:

- Appearance (e.g., unusual grooming, clothing or body modifications)
- Attitude (e.g., cooperative, guarded, hostile)
- Behavior/psychomotor (e.g., abnormal movements, eye contact, tics)
- Mood and affect (e.g., anxious, angry, euphoric)

- Speech and Language (e.g., pressured speech, perseveration)
- Thought process (e.g., logic, coherence)
- Thought content (e.g., delusions, phobias)
- Perception (e.g., voices, hallucinations)
- Cognition (e.g., memory, alertness/consciousness, attention, orientation) – which were included in Cognitive Status Observation in earlier publications of C-CDA.
- Insight and judgment (e.g., understanding of condition, decision making)

Table 147: Mental Status Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28293	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28294	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32793	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28295	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28296	10190-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30826	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-28297	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-28298	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28301	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-28302	Mental Status Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28305	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28306	Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28313	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28314	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28293) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.56" (CONF:1198-28294).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32793).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28295).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10190-7" Mental Status (CONF:1198-28296).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30826).
 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-28297).
 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-28298).
 5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28301) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Mental Status Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28302).
 6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28305) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28306).
 7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28313) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1198-28314).

Figure 91: Mental Status Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.14" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- Mental Status Section -->
  <code code="10190-7" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="MENTAL STATUS" />
  <title>MENTAL STATUS</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Mental Status Observation template -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.125" extension="2015-08-01" />
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Mental Status Observation V2 -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" extension="2015-08-01" />
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
  <entry>
    <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Mental Status Organizer V2-->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <id root="a7bc1062-8649-42a0-833d-ekd65bd013c9" />
      ...
      ...
    </organizer>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.40 Nutrition Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57 (open)]

Table 148: Nutrition Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Nutritional Status Observation (optional)

The Nutrition Section represents diet and nutrition information including special diet requirements and restrictions (e.g., texture modified diet, liquids only, enteral feeding). It also represents the overall nutritional status of the patient and nutrition assessment findings.

Table 149: Nutrition Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30477	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	1098-30478	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30318	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30319	61144-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30320	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-31042	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-31043	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1098-30321	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-30322	Nutritional Status Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30477) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57" (CONF:1098-30478).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-30318).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="61144-2" Diet and nutrition (CONF:1098-30319).
- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30320).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-31042).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-31043).
- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-30321) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutritional Status Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124) (CONF:1098-30322).

Figure 92: Nutrition Section Example

```

<section>
    <!-- Nutrition Section -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.57" />
    <code code="61144-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayNames="Diet and Nutrition" />
    <title>NUTRITION SECTION</title>
    <text>
        <paragraph>Nutritional Status: well nourished</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Nutrition Assessment: Dietary Requirements; low sodium diet, Dietary
Intake, high carbohydrate diet; BMI 25-29 overweight </paragraph>
        <paragraph>Nutritional Recommendations: BMI 22; Nutrition Education "Lean
Meats"</paragraph>
    </text>
    <entry>
        <!-- SHOULD HAVE Nutritional Status Observation -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- contains NUTRITIONAL STATUS Observation -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124" />
            ...
            <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <!-- ** Nutritional Assessment observation** -->
                    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138" />
                    <id root="ab1791b0-5c71-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
                    ...
                </observation>
            </entryRelationship>
        </observation>
    </entry>
</section>

```

2.41 Objective Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1 (open)]

Table 150: Objective Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Progress Note (V3) (optional)	

The Objective Section contains data about the patient gathered through tests, measures, or observations that produce a quantified or categorized result. It includes important and relevant positive and negative test results, physical findings, review of systems, and other measurements and observations.

Table 151: Objective Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7869	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10462	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2 .1
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15389	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15390	61149-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26485	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7871	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7872	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7869) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1" (CONF:81-10462).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15389).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="61149-1" Objective (CONF:81-15390).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26485).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7871).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7872).

Figure 93: Objective Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.1"/>
  <code code="61149-1 " codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="OBJECTIVE DATA "/>
  <title>OBJECTIVE DATA</title>
  <text>
    <list listType="ordered">
      <item>Chest: clear to ausc. No rales, normal breath sounds</item>
      <item>Heart: RR, PMI in normal location and no heave or evidence of
        cardiomegaly,normal heart sounds, no murmur or gallop</item>
    </list>
  </text>
</section>

```

2.42 Observer Context

[assignedAuthor: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4 (open)]

Table 152: Observer Context Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	

The Observer Context is used to override the author specified in the CDA Header. It is valid as a direct child element of a section.

Table 153: Observer Context Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
assignedAuthor (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9194	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10536	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4
id	1..*	SHALL		81-9196	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9194) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4"** (CONF:81-10536).

The id element contains the author's id or the DICOM device observer UID

2. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-9196).
3. Either assignedPerson or assignedAuthoringDevice **SHALL** be present (CONF:81-9198).

Figure 94: Observer Context Example

```

<assignedAuthor>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.4"/>
  <id extension="121008" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5"/>
  <assignedPerson>
    <name>
      <given>Richard</given>
      <family>Blitz</family>
      <suffix>MD</suffix>
    </name>
  </assignedPerson>
</assignedAuthor>

```

2.43 Operative Note Fluids Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12 (open)]

Table 154: Operative Note Fluids Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Operative Note [V3] (optional)	

The Operative Note Fluids Section may be used to record fluids administered during the surgical procedure.

Table 155: Operative Note Fluids Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8030	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10463	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15391	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15392	10216-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26486	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8032	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8033	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8030) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12" (CONF:81-10463).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15391).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="10216-0" Operative Note Fluids (CONF:81-15392).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26486).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8032).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8033).
- 5. If the Operative Note Fluids section is present, there **SHALL** be a statement providing details of the fluids administered or **SHALL** explicitly state there were no fluids administered (CONF:81-8052).

Figure 95: Operative Note Fluids Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.12"/>
  <code code="10216-0"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="OPERATIVE NOTE FLUIDS"/>
  <title>Operative Note Fluids</title>
  <text>250 ML Ringers Lactate</text>
</section>
```

2.44 Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14 (open)]

Table 156: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

The Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section can be used to restate the procedures performed if appropriate for an enterprise workflow. The procedure(s) performed associated with the Operative Note are formally modeled in the header using serviceEvent.

Table 157: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8034	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10464	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15393	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15394	10223-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26487	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8036	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8037	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8034) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14" (CONF:81-10464).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15393).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10223-6" Operative Note Surgical Procedure (CONF:81-15394).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26487).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8036).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8037).
5. If the surgical procedure section is present there **SHALL** be text indicating the procedure performed (CONF:81-8054).

Figure 96: Operative Note Surgical Procedure Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.14"/>
  <code code="10223-6"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="OPERATIVE NOTE SURGICAL PROCEDURE"/>
  <title>Surgical Procedure</title>
  <text>Laparoscopic Appendectomy</text>
</section>
```

2.45 Past Medical History (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 158: Past Medical History (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (optional)

This section contains a record of the patient's past complaints, problems, and diagnoses. It contains data from the patient's past up to the patient's current complaint or reason for seeking medical care.

Table 159: Past Medical History (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7828	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10390	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32536	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15474	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15475	11348-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30831	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7830	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7831	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-8791	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15476	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7828) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20" (CONF:1198-10390).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32536).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15474).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11348-0" History of Past Illness (CONF:1198-15475).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30831).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7830).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7831).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-8791) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15476).

Figure 97: Past Medical History (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.20" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- ** History of Past Illness Section -->
  <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" code="11348-0"
displayName="HISTORY OF PAST ILLNESS" />
  <title>PAST MEDICAL HISTORY</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>Patient has had ..... </paragraph>
  </text>
  <entry>
    <!-- Sample With Problem Observation. -->
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Problem Observation -->
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.46 Payers Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 160: Payers Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Coverage Activity (V3) (optional)

The Payers Section contains data on the patient's payers, whether "third party" insurance, self-pay, other payer or guarantor, or some combination of payers, and is used to define which entity is the responsible fiduciary for the financial aspects of a patient's care.

Each unique instance of a payer and all the pertinent data needed to contact, bill to, and collect from that payer should be included. Authorization information that can be used to define pertinent referral, authorization tracking number, procedure, therapy, intervention, device, or similar authorizations for the patient or provider, or both should be included. At a minimum, the patient's pertinent current payment sources should be listed.

The sources of payment are represented as a Coverage Activity, which identifies all of the insurance policies or government or other programs that cover some or all of the patient's healthcare expenses. The policies or programs are sequenced by preference. The Coverage Activity has a sequence number that represents the preference order. Each policy or program identifies the covered party with respect to the payer, so that the identifiers can be recorded.

Table 161: Payers Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7924	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10434	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32597	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15395	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15396	48768-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32149	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7926	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7927	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7959	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15501	Coverage Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7924) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18" (CONF:1198-10434).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32597).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15395).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="48768-6" Payers (CONF:1198-15396).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32149).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7926).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7927).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7959) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Coverage Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15501).

Figure 98: Payers Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.18" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- ***** Payers section template ***** -->
  <code code="48768-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Payers" />
  <title>Insurance Providers</title>
  <text>
    . . .
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="DEF">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <!-- **** Coverage entry template **** -->
    . . .
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.47 Physical Exam Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 162: Physical Exam Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional) Referral Note (V2) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)

The section includes direct observations made by a clinician. The examination may include the use of simple instruments and may also describe simple maneuvers performed directly on the patient's body. It also includes observations made by the examining clinician using only inspection, palpation, auscultation, and percussion. It does not include laboratory or imaging findings.

The exam may be limited to pertinent body systems based on the patient's chief complaint or it may include a comprehensive examination. The examination may be reported as a collection of random clinical statements or it may be reported categorically.

The Physical Exam Section may contain multiple nested subsections.

Table 163: Physical Exam Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7806	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	1198-10465	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32587	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15397	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15398	29545-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7808	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7809	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-31926	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31927	Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01
component	0..*	MAY		1198-32434	
section	1..1	SHALL		1198-32435	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32436	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65 (Physical Exam Type)
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-32437	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-32438	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7806) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10"** (CONF:1198-10465).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32587).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15397).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="29545-1"** Physical Findings (CONF:1198-15398).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30931).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7808).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7809).
- 5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-31926) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Longitudinal Care Wound Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31927).
- 6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **component** (CONF:1198-32434) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **section** (CONF:1198-32435).
 - i. This section **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Physical Exam Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32436).
 - ii. This section **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-32437).
 - iii. This section **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-32438).

Table 164: Physical Exam Type

Value Set: Physical Exam Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65 (Clinical Focus: Document section types that may be used under the Physical Examination section of C-CDA.),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA r2.1 Component in Physical Exam Section (V3) section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10:2015-08-01 (open)] STATIC),(Inclusion Criteria: Specified LOINC concepts with Scale:Nar and Class:H&P.PX and selected concepts with Scale:Nom or DOC),(Exclusion Criteria: Only as in inclusion) This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190114. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10190-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Mental status Narrative
10191-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Abdomen Narrative
10192-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Back Narrative
10193-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Breasts Narrative
10194-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Neurologic deep tendon reflexes Narrative
10195-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Ear Narrative
10196-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Extremities Narrative
10197-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Eye Narrative
10198-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Genitourinary tract Narrative
10199-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Physical findings of Head Narrative
...			

Figure 99: Physical Exam Section (V3) Example

```
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.2.10" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" code="29545-1"
displayName="Physical Findings" />
    <title>Physical Examination</title>
    <!--**10.4.1 Physical Exam at Transfer -->
    <text>
      <list listType="ordered">
        <item>Recurrent GI bleed of unknown etiology; hypotension perhaps
          secondary to this but as likely secondary to polypharmacy.</item>
        <item>Acute on chronic anemia secondary to #1.</item>
        <item>Azotemia, acute renal failure with volume loss secondary to
          #1.</item>
        <item>Hyperkalemia secondary to #3 and on ACE and K+ supplement.</item>
        <item>Other chronic diagnoses as noted above, currently stable.</item>
      </list>
    </text>
    ...
  </section>
</component>
```

2.48 Plan of Treatment Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 165: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional)	Goal Observation (optional)
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional)	Nutrition Recommendation (optional)
Discharge Summary (V3) (required)	Planned Act (V2) (optional)
History and Physical (V3) (optional)	Planned Encounter (V2) (optional)
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Planned Procedure (V2) (optional)
Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Planned Observation (V2) (optional)
Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Planned Supply (V2) (optional)
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional)
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	Handoff Communication Participants (optional)
	Instruction (V2) (optional)
	Planned Immunization Activity (optional)

This section, formerly known as "Plan of Care", contains data that define pending orders, interventions, encounters, services, and procedures for the patient. It is limited to prospective, unfulfilled, or incomplete orders and requests only. These are indicated by the @moodCode of the entries within this section. All active, incomplete, or pending orders, appointments, referrals, procedures, services, or any other pending event of clinical significance to the current care of the patient should be listed.

Clinical reminders are placed here to provide prompts for disease prevention and management, patient

safety, and healthcare quality improvements, including widely accepted performance measures. The plan may also indicate that patient education will be provided.

When used in a document that includes a Goals Section, all the goals (whether narrative only, or structured Goal Observation entries) should be recorded in the Goals Section, rather than in the Plan of Treatment Section, to avoid confusion as to “which/whose goals should be in which section?”

When used in a document that does not include a Goals Section, the Plan of Treatment section may also contain information about care team members’ goals, including the patient’s values, beliefs, preferences, care expectations, and overarching care goals. Values may include the importance of quality of life over longevity. These values are taken into account when prioritizing all problems and their treatments. Beliefs may include comfort with dying or the refusal of blood transfusions because of the patient’s religious convictions. Preferences may include liquid medicines over tablets, or treatment via secure email instead of in person. Care expectations may range from being treated only by female clinicians, to expecting all calls to be returned within 24 hours. Overarching goals described in this section are not tied to a specific condition, problem, health concern, or intervention. Examples of overarching goals could be to minimize pain or dependence on others, or to walk a daughter down the aisle for her marriage.

Table 166: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7723	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10435	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32501	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14749	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14750	18776-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30813	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-16986	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7725	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-7726	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14751	Planned Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8805	
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1098-30472	Planned Encounter (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8807	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-30473	Planned Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8809	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-30474	Planned Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8811	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-30475	Planned Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					0.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8813	
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-30476	Planned Supply (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-14695	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31397	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-29621	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-30868	Handoff Communication Participants (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.141
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-31841	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31864	Nutrition Recommendation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.130
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-32353	
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-32354	Planned Immunization Activity (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.120
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-32887	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32888	Goal Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.121

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7723) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10"** (CONF:1098-10435).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32501).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14749).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="18776-5"** Plan of Treatment (CONF:1098-14750).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1](#)) (CONF:1098-30813).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-16986).

4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7725).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7726) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-14751).
6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8805) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Encounter \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-30472).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8807) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Act \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-30473).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8809) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-30474).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8811) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Medication Activity \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-30475).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8813) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Supply \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-30476).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-14695) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31397).
12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-29621) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Handoff Communication Participants](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141) (CONF:1098-30868).
13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-31841) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Recommendation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130) (CONF:1098-31864).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-32353) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Immunization Activity](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120) (CONF:1098-32354).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-32887) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Goal Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121) (CONF:1098-32888).

Figure 100: Plan of Treatment Section (V2) Example

```
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.10" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- **** Plan of Treatment Section V2 template **** -->
    <code code="18776-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Treatment plan" />
    <title>TREATMENT PLAN</title>
    <text>
      ...
    </text>
    <entry>
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Handoff Communication template -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141" />
        ...
      </act>
    </entry>
    <entry>
      <encounter moodCode="INT" classCode="ENC">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
        <!-- Plan Activity Encounter V2 template -->
        ...
      </encounter>
    </entry>
  </section>
</component>
```

2.49 Planned Procedure Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 167: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Planned Procedure (V2) (optional)
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

This section contains the procedure(s) that a clinician planned based on the preoperative assessment.

Table 168: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8082	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10436	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32590	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15399	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15400	59772-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32151	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8084	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8085	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8744	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-15502	Planned Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8082) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30" (CONF:1098-10436).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32590).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15399).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59772-4" Planned Procedure (CONF:1098-15400).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32151).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8084).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8085).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8744) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15502).

Figure 101: Planned Procedure Section (V2) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.30" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="59772-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
  displayName="Planned Procedure" />
  <title>Planned Procedure</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <procedure moodCode="RQO" classCode="PROC">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- ** Planned Procedure ** -->
      ...
    </procedure>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.50 Postoperative Diagnosis Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35 (open)]

Table 169: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Operative Note (V3) (required)	

The Postoperative Diagnosis Section records the diagnosis or diagnoses discovered or confirmed during the surgery. Often it is the same as the preoperative diagnosis.

Table 170: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8101	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10437	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15401	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15402	10218-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26488	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8103	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8104	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8101) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35" (CONF:81-10437).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15401).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10218-6" Postoperative Diagnosis (CONF:81-15402).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26488).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8103).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8104).

Figure 102: Postoperative Diagnosis Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.35"/>
  <code code="10218-6"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="POSTOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS"/>
  <title>Postoperative Diagnosis</title>
  <text>Appendicitis with periappendiceal abscess</text>
</section>
```

2.51 Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 171: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (required)	Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (optional)

The Postprocedure Diagnosis Section records the diagnosis or diagnoses discovered or confirmed during the procedure. Often it is the same as the preprocedure diagnosis or indication.

Table 172: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8167	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10438	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32550	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15403	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15404	59769-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30862	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8170	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8171	
entry	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8762	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15503	Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8167) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36" (CONF:1198-10438).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32550).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15403).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59769-0" Postprocedure Diagnosis (CONF:1198-15404).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30862).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8170).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8171).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-8762) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Postprocedure Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15503).

Figure 103: Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="59769-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="POSTPROCEDURE DIAGNOSIS" />
  <title>Postprocedure Diagnosis</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <act moodCode="EVN" classCode="ACT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- ** Postprocedure Diagnosis ** -->
      ...
      </act>
    </entry>
  </section>
```

2.52 Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 173: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Operative Note (V3) (required)	Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (optional)

The Preoperative Diagnosis Section records the surgical diagnoses assigned to the patient before the surgical procedure which are the reason for the surgery. The preoperative diagnosis is, in the surgeon's opinion, the diagnosis that will be confirmed during surgery.

Table 174: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8097	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10439	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32551	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15405	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15406	10219-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30863	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8099	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8100	
entry	0..1	SHOULD		1198-10096	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15504	Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8097) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34" (CONF:1198-10439).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32551).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15405).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10219-4" Preoperative Diagnosis (CONF:1198-15406).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30863).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8099).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8100).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-10096) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Preoperative Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15504).

Figure 104: Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.34" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="10219-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName=" PREOPERATIVE DIAGNOSIS" />
  <title>Preoperative Diagnosis</title>
  <text>Appendicitis</text>
  <entry>
    <act moodCode="EVN" classCode="ACT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <!-- ** Preoperative Diagnosis ** -->
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.53 Problem Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 175: Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Health Status Observation (V2) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (optional)

This section lists and describes all relevant clinical problems at the time the document is generated. At a minimum, all pertinent current and historical problems should be listed. Overall health status may be represented in this section.

Table 176: Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7877	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10440	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32511	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15407	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15408	11450-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31141	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7879	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7880	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7881	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15505	Problem Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01)
entry	0..1	MAY		1198-30481	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-30482	Health Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7877) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5" (CONF:1198-10440).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32511).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15407).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11450-4" Problem List (CONF:1198-15408).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-31141).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7879).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7880).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7881) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Concern Act \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15505).
- 6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-30481) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Status Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30482).

2.53.1 Problem Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 177: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (required) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (required)	Health Status Observation (V2) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (required)

This section lists and describes all relevant clinical problems at the time the document is generated. At a minimum, all pertinent current and historical problems should be listed. Overall health status may be represented in this section.

Table 178: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32864	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-9179	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10441	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32510	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15409	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15410	11450-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31142	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-9181	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-9182	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-9183	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15506	Problem Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01)
entry	0..1	MAY		1198-30479	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-30480	Health Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09)

1. Conforms to [Problem Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32864).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-9179) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1" (CONF:1198-10441).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32510).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15409).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11450-4" Problem List (CONF:1198-15410).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-31142).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-9181).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-9182).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

- 7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-9183) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Concern Act \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15506).
- 8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entry** (CONF:1198-30479) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Health Status Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30480).

Figure 105: Problem Section (entries required) (V3) Example

```

<section>
  <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Section (entries optional) -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Section (entries required) -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="11450-4"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="PROBLEM LIST" />
  <title>PROBLEMS</title>
  <text>
    <list listType="ordered">
      <item>Pneumonia: Resolved in March 1998</item>
      <item>...</item>
    </list>
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Concern Act (V3) -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3" extension="2015-08-01" />
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>

```

Figure 106: No Known Problems Section Example

```

<section>
  <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Section (entries optional) -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Section (entries required) -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.5.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="11450-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Problem List" />
  <title>PROBLEMS</title>
  <text ID="Concern_1">
    Problem Concern:
    <br />
    Concern Tracker Start Date: 06/07/2013 16:05:06
    <br />
    Concern Tracker End Date:
    <br />
    Concern Status: Active
    <br />
    <content ID="problems1">No known
      <content ID="problemType1">problems.</content>
    </content>
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Concern Act (V3) -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <id root="36e3e930-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
      <!-- SDWG supports 48765-2 or CONC in the code element -->
      <code code="CONC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.6" />
      <text>
        <reference value="#Concern_1" />
      </text>
      <statusCode code="active" />
      <!-- The concern is not active, in terms of there being an active condition
          to be managed.-->
      <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20130607160506" />
        <!-- Time at which THIS "concern" began being tracked.-->
      </effectiveTime>
      <!-- status is active so high is not applicable. If high is present it
          should have nullFlavor of NA-->
      <!-- Optional Author Element-->
      <author>
        <!-- [C-CDA R2] Author Participation -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
        <time value="20130607160506" />
        <assignedAuthor>
          ...
        </assignedAuthor>
      </author>
      <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN" negationInd="true">
          <!-- Model of Meaning for No Problems -->
          <!-- This is more consistent with how we did no known allergies.
              The use of negationInd corresponds with the newer
              Observation.ValueNegationInd.
              The negationInd = true negates the value element. -->
        <!-- [C-CDA R2.1] Problem Observation (V3) -->
      
```

```

<templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
<id root="4adc1021-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a67" />
<code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
<text>
  <reference value="#problems1" />
</text>
<statusCode code="completed" />
<effectiveTime>
  <low value="20130607160506" />
</effectiveTime>
<!-- The time when this was biologically relevant ie True
for the patient. As a minimum time interval over which
this is true, populate the effectiveTime/low with the
current time.
It would be equally valid to have a longer range of
time over which this statement was represented as
being true. As a maximum, you would never indicate
an effectiveTime/high that was greater than the
current point in time. This idea assumes that the
value element could come from the Problem value set,
or when negationInd was true, is could also come from
the ProblemType value set (and code would be ASSERTION). -->
<value xsi:type="CD"
  code="55607006"
  displayName="Problem"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
<originalText>
  <reference value="#problemType1" />
</originalText>
</value>
</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
</entry>
</section>

```

2.54 Procedure Description Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27 (open)]

Table 179: Procedure Description Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (required)	
Operative Note (V3) (required)	

The Procedure Description section records the particulars of the procedure and may include procedure site preparation, surgical site preparation, pertinent details related to sedation/anesthesia, pertinent details related to measurements and markings, procedure times, medications administered, estimated blood loss, specimens removed, implants, instrumentation, sponge counts, tissue manipulation, wound closure, sutures used, vital signs and other monitoring data. Local practice often identifies the level and type of detail required based on the procedure or specialty.

Table 180: Procedure Description Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8062	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10442	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15411	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15412	29554-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26489	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8064	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8065	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8062) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27" (CONF:81-10442).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15411).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="29554-3" Procedure Description (CONF:81-15412).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26489).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8064).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8065).

Figure 107: Procedure Description Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27"/>
  <code code="29554-3"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="PROCEDURE DESCRIPTION"/>
  <title>Procedure Description</title>
  <text>The patient was taken to the endoscopy suite where ... </text>
</section>

```

2.55 Procedure Disposition Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12 (open)]

Table 181: Procedure Disposition Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional) Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

The Procedure Disposition Section records the status and condition of the patient at the completion of the procedure or surgery. It often also states where the patient was transferred to for the next level of care.

Table 182: Procedure Disposition Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8070	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10466	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2 .12
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15413	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15414	59775-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26490	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8072	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8073	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8070) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12" (CONF:81-10466).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15413).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59775-7" Procedure Disposition (CONF:81-15414).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26490).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8072).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8073).

Figure 108: Procedure Disposition Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.12"/>
  <code code="59775-7" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="PROCEDURE DISPOSITION"/>
  <title>PROCEDURE DISPOSITION</title>
  <text>The patient was taken to the Endoscopy Recovery Unit in stable
    condition.</text>
</section>

```

2.56 Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9 (open)]

Table 183: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	
Operative Note (V3) (required)	

The Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section may be a subsection of another section such as the Procedure Description Section. The Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section records the approximate amount of blood that the patient lost during the procedure or surgery. It may be an accurate quantitative amount, e.g., 250 milliliters, or it may be descriptive, e.g., “minimal” or “none”.

Table 184: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8074	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10467	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15415	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15416	59770-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26491	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8076	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8077	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8074) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9" (CONF:81-10467).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15415).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59770-8" Procedure Estimated Blood Loss (CONF:81-15416).
- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26491).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8076).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8077).
- 5. The Estimated Blood Loss section **SHALL** include a statement providing an estimate of the amount of blood lost during the procedure, even if the estimate is text, such as "minimal" or "none" (CONF:81-8741).

Figure 109: Procedure Estimated Blood Loss Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.18.2.9"/>
  <code code="59770-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="PROCEDURE ESTIMATED BLOOD LOSS"/>
  <title>Procedure Estimated Blood Loss</title>
  <text>Minimal</text>
</section>
```

2.57 Procedure Findings Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 185: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional) Operative Note (V3) (required)	Problem Observation (V3) (optional)

The Procedure Findings Section records clinically significant observations confirmed or discovered during a procedure or surgery.

Table 186: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8078	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10443	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32537	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15417	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15418	59776-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30859	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8080	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-8081	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-8090	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15507	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8078) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28" (CONF:1198-10443).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32537).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15417).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59776-5" Procedure Findings (CONF:1198-15418).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30859).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8080).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8081).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-8090) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15507).

Figure 110: Procedure Findings Section (V3) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.28" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="59776-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="PROCEDURE FINDINGS" />
  <title>Procedure Findings</title>
  <text>A 6 mm sessile polyp was found in the ascending colon and removed by snare, no
cautery. Bleeding was controlled. Moderate diverticulosis and hemorrhoids were
incidentally noted.</text>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- Problem Observation -->
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.58 Procedure Implants Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40 (open)]

Table 187: Procedure Implants Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

The Procedure Implants Section records any materials placed during the procedure including stents, tubes, and drains.

Table 188: Procedure Implants Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8178	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10444	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15373	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15374	59771-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26492	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8180	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8181	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8178) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40" (CONF:81-10444).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15373).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59771-6" Procedure Implants (CONF:81-15374).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26492).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8180).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8181).
5. The Procedure Implants section **SHALL** include a statement providing details of the implants placed, or assert no implants were placed (CONF:81-8769).

Figure 111: Procedure Implants Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.40"/>
  <code code="59771-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="PROCEDURE IMPLANTS" />
  <title>Procedure Implants</title>
  <text>No implants were placed.</text>
</section>
```

2.59 Procedure Indications Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 189: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (required)	Indication (V2) (optional)
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

This section contains the reason(s) for the procedure or surgery. This section may include the preprocedure diagnoses as well as symptoms contributing to the reason for the procedure.

Table 190: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8058	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10445	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32572	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15419	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15420	59768-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30827	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8060	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8061	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8743	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15508	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8058) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29" (CONF:1098-10445).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32572).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15419).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59768-2" Procedure Indications (CONF:1098-15420).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30827).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8060).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8061).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8743) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15508).

Figure 112: Procedure Indications Section (V2) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.29" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="59768-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="PROCEDURE INDICATIONS" />
  <title>Procedure Indications</title>
  <text>The procedure is performed for screening in a low risk individual.
  </text>
  <entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Indication Entry -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </observation>
  </entry>
</section>

```

2.60 Procedure Specimens Taken Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31 (open)]

Table 191: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	
Operative Note (V3) (required)	

The Procedure Specimens Taken Section records the tissues, objects, or samples taken from the patient during the procedure including biopsies, aspiration fluid, or other samples sent for pathological analysis. The narrative may include a description of the specimens.

Table 192: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8086	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10446	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15421	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15422	59773-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26493	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8088	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8089	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8086) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31" (CONF:81-10446).
- 2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15421).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="59773-2" Procedure Specimens Taken (CONF:81-15422).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26493).
- 3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8088).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8089).
- 5. The Procedure Specimens Taken section **SHALL** list all specimens removed or **SHALL** explicitly state that no specimens were taken (CONF:81-8742).

Figure 113: Procedure Specimens Taken Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.31"/>
  <code code="59773-2"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="PROCEDURE SPECIMENS TAKEN"/>
  <title>Procedure Specimens Taken</title>
  <text>Ascending colon polyp</text>
</section>
```

2.61 Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 193: Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional)	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional)
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional)
History and Physical (V3) (optional)	Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional)
Referral Note (V2) (optional)	
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

This section describes all interventional, surgical, diagnostic, or therapeutic procedures or treatments pertinent to the patient historically at the time the document is generated. The section should include notable procedures, but can contain all procedures for the period of time being summarized. The common notion of "procedure" is broader than that specified by the HL7 Version 3 Reference Information Model (RIM), therefore this section contains procedure templates represented with three RIM classes: Act, Observation, and Procedure. Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) is for procedures that alter the physical condition of a patient (e.g., splenectomy). Procedure Activity Observation (V2) is for procedures that result in new information about a patient but do not cause physical alteration (e.g., EEG). Procedure Activity Act (V2) is for all other types of procedures (e.g., dressing change).

Table 194: Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-6270	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-6271	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32532	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15423	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15424	47519-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31139	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-17184	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-6273	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-6274	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-15509	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-6278	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15510	Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-8533	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-15511	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-6270) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7" (CONF:1098-6271).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32532).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15423).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="47519-4" History of Procedures (CONF:1098-15424).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31139).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-17184).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-6273).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-6274) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15509).
6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-6278) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15510).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-8533) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15511).

2.61.1 Procedures Section (entries required) (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 195: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (optional) Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional)

This section describes all interventional, surgical, diagnostic, or therapeutic procedures or treatments pertinent to the patient historically at the time the document is generated. The section should include notable procedures, but can contain all procedures for the period of time being summarized. The common notion of "procedure" is broader than that specified by the HL7 Version 3 Reference Information Model (RIM), therefore this section contains procedure templates represented with three RIM classes: Act, Observation, and Procedure. Procedure act is for procedures that alter the physical condition of a patient (e.g., splenectomy). Observation act is for procedures that result in new information about a patient but do not cause physical alteration (e.g., EEG). Act is for all other types of procedures (e.g., dressing change).

Table 196: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7.1:2014-06-09)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32876	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7891	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10447	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .7.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32533	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15425	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15426	47519-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31138	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7893	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7894	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1098-7895	
act	0..1	MAY		1098-32877	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09)
observation	0..1	MAY		1098-32878	Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09)
procedure	0..1	MAY		1098-15512	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)

1. Conforms to [Procedures Section \(entries optional\) \(V2\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7:2014-06-09).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-32876).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-7891) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7.1" (CONF:1098-10447).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32533).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-15425).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="47519-4" History of Procedures (CONF:1098-15426).
- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31138).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7893).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7894).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present there *SHALL* be at least one entry conformant to Procedure Activity Act (V2) (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09) OR Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (templateId: 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09) OR Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (templateId: 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)

- 7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-7895) such that it
 - a. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [Procedure Activity Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32877).
 - b. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [Procedure Activity Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32878).
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15512).

Figure 114: Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.7" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <!-- Procedures section template -->
  <code code="47519-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="PROCEDURES" />
  <title>Procedures</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry typeCode="DRIV">
    <procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Procedure Activity Procedure template -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </procedure>
  </entry>
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Procedure Activity Observation template -->
    ...
  </observation>
  <entry>
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- Procedure Activity Act template -->
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>
```

2.62 Reason for Referral Section (V2)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 197: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (required)	Patient Referral Act (optional)

This section describes the clinical reason why a provider is sending a patient to another provider for care. The reason for referral may become the reason for visit documented by the receiving provider.

Table 198: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7844	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	1098-10468	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32571	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15427	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15428	42349-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30867	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-7846	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-7847	
entry	0..*	MAY		1098-30808	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-30897	Patient Referral Act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.140)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7844) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1" (CONF:1098-10468).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32571).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15427).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="42349-1" Reason for Referral (CONF:1098-15428).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30867).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-7846).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-7847).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1098-30808) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Patient Referral Act** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140) (CONF:1098-30897).

Figure 115: Reason for Referral Section (V2) Example

```

<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.1" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <code code="42349-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Reason for Referral " />
    <title>REASON FOR REFERRAL</title>
    <text>Request for Patient referral for consultation.</text>
    <entry>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="INT">
        <!-- Patient Referral Activity Observation -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entry>
  </section>
</component>

```

2.63 Reason for Visit Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12 (open)]

Table 199: Reason for Visit Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (optional) Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

This section records the patient's reason for the patient's visit (as documented by the provider). Local policy determines whether Reason for Visit and Chief Complaint are in separate or combined sections.

Table 200: Reason for Visit Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7836	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10448	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15429	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15430	29299-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26494	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7838	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7839	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7836) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12" (CONF:81-10448).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15429).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="29299-5" Reason for Visit (CONF:81-15430).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26494).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7838).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7839).

Figure 116: Reason for Visit Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.12"/>
  <code code="29299-5"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="REASON FOR VISIT"/>
  <title>REASON FOR VISIT</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>Dark stools.</paragraph>
  </text>
</section>
```

2.64 Results Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 201: Results Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
History and Physical (V3) (required)	Result Organizer (V3) (optional)
Progress Note (V3) (optional)	

This section contains the results of observations generated by laboratories, imaging and other procedures. The scope includes observations of hematology, chemistry, serology, virology, toxicology, microbiology, plain x-ray, ultrasound, CT, MRI, angiography, echocardiography, nuclear medicine, pathology, and procedure observations.

This section often includes notable results such as abnormal values or relevant trends. It can contain all results for the period of time being documented.

Laboratory results are typically generated by laboratories providing analytic services in areas such as chemistry, hematology, serology, histology, cytology, anatomic pathology, microbiology, and/or virology. These observations are based on analysis of specimens obtained from the patient and submitted to the laboratory.

Imaging results are typically generated by a clinician reviewing the output of an imaging procedure, such as where a cardiologist reports the left ventricular ejection fraction based on the review of a cardiac echocardiogram.

Procedure results are typically generated by a clinician to provide more granular information about component observations made during a procedure, such as where a gastroenterologist reports the size of a polyp observed during a colonoscopy.

Table 202: Results Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7116	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-9136	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32591	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15431	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15432	30954-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31041	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8891	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7118	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7119	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-15515	Result Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7116) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3" (CONF:1198-9136).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32591).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15431).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="30954-2" Relevant diagnostic tests and/or laboratory data (CONF:1198-15432).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-31041).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-8891).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7118).

5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7119) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Result Organizer \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15515).

2.64.1 Results Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 203: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Result Organizer (V3) (required)

The Results Section contains observations of results generated by laboratories, imaging procedures, and other procedures. These coded result observations are contained within a Results Organizer in the Results Section. The scope includes observations such as hematology, chemistry, serology, virology, toxicology, microbiology, plain x-ray, ultrasound, CT, MRI, angiography, echocardiography, nuclear medicine, pathology, and procedure observations. The section often includes notable results such as abnormal values or relevant trends, and could contain all results for the period of time being documented.

Laboratory results are typically generated by laboratories providing analytic services in areas such as chemistry, hematology, serology, histology, cytology, anatomic pathology, microbiology, and/or virology. These observations are based on analysis of specimens obtained from the patient and submitted to the laboratory.

Imaging results are typically generated by a clinician reviewing the output of an imaging procedure, such as where a cardiologist reports the left ventricular ejection fraction based on the review of a cardiac echocardiogram.

Procedure results are typically generated by a clinician to provide more granular information about component observations made during a procedure, such as where a gastroenterologist reports the size of a polyp observed during a colonoscopy.

Table 204: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32875	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7108	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-9137	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32592	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15433	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15434	30954-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31040	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-8892	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7111	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-7112	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-15516	Result Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01

1. Conforms to [Results Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32875).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-7108) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.3.1" (CONF:1198-9137).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32592).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15433).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="30954-2" Relevant diagnostic tests and/or laboratory data (CONF:1198-15434).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-31040).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1198-8892).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1198-7111).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7112) such that it

 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Result Organizer (v3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15516).

Figure 117: Results Section (entries required) (V3) Example

2.65 Review of Systems Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18 (open)]

Table 205: Review of Systems Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Consultation Note (V3) (optional)<li>Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)<li>History and Physical (V3) (required)<li>Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)<li>Referral Note (V2) (optional)<li>Progress Note (V3) (optional)<li>Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	

The Review of Systems Section contains a relevant collection of symptoms and functions systematically gathered by a clinician. It includes symptoms the patient is currently experiencing, some of which were not elicited during the history of present illness, as well as a potentially large number of pertinent negatives, for example, symptoms that the patient denied experiencing.

Table 206: Review of Systems Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7812	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10469	1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15435	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15436	10187-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26495	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7814	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7815	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7812) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18" (CONF:81-10469).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15435).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10187-3" Review of Systems (CONF:81-15436).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26495).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7814).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7815).

Figure 118: Review of Systems Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="1.3.6.1.4.1.19376.1.5.3.1.3.18"/>
  <code code="10187-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="REVIEW OF SYSTEMS"/>
  <title>REVIEW OF SYSTEMS</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>
      Patient denies recent history of fever or malaise. Positive
      For weakness and shortness of breath. One episode of melena. No recent
      headaches. Positive for osteoarthritis in hips, knees and hands.
    </paragraph>
  </text>
</section>

```

2.66 Social History Section (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 207: Social History Section (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional)	Pregnancy Observation (optional)
Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required)	Caregiver Characteristics (optional)
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional)	Characteristics of Home Environment (optional)
History and Physical (V3) (required)	Cultural and Religious Observation (optional)
Transfer Summary (V2) (optional)	Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (optional)
Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Tobacco Use (V2) (optional)
Procedure Note (V3) (optional)	Social History Observation (V3) (optional)

This section contains social history data that influence a patient's physical, psychological or emotional health (e.g., smoking status, pregnancy). Demographic data, such as marital status, race, ethnicity, and religious affiliation, is captured in the header.

Table 208: Social History Section (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7936	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10449	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32494	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14819	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14820	29762-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30814	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-7938	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7939	
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-7953	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14821	Social History Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-9132	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14822	Pregnancy Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8)
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-14823	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14824	Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-16816	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-16817	Tobacco Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28361	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28362	Caregiver Characteristics (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86:2014-06-09)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					20.22.4.72
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28366	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28367	Cultural and Religious Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111)
entry	0..*	MAY		1198-28825	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28826	Characteristics of Home Environment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7936) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.17" (CONF:1198-10449).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32494).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-14819).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="29762-2" Social History (CONF:1198-14820).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30814).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-7938).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7939).
5. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7953) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-14821).
6. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-9132) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Pregnancy Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8) (CONF:1198-14822).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-14823) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Smoking Status - Meaningful Use \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-14824).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-16816) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Tobacco Use \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-16817).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28361) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Caregiver Characteristics](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72) (CONF:1198-28362).

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28366) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Cultural and Religious Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111) (CONF:1198-28367).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-28825) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Characteristics of Home Environment](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109) (CONF:1198-28826).

Figure 119: Social History Section (V3) Example

```

        </observation>
    </entry>
</section>
</component>

```

2.67 Subjective Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2 (open)]

Table 209: Subjective Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Progress Note (V3) (optional)	

The Subjective Section describes in a narrative format the patient's current condition and/or interval changes as reported by the patient or by the patient's guardian or another informant.

Table 210: Subjective Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7873	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10470	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15437	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15438	61150-9
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26496	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-7875	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-7876	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7873) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2" (CONF:81-10470).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15437).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="61150-9" Subjective (CONF:81-15438).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26496).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-7875).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-7876).

Figure 120: Subjective Section Example

```
<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.21.2.2"/>
  <code code="61150-9" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="SUBJECTIVE"/>
  <title>SUBJECTIVE DATA</title>
  <text>
    <paragraph>
      I have used the peripheral nerve stimulator in my back for five days.
      While using it I found that I was able to do physical activity
      without pain. However, afterwards for one day, I would feel pain but
      then it would go away. I also noticed that I didn't have to take the
      Vicodin as much. I took 2 less Vicodin per day and 2 less tramadol
      everyday. I have not lain in my bed in a year and a half. I sleep in
      a recliner.
    </paragraph>
  </text>
</section>
```

2.68 Surgery Description Section (DEPRECATED)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.26:2014-06-09
(open)]

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED IN C-CDA R2 AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for deprecation: This template has been replaced by the Procedure Description Section (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.27).

Table 211: Surgery Description Section (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.26:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8022	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10450	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.26
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32893	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15439	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15440	29554-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-26497	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1098-8024	
text	1..1	SHALL		1098-8025	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8022) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.26" (CONF:1098-10450).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32893).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15439).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="29554-3" Surgery Description (CONF:1098-15440).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-26497).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1098-8024).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1098-8025).

2.69 Surgical Drains Section

[section: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13 (open)]

Table 212: Surgical Drains Section Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Operative Note (V3) (optional)	

The Surgical Drains Section may be used to record drains placed during the surgical procedure. Optionally, surgical drain placement may be represented with a text element in the Procedure Description Section.

Table 213: Surgical Drains Section Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8038	
@root	1..1	SHALL	UID	81-10473	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13
code	1..1	SHALL		81-15441	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15442	11537-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26498	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		81-8040	
text	1..1	SHALL		81-8041	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8038) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13" (CONF:81-10473).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-15441).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="11537-8" Surgical Drains (CONF:81-15442).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26498).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:81-8040).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-8041).
5. If the Surgical Drains section is present, there **SHALL** be a statement providing details of the drains placed or **SHALL** explicitly state there were no drains placed (CONF:81-8056).

Figure 121: Surgical Drains Section Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.7.13"/>
  <code code="11537-8"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="SURGICAL DRAINS"/>
  <title>Surgical Drains</title>
  <text>Penrose drain placed</text>
</section>

```

2.70 Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 214: Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Summary (V3) (optional) History and Physical (V3) (required) Progress Note (V3) (optional)	Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (optional)

The Vital Signs Section contains relevant vital signs for the context and use case of the document type, such as blood pressure, heart rate, respiratory rate, height, weight, body mass index, head circumference, pulse oximetry, temperature, and body surface area. The section should include notable vital signs such as the most recent, maximum and/or minimum, baseline, or relevant trends. Vital signs are represented in the same way as other results, but are aggregated into their own section to follow clinical conventions.

Table 215: Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7268	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10451	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32584	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15242	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15243	8716-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30902	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-9966	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7270	
entry	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7271	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-15517	Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7268) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4" (CONF:1198-10451).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32584).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-15242).
- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="8716-3" Vital Signs (CONF:1198-15243).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30902).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **title** (CONF:1198-9966).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:1198-7270).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7271) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Signs Organizer \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15517).

2.70.1 Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3)

[section: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 216: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Consultation Note (V3) (optional) Continuity of Care Document (CCD) (V3) (required) Transfer Summary (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (optional)	Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (required)

The Vital Signs Section contains relevant vital signs for the context and use case of the document type, such as blood pressure, heart rate, respiratory rate, height, weight, body mass index, head circumference, pulse oximetry, temperature, and body surface area. The section should include notable vital signs such as the most recent, maximum and/or minimum, baseline, or relevant trends. Vital signs are represented in the same way as other results, but are aggregated into their own section to follow clinical conventions.

Table 217: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
section (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1:2015-08-01)					
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1198-32874	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NI
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7273	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10452	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2 .4.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32585	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15962	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15963	8716-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30903	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
title	1..1	SHALL		1198-9967	
text	1..1	SHALL		1198-7275	
entry	1..*	SHALL		1198-7276	
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-15964	Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01)

1. Conforms to [Vital Signs Section \(entries optional\) \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4:2015-08-01).
2. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor="NI" No information (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1198-32874).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-7273) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1" (CONF:1198-10452).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32585).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-15962).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="8716-3" Vital Signs (CONF:1198-15963).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-30903).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] title (CONF:1198-9967).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] text (CONF:1198-7275).

If section/@nullFlavor is not present:

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entry** (CONF:1198-7276) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Vital Signs Organizer (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15964).

Figure 122: Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) Example

```
<component>
  <section>
    <!-- ** Vital Signs section with entries required -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.4.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <code code="8716-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="VITAL SIGNS" />
    <title>VITAL SIGNS</title>
    <text>
      . . .
    </text>
    <entry typeCode="DRIIV">
      <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- ** Vital signs organizer -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26" extension="2015-08-01"
/>
      . . .

      </organizer>
    </entry>
  </section>
</component>
```

3 ENTRY-LEVEL TEMPLATES

This chapter describes the clinical statement entry templates used within the sections of the document types of this consolidated guide. Entry templates contain constraints that are required for conformance.

Entry-level templates are always in sections.

Each entry-level template description contains the following information:

- Key template metadata (e.g., template identifier, etc.)
- Description and explanatory narrative.
- Required CDA acts, participants and vocabularies.
- Optional CDA acts, participants and vocabularies.

Several entry-level templates require an effectiveTime:

The effectiveTime of an observation is the time interval over which the observation is known to be true. The low and high values should be as precise as possible, but no more precise than known. While CDA has multiple mechanisms to record this time interval (e.g., by low and high values, low and width, high and width, or center point and width), this guide constrains most to use only the low/high form. The low value is the earliest point for which the condition is known to have existed. The high value, when present, indicates the time at which the observation was no longer known to be true. The full description of effectiveTime and time intervals is contained in the CDA R2 normative edition.

Provenance in entry templates:

In this version of Consolidated CDA (C-CDA), we have added a “SHOULD” Author constraint on several entry-level templates. Authorship and Author timestamps must be explicitly asserted in these cases, unless the values propagated from the document header hold true.

ID in entry templates:

Entry-level templates may also describe an id element, which is an identifier for that entry. This id may be referenced within the document, or by the system receiving the document. The id assigned must be globally unique.

3.1 Admission Medication (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 218: Admission Medication (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Admission Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (required)

This template represents the medications taken by the patient prior to and at the time of admission.

Table 219: Admission Medication (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7698	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7699	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-16758	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-16759	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .36
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32524	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15518	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15519	42346-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32152	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1098-7701	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7702	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15520	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7698).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7699).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-16758) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36"** (CONF:1098-16759).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32524).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15518).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="42346-7"** Medications on Admission (CONF:1098-15519).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32152).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7701) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7702).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Medication Activity (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15520).

Figure 123: Admission Medication (V2) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.36" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="42346-7" />
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- ** MEDICATION ACTIVITY V2 ** -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </substanceAdministration>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.2 Advance Directive Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 220: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (required) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (optional) US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This clinical statement represents Advance Directive Observation findings (e.g., “resuscitation status is Full Code”) rather than orders. It should not be considered a legal document or a substitute for the actual Advance Directive document. The related legal documents are referenced using the reference/externalReference element.

The Advance Directive Observation describes the patient’s directives, including but not limited to:

- Medications
- Transfer of Care to Hospital
- Treatment
- Procedures
- Intubation and Ventilation
- Diagnostic Tests
- Tests

The observation/value element contains the detailed patient directive which may be coded or text. For example, a category directive may be antibiotics, and the details would be intravenous antibiotics only.

Table 221: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8648	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8649	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8655	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10485	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .48
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32496	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8654	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8651	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2 (Advance Directive Type Code)
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32842	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32843	75320-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32844	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8652	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19082	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8656	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-28719	
high	1..1	SHALL		1198-15521	
value	1..1	SHALL		1198-30804	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32406	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8662	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8663	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = VRF
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8664	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10486	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.58
time	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8665	
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-8825	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28446	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	0..*	MAY		1198-28451	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2
playingEntity	0..1	MAY		1198-28428	
name	0..*	MAY		1198-28454	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8667	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8668	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CST
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-8669	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8670	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 (HL7RoleClass) = AGNT
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28440	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 (Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type)
addr	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8671	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8672	
playingEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-8824	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-28444	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51 (Healthcare Agent Qualifier)
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-8673	
reference	1..*	SHOULD		1198-8692	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8694	002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-8693	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8695	
text	0..1	MAY		1198-8696	
reference	0..1	MAY		1198-8697	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8648).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8649).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8655) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48"** (CONF:1198-10485).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32496).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8654).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [**Advance Directive Type Code**](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8651).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32842) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="75320-2"** Advance directive (CONF:1198-32843).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32844).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8652).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19082).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-8656).
 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-28719).
 - b. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1198-15521).
 - i. If the Advance Directive does not have a specified ending time, the <high> element **SHALL** have the nullFlavor attribute set to *NA* (CONF:1198-32449).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1198-30804) such that it
 - a. If type CD, then value will be SNOMED-CT 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (CONF:1198-32493).

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [**Author Participation**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-32406).

The participant "VRF" represents the clinician(s) who verified the patient advance directive observation.

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [**participant**](#) (CONF:1198-8662) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="VRF" Verifier (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8663).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**templateId**](#) (CONF:1198-8664) such that it
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.58" (CONF:1198-10486).
 - SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [**time**](#) (CONF:1198-8665).
 - The data type of Observation/participant/time in a verification **SHALL** be TS (time stamp) (CONF:1198-8666).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**participantRole**](#) (CONF:1198-8825).
 - This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [**code**](#), which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [**Healthcare Provider Taxonomy**](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28446).
 - This participantRole **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [**US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-28451).
 - This participantRole **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [**playingEntity**](#) (CONF:1198-28428).
 - The playingEntity, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [**US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1198-28454).

This custodian (CST) participant identifies a legal representative for the patient's advance directive. Examples of such individuals are called health care agents, substitute decision makers and/or health care proxies. If there is more than one legal representative, a qualifier may be used to designate the legal representative as primary or secondary.

11. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [**participant**](#) (CONF:1198-8667) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CST" Custodian (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8668).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [**participantRole**](#) (CONF:1198-8669).
 - This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="AGNT" Agent (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8670).
 - This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [**code**](#), which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [**Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type**](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28440).
 - This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [**US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDDED\)**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-8671).

- iv. This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-8672).
- v. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1198-8824).
 - 1. This playingEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Agent Qualifier](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-28444).

Record the name of the agent who can provide a copy of the Advance Directive in the name element.

- 2. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:1198-8673).
- 12. **SHOULD** contain at least one [1..*] **reference** (CONF:1198-8692) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8694).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **externalDocument** (CONF:1198-8693).
 - i. This externalDocument **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8695).
 - ii. This externalDocument **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:1198-8696).
 - 1. The text, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:1198-8697).
 - a. The URL of a referenced advance directive document **MAY** be present, and **SHALL** be represented in Observation/reference/ExternalDocument/text/reference (CONF:1198-8698).
 - b. If a URL is referenced, then it **SHOULD** have a corresponding linkHTML element in narrative block (CONF:1198-8699).

Table 222: Advance Directive Type Code

Value Set: Advance Directive Type Code urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2
(Clinical Focus: Kinds of intervention addressed by an advance directive),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
14152002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intravenous infusion (procedure)
281789004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Antibiotic therapy (procedure)
304251008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Resuscitation status (observable entity)
52765003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intubation (procedure)
61420007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tube feeding of patient (regime/therapy)
71388002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Procedure (procedure)
78823007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Life support procedure (procedure)
89666000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (procedure)

Table 223: Healthcare Agent Qualifier

Value Set: Healthcare Agent Qualifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51
(Clinical Focus: A value set SNOMED-CT qualifier codes for representing principal and secondary.),(Data Element Scope: Health care agent attribute),(Inclusion Criteria: Qualifier concepts Primary and Secondary only),(Exclusion Criteria: only concepts in inclusion criteria)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
2603003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Secondary (qualifier value)
63161005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Principal (qualifier value)

Figure 124: Advance Directive Observation (V3) Example

```

<entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- ** Advance Directive Observation** -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48"
        extension="2015-08-01" />
        <id root="9b54c3c9-1673-49c7-aef9-b037ed72ed27" />
        <code code="304251008" displayName="Resuscitation"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT">
            <translation code="75320-2"
                        displayName="Advance Directive"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                        codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
        </code>
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <effectiveTime>
            <low value="20110213" />
            <high nullFlavor="NA" />
        </effectiveTime>
        <value xsi:type="CD"
              code="304253006"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
              codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT"
              displayName="Not for resuscitation">
            <originalText>Do not resuscitate</originalText>
        </value>
        <author>
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
            <time value="201308011235-0800" />
            <assignedAuthor>
                <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />
                <code code="163W00000X"
                      displayName="Registered nurse"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
                      codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)" />
                <assignedPerson>
                    <name>
                        <given>Nurse</given>
                        <family>Nightingale</family>
                        <suffix>RN</suffix>
                    </name>
                </assignedPerson>
                <representedOrganization classCode="ORG">
                    <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
                    <name>Good Health Hospital</name>
                </representedOrganization>
            </assignedAuthor>
        </author>
        <participant typeCode="VRF">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.58" />
            <time value="201302013" />
            <participantRole>
                <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />
                <code code="163W00000X"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
                      codeSystemName="Health Care Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)"
                      displayName="Registered nurse" />
            </participantRole>
        </participant>
    </observation>

```

```

<addr>
...
</addr>
<telecom value="tel:(995)555-1006" use="WP" />
<playingEntity>
<code code="63161005" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" displayName="Principal" />
<name>
<given>Nurse</given>
<family>Florence</family>
<suffix>RN</suffix>
</name>
</playingEntity>
</participantRole>
</participant>
<participant typeCode="CST">
<participantRole classCode="AGNT">
<code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" displayName="Mother"
/>
<addr>
...
</addr>
<telecom value="tel:(999)555-1212" use="WP" />
<playingEntity>
<code code="63161005" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" displayName="Principal" />
<name>
<prefix>Mrs.</prefix>
<given>Martha</given>
<family>Jones</family>
</name>
</playingEntity>
</participantRole>
</participant>
<reference typeCode="REFR">
<externalDocument>
<id root="b50b7910-7ffb-4f4c-bbe4-177ed68cbbf3" />
<text mediaType="application/pdf">
<reference value="AdvanceDirective.b50b7910-7ffb-4f4c-bbe4-
177ed68cbbf3.pdf" />
</text>
<versionNumber value="1" />
</externalDocument>
</reference>
</observation>
</entry>

```

3.3 Advance Directive Organizer (V2)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 224: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Advance Directives Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Advance Directives Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)	Author Participation (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (required)

This clinical statement groups a set of advance directive observations.

Table 225: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-28410	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-28411	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-28412	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-28413	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .108
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32876	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-28414	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-28415	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31230	45473-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31231	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-28418	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31346	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32407	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
component	1..*	SHALL		1198-28420	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-28421	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="CLUSTER" Cluster (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-28410).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 STATIC) (CONF:1198-28411).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-28412) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108" (CONF:1198-28413).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32876).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [..*] **id** (CONF:1198-28414).

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-28415).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="45473-6" Advance directive - living will (CONF:1198-31230).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-31231).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-28418).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1198-31346).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-32407).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1198-28420) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Advance Directive Observation (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-28421).

Figure 125: Advance Directive Organizer (V2) Example

```
<organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.108" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <id root="631F0E95-F055-4FA2-AF10-3AE036CAD2EC" extension="10.1.1" />
  <code code="45473-6"
    displayName="advance directive - living will"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC">
    <originalText>
      <reference value="#ADO1" />
    </originalText>
  </code>
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <!-- Author Participation -->
  <author>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
    <time value="20130807150000-0500" />
    <assignedAuthor>
      <id extension="5555555551" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
      <code code="163W00000X"
        displayName="Registered nurse"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
        codeSystemName="Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)" />
      <assignedPerson>
        <name>
          <given>Nurse</given>
          <family>Nightingale</family>
          <suffix>RN</suffix>
        </name>
      </assignedPerson>
      <representedOrganization classCode="ORG">
        <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
        <name>Good Health Hospital</name>
      </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
  </author>
  <component>
    <!-- Advance Directive Observation (V3) -->
    ...
  </component>
  <component>
    <!-- Advance Directive Observation (V3) -->
    ...
  </component>
  <component>
    <!-- Advance Directive Observation (V3) -->
    ...
  </component>
</organizer>
```

3.4 Age Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31 (open)]

Table 226: Age Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Family History Observation (V3) (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (optional)	

This Age Observation represents the subject's age at onset of an event or observation. The age of a relative in a Family History Observation at the time of that observation could also be inferred by comparing RelatedSubject/subject/birthTime with Observation/effectiveTime. However, a common scenario is that a patient will know the age of a relative when the relative had a certain condition or when the relative died, but will not know the actual year (e.g., "grandpa died of a heart attack at the age of 50"). Often times, neither precise dates nor ages are known (e.g., "cousin died of congenital heart disease as an infant").

Table 227: Age Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7613	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7614	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1.001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7899	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10487	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31
code	1..1	SHALL		81-7615	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-16776	445518008
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26499	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-15965	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-15966	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1.4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	81-7617	
@unit	1..1	SHALL	CS	81-7618	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21 (AgePQ_UCUM)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7613).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7614).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7899) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31" (CONF:81-10487).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-7615).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="445518008" Age At Onset (CONF:81-16776).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:81-26499).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-15965).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-15966).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:81-7617).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [AgePQ_UCUM](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-7618).

Table 228: AgePQ_UCUM

Value Set: AgePQ_UCUM urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21 (Clinical Focus: Units of time needed for humans and animals),(Data Element Scope: time),(Inclusion Criteria: time units from year to minute),(Exclusion Criteria: only units within inclusion criteria)			
--	--	--	--

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20180508.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
a	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	year
d	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	day
h	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	hour
min	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	minute
mo	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	month
wk	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	week

Figure 126: Age Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31" />
  <!-- Age observation -->
  <code code="445518008"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName="Age At Onset" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <value xsi:type="PQ" value="57" unit="a" />
</observation>
```

3.5 Allergy Concern Act (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 229: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Allergies and Intolerances Section (entries required) (V3) (required)	Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (required) Author Participation (optional)

This template reflects an ongoing concern on behalf of the provider that placed the allergy on a patient's allergy list. As long as the underlying condition is of concern to the provider (i.e., as long as the allergy, whether active or resolved, is of ongoing concern and interest to the provider), the statusCode is "active". Only when the underlying allergy is no longer of concern is the statusCode set to "completed". The effectiveTime reflects the time that the underlying allergy was felt to be a concern.

The statusCode of the Allergy Concern Act is the definitive indication of the status of the concern, whereas the effectiveTime of the nested Allergy - Intolerance Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying allergy is resolved.

The effectiveTime/low of the Allergy Concern Act asserts when the concern became active. This equates to the time the concern was authored in the patient's chart. The effectiveTime/high asserts when the concern was completed (e.g., when the clinician deemed there is no longer any need to track the underlying condition).

Table 230: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7469	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7470	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7471	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10489	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .30
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32543	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-7472	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-7477	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19158	CONC
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32154	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.6
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7485	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19086	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.19 (ProblemAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-7498	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31145	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-7509	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7915	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14925	Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7469).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7470).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7471) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30" (CONF:1198-10489).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32543).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-7472).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-7477).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="CONC" Concern (CONF:1198-19158).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.6" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32154).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-7485).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **ProblemAct statusCode** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-19086).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-7498).
 - a. If statusCode/@code="active" Active, then effectiveTime **SHALL** contain [1..1] low (CONF:1198-7504).
 - b. If statusCode/@code="completed" Completed, then effectiveTime **SHALL** contain [1..1] high (CONF:1198-10085).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31145).
9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-7509) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7915).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Allergy - Intolerance Observation (v2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-14925).

Table 231: ProblemAct statusCode

Value Set: ProblemAct statusCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19 A ValueSet of HL7 actStatus codes for use on the concern act Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrasstructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Completed
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Aborted
active	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Active
suspended	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Suspended

Figure 127: Allergy Concern Act (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Allergy Concern Act -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.30" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="36e3e930-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="CONC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.6" />
    <!-- The statusCode represents the need to continue tracking the allergy -->
    <!-- This is of ongoing concern to the provider -->
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <!-- The low value represents when the allergy was first recorded in the
            patient's chart -->
        <!-- Concern started being tracked as an active issue on May 1, 1998 -->
        <low value="199805011145-0800" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <!-- Same as Concern effectiveTime/low -->
        <time value="199805011145-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="555555555" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Allergy observation -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <id root="4adc1020-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
            <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
            <!-- Observation statusCode represents the status of the act of observing -->
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime>
                <!-- The low value reflects the date of onset of the allergy -->
                <!-- Based on patient symptoms, presumed onset is May 1, 1998 -->
                <low value="19980501" />
                <!-- The high value reflects when the allergy was known to be resolved
                    (and will generally be absent) -->
            </effectiveTime>
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="419199007" displayName="Allergy to substance"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
            <author typeCode="AUT">
                <time value="199805011145-0800" />
                <assignedAuthor>
                    <id extension="222223333" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.3" />
                </assignedAuthor>
            </author>
            <participant typeCode="CSM">
                <participantRole classCode="MANU">
                    <playingEntity classCode="MMAT">
                        <code code="70618" displayName="Penicillin"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" codeSystemName="RxNorm" />
                        </playingEntity>
                    </participantRole>
                </participant>
                <entryRelationship typeCode="MFST" inversionInd="true">
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <!-- ** Reaction observation -->
                        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9" extension="2014-06-
09" />
                
```

```

<id root="4adc1020-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a64" />
<code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
<statusCode code="completed" />
<effectiveTime>
    <low value="200802260800-0800" />
    <high value="2008022801200-0800" />
</effectiveTime>
<value xsi:type="CD" code="422587007"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" displayName="Nausea" />
</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.6 Allergy Status Observation

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20
(open)]

Table 232: Allergy Status Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional)	

This template represents the clinical status attributed to the allergy or intolerance. There can be only one allergy status observation per allergy - intolerance observation.

Table 233: Allergy Status Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7318	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7319	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7317	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10490	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .28
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32962	2019-06-20
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-7320	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19131	33999-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32155	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7321	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19087	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CE	1198-7322	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1099.29 (Allergy Clinical Status)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7318).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7319).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-7317) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.28" (CONF:1198-10490).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2019-06-20" (CONF:1198-32962).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-7320).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="33999-4" Status (CONF:1198-19131).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32155).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1198-7321).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19087).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CE", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Allergy Clinical Status](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.29 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7322).

Table 234: Allergy Clinical Status

Value Set: Allergy Clinical Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.29 (Clinical Focus: The clinical status of an allergic condition),(Data Element Scope: Status value),(Inclusion Criteria: limited high level status of a clinical condition),(Exclusion Criteria: none specific) This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190418. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.29/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
413322009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Problem resolved (finding)
55561003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Active (qualifier value)
73425007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Inactive (qualifier value)

3.7 Assessment Scale Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69 (open)]

Table 235: Assessment Scale Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Sensory Status (optional) Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Mental Status Observation (V3) (optional) Mental Status Section (V2) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Assessment Scale Supporting Observation (optional)

An assessment scale is a collection of observations that together yield a summary evaluation of a particular condition. Examples include the Braden Scale (assesses pressure ulcer risk), APACHE Score (estimates mortality in critically ill patients), Mini-Mental Status Exam (assesses cognitive function), APGAR Score (assesses the health of a newborn), and Glasgow Coma Scale (assesses coma and impaired consciousness).

Table 236: Assessment Scale Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14434	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14435	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-14436	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-14437	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .69
id	1..*	SHALL		81-14438	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-14439	
derivationExpr	0..1	MAY		81-14637	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14444	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19088	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		81-14445	
value	1..1	SHALL		81-14450	
interpretationCode	0..*	MAY		81-14459	
translation	0..*	MAY		81-14888	
author	0..*	MAY		81-14460	
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		81-14451	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-16741	COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-16742	Assessment Scale Supporting Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86)
referenceRange	0..*	MAY		81-16799	
observationRange	1..1	SHALL		81-16800	
text	0..1	SHOULD		81-16801	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		81-16802	
@value	0..1	MAY		81-16803	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14434).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14435).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-14436) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69"** (CONF:81-14437).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-14438).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-14439).

- a. **SHOULD** be from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) identifying the assessment scale (CONF:81-14440).

Such derivation expression can contain a text calculation of how the components total up to the summed score

6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **derivationExpr** (CONF:81-14637).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-14444).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19088).

Represents clinically effective time of the measurement, which may be when the measurement was performed (e.g., a BP measurement), or may be when sample was taken (and measured some time afterwards)

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-14445).
9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:81-14450).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **interpretationCode** (CONF:81-14459).
 - a. The interpretationCode, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation** (CONF:81-14888).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **author** (CONF:81-14460).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-14451) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="COMP"** has component (CONF:81-16741).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Supporting Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86) (CONF:81-16742).

The referenceRange/observationRange/text, if present, MAY contain a description of the scale (e.g., for a Pain Scale 1 to 10: 1 to 3 = little pain, 4 to 7= moderate pain, 8 to 10 = severe pain)

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **referenceRange** (CONF:81-16799).
 - a. The referenceRange, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observationRange** (CONF:81-16800).

The text may contain a description of the scale (e.g., for a Pain Scale 1 to 10: 1 to 3 = little pain, 4 to 7= moderate pain, 8 to 10 = severe pain)

- i. This observationRange **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:81-16801).
 1. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:81-16802).
 - a. The reference, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:81-16803).
 - i. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:81-16804).

Figure 128: Assessment Scale Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69"/>
  <id root="c6b5a04b-2bf4-49d1-8336-636a3813df0b"/>
  <code code="54614-3"
    displayName="Brief Interview for Mental Status"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"/>
  <derivationExpr>Text description of the calculation</derivationExpr>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <effectiveTime value="20120214"/>
  <!-- Summed score of the component values -->
  <value xsi:type="INT" value="7"/>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86"/>
      . . .
    </entryRelationship>
  </observation>
```

3.8 Assessment Scale Supporting Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86 (open)]

Table 237: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Assessment Scale Observation (optional)	

An Assessment Scale Supporting Observation represents the components of a scale used in an Assessment Scale Observation. The individual parts that make up the component may be a group of cognitive or functional status observations.

Table 238: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-16715	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-16716	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-16722	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-16723	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .86
id	1..*	SHALL		81-16724	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19178	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19179	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-16720	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19089	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..*	SHALL		81-16754	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-16715).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-16716).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-16722) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86"** (CONF:81-16723).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-16724).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19178).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code** (CONF:81-19179).
 - i. Such that the **@code** **SHALL** be from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) and represents components of the scale (CONF:81-19180).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-16720).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19089).
7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **value** (CONF:81-16754).
 - a. If xsi:type="CD", **MAY** have a translation code to further specify the source if the instrument has an applicable code system and value set for the integer (CONF:14639) (CONF:81-16755).

Figure 129: Assessment Scale Supporting Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.86"/>
  <id root="f4dce790-8328-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a44"/>
  <code code="248240001" displayName="motor response"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="INT" value="3"/>
</observation>
```

3.9 Authorization Activity

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19 (open)]

An Authorization Activity represents authorizations or pre-authorizations currently active for the patient for the particular payer.

Authorizations are represented using an act subordinate to the policy or program that provided it. The authorization refers to the policy or program. Authorized treatments can be grouped into an organizer class, where common properties, such as the reason for the authorization, can be expressed. Subordinate acts represent what was authorized.

Table 239: Authorization Activity Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8944	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8945	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8946	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10529	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19
id	1..1	SHALL		81-8947	
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		81-8948	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8949	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8944).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8945).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8946) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19"** (CONF:81-10529).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:81-8947).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-8948) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8949).
- b. The target of an authorization activity with act/entryRelationship/@typeCode="SUBJ" **SHALL** be a clinical statement with moodCode="PRMS" Promise (CONF:81-8951).
- c. The target of an authorization activity **MAY** contain one or more performer, to indicate the providers that have been authorized to provide treatment (CONF:81-8952).

Figure 130: Authorization Activity Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19"/>
  <id root="f4dce790-8328-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66"/>
  <code nullFlavor="NA" />
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="PRMS">
      <code code="73761001"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
            displayName="Colonoscopy"/>
    </procedure>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>
```

3.10 Boundary Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11 (open)]

Table 240: Boundary Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Referenced Frames Observation (required)	

A Boundary Observation contains a list of integer values for the referenced frames of a DICOM multiframe image SOP instance. It identifies the frame numbers within the referenced SOP instance to which the reference applies. The CDA Boundary Observation numbers frames using the same convention as DICOM, with the first frame in the referenced object being Frame 1. A Boundary Observation must be used if a referenced DICOM SOP instance is a multiframe image and the reference does not apply to all frames.

Table 241: Boundary Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9282	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9283	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9284	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19157	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 113036
value	1..*	SHALL	INT	81-9285	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9282).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9283).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9284).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="113036"** Frames for Display (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19157).

Each number represents a frame for display.

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **value** with @xsi:type="INT" (CONF:81-9285).

Figure 131: Boundary Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11"/>
  <code code="113036" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
    displayName="Frames for Display"/>
  <value xsi:type="INT" value="1"/>
</observation>
```

3.11 Caregiver Characteristics

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72 (open)]

Table 242: Caregiver Characteristics Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional)	

This clinical statement represents a caregiver's willingness to provide care and the abilities of that caregiver to provide assistance to a patient in relation to a specific need.

Table 243: Caregiver Characteristics Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14219	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14220	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-14221	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-14222	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .72
id	1..*	SHALL		81-14223	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-14230	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14233	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19090	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	81-14599	
participant	1..*	SHALL		81-14227	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-26451	IND
time	0..1	MAY		81-14830	
low	1..1	SHALL		81-14831	
high	0..1	MAY		81-14832	
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		81-14228	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14229	CAREGIVER

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14219).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14220).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-14221) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72"** (CONF:81-14222).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-14223).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-14230).
 - a. This code **MAY** be drawn from LOINC (CodeSystem: LOINC 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or **MAY** be bound to ASSERTION (CodeSystem: ActCode 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-26513).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-14233).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19090).

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD" (CONF:81-14599).
 - a. The code **SHALL** be selected from LOINC (codeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:81-14600).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **participant** (CONF:81-14227).
 - a. Such participants **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="IND" (CONF:81-26451).
 - b. Such participants **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **time** (CONF:81-14830).
 - i. The time, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:81-14831).
 - ii. The time, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:81-14832).
 - c. Such participants **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:81-14228).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="CAREGIVER" (CONF:81-14229).

Figure 132: Caregiver Characteristics Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72"/>
  <id root="c6b5a04b-2bf4-49d1-8336-636a3813df0c"/>
  <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="422615001"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName="caregiver difficulty providing
    physical care"/>
  <participant typeCode="IND">
    <participantRole classCode="CAREGIVER">
      <code code="MTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"
        displayName="Mother"/>
    </participantRole>
  </participant>
</observation>

```

3.12 Characteristics of Home Environment

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109 (open)]

Table 244: Characteristics of Home Environment Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Social History Section (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the patient's home environment including, but not limited to, type of residence (trailer, single family home, assisted living), living arrangement (e.g., alone, with parents), and housing status (e.g., evicted, homeless, home owner).

Table 245: Characteristics of Home Environment Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27890	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27891	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-27892	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-27893	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .109
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-27894	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31352	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31353	75274-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31354	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27901	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-27902	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-28823	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.49 (Residence and Accommodation Type)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27890).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27891).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-27892) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109" (CONF:1098-27893).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-27894).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-31352).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75274-1" Characteristics of residence (CONF:1098-31353).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31354).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-27901).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27902).

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Residence and Accommodation Type](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.49 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-28823).

Table 246: Residence and Accommodation Type

Value Set: Residence and Accommodation Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.49 (Clinical Focus: A value set of SNOMED-CT codes descending from "365508006" "Residence and accommodation circumstances - finding" reflecting type of residence, status of accommodations, living situation and environment.),(Data Element Scope: element that is used to describe housing situation),(Inclusion Criteria: All descendants of 365508006),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.49/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
105526001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Homeless family (finding)
105527005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Living in residence with poor sanitation (finding)
105530003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Living in residential institution (finding)
105531004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Housing unsatisfactory (finding)
105532006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Overcrowded in house (finding)
105535008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Lack of heat in house (finding)
105536009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Living in housing without electricity (finding)
105537000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Living in housing with technical defects (finding)
113165003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Duplex home living (finding)
11762561000 119103	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Assisted living facility patient (finding)
...			

Figure 133: Characteristics of Home Environment Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Characteristics of Home Environment** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109" />
    <id root="37f76c51-6411-4e1d-8a37-957fd49d2ceg" />
    <code code="75274-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Characteristics of residence" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130312" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="308899009" displayName="unsatisfactory living conditions
(finding)" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
</observation>
```

3.13 Code Observations

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13 (open)]

Table 247: Code Observations Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	SOP Instance Observation (optional) Quantity Measurement Observation (optional)

DICOM Template 2000 specifies that Imaging Report Elements of Value Type Code are contained in sections. The Imaging Report Elements are inferred from Basic Diagnostic Imaging Report Observations that consist of image references and measurements (linear, area, volume, and numeric). Coded DICOM Imaging Report Elements in this context are mapped to CDA-coded observations that are section components and are related to the SOP Instance Observations (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) or Quantity Measurement Observations (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14) by the SPRT (Support) act relationship.

Table 248: Code Observations Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9304	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9305	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-15523	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-15524	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19181	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9309	
value	1..1	SHALL		81-9308	
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9311	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9312	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-16083	SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9314	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9315	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-16084	Quantity Measurement Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9304).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9305).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-15523).
 - a. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13"** (CONF:81-15524).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19181).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9309).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:81-9308).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9311) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SPRT"** Has Support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9312).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [SOP Instance Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) (CONF:81-16083).
- 8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9314) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has Support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9315).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Quantity Measurement Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14) (CONF:81-16084).
- 9. Code Observations **SHALL** be rendered into section/text in separate paragraphs (CONF:81-9310).

Figure 134: Code Observations Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.13"/>
  <code code="18782-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Study observation"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="309530007"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
    displayName="Hilar mass"/>
  <!-- entryRelationship elements referring to SOP Instance Observations
       or Quantity Measurement Observations may appear here -->
</observation>
```

3.14 Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.73:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 249: Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)	

A cognitive status problem observation is a clinical statement that describes a patient's cognitive condition, findings, or symptoms. Examples of cognitive problem observations are inability to recall, amnesia, dementia, and aggressive behavior.

A cognitive problem observation is a finding or medical condition. This is different from a cognitive result observation, which is a response to a question that provides insight into the patient's cognitive status, judgement, comprehension ability, or response speed.

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for deprecation: Cognitive Status Problem Observation has been merged, without loss of expressivity, into Mental Status Observation (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74).

Table 250: Cognitive Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.73:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14319	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14320	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
@negationInd	0..1	MAY		1098-14344	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-14346	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-14347	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .73
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32600	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-14321	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14804	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14805	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 373930000
text	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14341	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1098-15532	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-15533	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14323	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19091	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14324	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-26458	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-26459	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-14349	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)
methodCode	0..*	MAY		1098-14693	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14319).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14320).

Use negationInd="true" to indicate that the problem was not observed.

3. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @negationInd (CONF:1098-14344).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-14346) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.73" (CONF:1098-14347).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32600).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-14321).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-14804).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code="373930000" Cognitive function finding (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14805).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] text (CONF:1098-14341).
 - a. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] reference (CONF:1098-15532).
 - i. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @value (CONF:1098-15533).
 1. SHALL begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-15534).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-14323).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19091).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-14324).

The value of effectiveTime/low represents onset date.

- a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] low (CONF:1098-26458).
 - b. The effectiveTime, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] high (CONF:1098-26459).
10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Problem urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-14349).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] methodCode (CONF:1098-14693).

Table 251: Problem

Value Set: Problem urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 (Clinical Focus: A pathology or disorder identified in a patient),(Data Element Scope: Observations),(Inclusion Criteria: Limited to terms descending from the Clinical Findings (404684003) or Situation with Explicit Context (243796009) hierarchies.),(Exclusion Criteria: any concept not in the hierarchies specified) This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190426. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10000006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Radiating chest pain (finding)
10001005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Bacterial sepsis (disorder)
10007009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Coffin-Siris syndrome (disorder)
1001000119102	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pulmonary embolism with pulmonary infarction (disorder)
1001000124104	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Normal left ventricular systolic function (finding)
10017004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Occlusal wear of teeth (disorder)
100191000119105	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Asymmetry of prostate (finding)
100211000119106	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Muscle spasm of thoracic back (disorder)
100231000119101	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Acquired pericardial cyst (disorder)
10028000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Uncomplicated sedative, hypnotic AND/OR anxiolytic withdrawal (disorder)
...			

3.15 Comment Activity

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.64 (open)]

Table 252: Comment Activity Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Author Participation (optional)

Comments are free text data that cannot otherwise be recorded using data elements already defined by this specification. They are not to be used to record information that can be recorded elsewhere. For

example, a free text description of the severity of an allergic reaction would not be recorded in a comment.

Table 253: Comment Activity Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.64)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9425	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9426	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9427	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10491	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .64
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9428	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19159	48767-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26501	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
text	1..1	SHALL		81-9430	
reference	1..1	SHALL		81-15967	
@value	1..1	SHALL		81-15968	
reference/@value	1..1	SHALL		81-9431	
author	0..1	SHOULD		81-9433	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9425).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9426).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9427) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.64"** (CONF:81-10491).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9428).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="48767-8"** Annotation Comment (CONF:81-19159).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26501).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-9430).
 - a. This text **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **reference** (CONF:81-15967).
 - i. This reference **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@value** (CONF:81-15968).

1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:81-15969).
- b. This text **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **reference/@value** (CONF:81-9431).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:81-9433).
7. Data elements defined elsewhere in the specification **SHALL NOT** be recorded using the Comment Activity (CONF:81-9429).

Figure 135: Comment Activity Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.64"/>
  <code code="48767-8" displayName="Annotation Comment"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"/>
  <text>The patient stated that he was looking forward to an upcoming vacation to New York with his family. He was concerned that he may not have enough medication for the trip. An additional prescription was provided to cover that period of time.
    <reference value="#PntrrtoSectionText"/>
  </text>
  <author>
    <time value="20050329224411+0500"/>
    <assignedAuthor>
      <id extension="KP00017" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5"/>
      <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>21 North Ave.</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Burlington</city>
        <state>MA</state>
        <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
      </addr>
      <telecom use="WP" value="tel:(555)555-1003"/>
      <assignedPerson>
        <name>
          <given>Henry</given>
          <family>Seven</family>
        </name>
      </assignedPerson>
    </assignedAuthor>
  </author>
</act>

```

3.16 Coverage Activity (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 254: Coverage Activity (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Payers Section (V3) (optional)	Policy Activity (V3) (required)

A Coverage Activity groups the policy and authorization acts within a Payers Section to order the payment sources. A Coverage Activity contains one or more Policy Activities, each of which contains zero or more Authorization Activities. The Coverage Activity id is the ID from the patient's insurance card. The sequenceNumber/@value shows the policy order of preference.

Table 255: Coverage Activity (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8872	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8873	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8897	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10492	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .60
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32596	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8874	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8876	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19160	48768-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32156	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8875	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19094	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-8878	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8879	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
sequenceNumber	0..1	MAY		1198-17174	
@value	1..1	SHALL		1198-17175	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15528	Policy Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8872).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8873).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8897) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60" (CONF:1198-10492).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32596).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8874).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8876).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="48768-6" Payment sources (CONF:1198-19160).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32156).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8875).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19094).
7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8878) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8879).
 - b. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sequenceNumber** (CONF:1198-17174).
 - i. The sequenceNumber, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @value (CONF:1198-17175).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Policy Activity (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15528).

Figure 136: Coverage Activity (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.60" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <id root="1fe2cd0-7aad-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
  <code code="48768-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Payment sources" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      <sequenceNumber value="2" />
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61" extension="2015-08-01" />
      . . .
      </act>
    </entryRelationship>
  </act>

```

3.17 Criticality Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145 (open)]

Table 256: Criticality Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional)	

This observation represents the gravity of the potential risk for future life-threatening adverse reactions when exposed to a substance known to cause an adverse reaction in that individual. When the worst case result is assessed to have a life-threatening or organ system threatening potential, it is considered to be of high criticality.

Table 257: Criticality Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-32921	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-32922	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-32918	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-32923	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .145
code	1..1	SHALL		81-32919	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-32925	82606-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-32926	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-32920	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-32927	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	81-32928	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20549 (Criticality Observation)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-32921).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-32922).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-32918) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145"** (CONF:81-32923).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-32919).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="82606-5" Criticality (CONF:81-32925).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-32926).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-32920).
- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-32927).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Criticality Observation](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20549 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-32928).

Table 258: Criticality Observation

Value Set: Criticality Observation urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20549 (Clinical Focus: A clinical judgment as to the worst case result of a future exposure (including substance administration).),(Data Element Scope: observation),(Inclusion Criteria: All descendant codes from _CriticalityObservationValue in code system ObservationValue),(Exclusion Criteria: none)			
---	--	--	--

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20549/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
CRITH	HL7ObservationValue	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 63	high criticality
CRITL	HL7ObservationValue	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 63	low criticality
CRITU	HL7ObservationValue	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 63	unable to assess criticality

Figure 137: Criticality Observation Example

<pre><observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN"> <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145"/> <code code="82606-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="Criticality" /> <text> <reference value="#criticality"/> </text> <statusCode code="completed"/> <value xsi:type="CD" code="High" displayName="High Criticality - NEED PROPER CODE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"/> </observation></pre>

3.18 Cultural and Religious Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111 (open)]

Table 259: Cultural and Religious Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional)	

This template represents a patient's spiritual, religious, and cultural belief practices, such as a kosher diet or fasting ritual. **religiousAffiliationCode** in the document header captures only the patient's religious affiliation.

Table 260: Cultural and Religious Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27924	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27925	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-27926	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-27927	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .111
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-27928	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-27929	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-27930	75281-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-27931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27936	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-27937	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-28442	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27924).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27925).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-27926) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111" (CONF:1098-27927).
- 4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-27928).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-27929).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75281-6" Personal belief (CONF:1098-27930).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-27931).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-27936).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27937).
- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-28442).
 - a. If xsi:type is CD, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED-CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 STATIC) (CONF:1098-32487).

Figure 138: Cultural and Religious Observation Example

```
<entry>
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- **Cultural and Religious Observation *-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111" />
    <id root="37f76c51-6411-4eld-8a37-957fd49d2cef" />
    <code code="75281-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Personal belief" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20130312" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="ST">Does not accept blood transfusions, or donates, or
      stores blood for transfusion.</value>
  </observation>
</entry>
```

3.19 Deceased Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.79:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 261: Deceased Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
	Problem Observation (V3) (optional)

This template represents the observation that a patient has died. It also represents the cause of death, indicated by an entryRelationship type of 'CAUS'. This template allows for more specific representation of data than is available with the use of dischargeDispositionCode.

Table 262: Deceased Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.79:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14851	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14852	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14871	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14872	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .79
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32541	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-14873	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14853	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19135	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32158	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14854	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19095	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-14855	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-14874	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-14857	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15142	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 419099009
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1198-14868	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14875	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = CAUS
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-32900	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14870	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14851).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14852).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-14871) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.79"** (CONF:1198-14872).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32541).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-14873).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-14853).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ASSERTION"** Assertion (CONF:1198-19135).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1198-32158).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-14854).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19095).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-14855).
 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-14874).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with **@xsi:type="CD"** (CONF:1198-14857).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="419099009"** Dead (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-15142).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-14868) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="CAUS"** Is etiology for (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14875).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@inversionInd="true"** True (CONF:1198-32900).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Problem Observation (v3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-14870).

Figure 139: Deceased Observation (V3) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.79" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="6898fae0-5c8a-11db-b0de-0800200c9a77" />
    <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20100303" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="419099009" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayNames="Dead" />
    <entry typeCode="DRIV">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
            ...
            ...
        </observation>
    </entry>
</observation>
```

3.20 Discharge Medication (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01 (open)]

Table 263: Discharge Medication (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Medications Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (required)
Discharge Medications Section (entries required) (V3) (required)	

This template represents medications that the patient is intended to take (or stop) after discharge.

Table 264: Discharge Medication (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35:2016-03-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7689	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7690	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16760	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16761	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .35
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32513	2016-03-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-7691	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19161	10183-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32159	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32952	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32953	75311-1
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32954	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32779	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32780	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-7692	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7693	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-15525	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7689).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7690).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16760) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35" (CONF:1198-16761).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2016-03-01" (CONF:1198-32513).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-7691).
- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10183-2" Hospital discharge medication (CONF:1198-19161).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32159).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32952).
 - i. This translation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75311-1" Discharge Medication (CONF:1198-32953).
 - ii. This translation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32954).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-32779).
- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32780).
6. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-7692) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7693).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Medication Activity (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7:ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15525).

Figure 140: Discharge Medication (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.35" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="10183-2"
    displayName="Hospital discharge medication"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC">
    <translation code="75311-1"
      displayName="Discharge medication"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"/>
  </code>
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
      ...
    </substanceAdministration>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.21 Drug Monitoring Act

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123 (open)]

Table 265: Drug Monitoring Act Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional)	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (required)

This template represents the act of monitoring the patient's medication and includes a participation to record the person responsible for monitoring the medication. The prescriber of the medication is not necessarily the same person or persons monitoring the drug. The effectiveTime indicates the time when the activity is intended to take place.

For example, a cardiologist may prescribe a patient Warfarin. The patient's primary care provider may monitor the patient's INR and adjust the dosing of the Warfarin based on these laboratory results. Here the person designated to monitor the drug is the primary care provider.

Table 266: Drug Monitoring Act Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30823	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-28656	INT
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-28657	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-28658	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31920	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-28660	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30818	395170001
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30819	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31921	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32358	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.15933 (ActStatus)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31922	
participant	1..*	SHALL		1098-28661	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-28663	RESP
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-28662	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-28664	ASSIGNED
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-28665	
playingEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-28667	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-28668	PSN
name	1..1	SHALL		1098-28669	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ACT" act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-30823).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="INT" (CONF:1098-28656).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-28657) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123" (CONF:1098-28658).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31920).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-28660).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="395170001" medication monitoring (regime/therapy) (CONF:1098-30818).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-30819).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31921).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **ActStatus** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32358).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31922).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-28661) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RESP" (CONF:1098-28663).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1098-28662).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ASSIGNED" (CONF:1098-28664).
 - ii. This participantRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-28665).
 - iii. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1098-28667).
 1. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="PSN" (CONF:1098-28668).
 2. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1098-28669).

Table 267: ActStatus

Value Set: ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933 Contains the names (codes) for each of the states in the state-machine of the RIM Act class. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
normal	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	normal
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	aborted
active	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	active
cancelled	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	cancelled
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	completed
held	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	held
new	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	new
suspended	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	suspended
nullified	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	nullified
obsolete	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	obsolete

Figure 141: Drug Monitoring Act Example

```

<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <!-- **DRUG MONITORING ACT **-->
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123" />
        <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4ee8" />
        <code code="395170001" displayName="medication monitoring(regime/therapy"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20130615" />
            <high value="20130715" />
        </effectiveTime>
        <participant typeCode="RESP">
            <participantRole classCode="ASSIGNED">
                <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4ee5" />
                <playingEntity classCode="PSN">
                    <name>
                        <given>Listener</given>
                        <family>Larry</family>
                        <prefix>DR</prefix>
                    </name>
                    </playingEntity>
                </participantRole>
            </participant>
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>

```

3.22 Drug Vehicle

[participantRole: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24 (open)]

Table 268: Drug Vehicle Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the vehicle (e.g., saline, dextrose) for administering a medication.

Table 269: Drug Vehicle Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
participantRole (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7490	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7495	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10493	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .24
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19137	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19138	412307009
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26502	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
playingEntity	1..1	SHALL		81-7492	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-7493	
name	0..1	MAY		81-7494	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="MANU"** (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7490).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7495) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24"** (CONF:81-10493).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19137).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="412307009"** Drug Vehicle (CONF:81-19138).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:81-26502).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:81-7492).

This playingEntity/code is used to supply a coded term for the drug vehicle.

- a. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-7493).
- b. This playingEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **name** (CONF:81-7494).

- i. This playingEntity/name **MAY** be used for the vehicle name in text, such as Normal Saline (CONF:81-10087).

Figure 142: Drug Vehicle Example

```
<participantRole classCode="MANU">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24"/>
    <code code="412307009" displayName="drug vehicle"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"/>
    <playingEntity classCode="MMAT">
        <code code="324049" displayName="Aerosol"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88"
codeSystemName="RxNorm"/>
        <name>Aerosol</name>
    </playingEntity>
</participantRole>
```

3.23 Encounter Activity (V3)

[encounter: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 270: Encounter Activity (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Encounters Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Encounters Section (entries required) (V3) (required)	Service Delivery Location (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (optional)

This clinical statement describes an interaction between a patient and clinician. Interactions may include in-person encounters, telephone conversations, and email exchanges.

Table 271: Encounter Activity (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
encounter (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8710	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ENC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8711	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8712	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-26353	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .49
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32546	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8713	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8714	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.32 (EncounterTypeCode)
originalText	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8719	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1198-15970	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1198-15971	
translation	0..1	MAY		1198-32323	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8715	
sdtc:dischargeDispositionCode	0..1	MAY		1198-32176	
performer	0..*	MAY		1198-8725	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-8726	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-8727	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8738	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8740	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = LOC
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-14903	Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.32
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8722	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8723	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14899	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-15492	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-15973	Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ENC" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8710).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8711).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8712) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49" (CONF:1198-26353).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32546).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8713).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [EncounterTypeCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8714).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **originalText** (CONF:1198-8719).
 - i. The originalText, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:1198-15970).
 1. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:1198-15971).
 - a. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1198-15972).

The translation may exist to map the code of EncounterTypeCode (2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32) value set to the code of Encounter Planned (2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52) value set.

- b. This code **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32323).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-8715).
7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:dischargeDispositionCode** (CONF:1198-32176). Note: The prefix sdtc: SHALL be bound to the namespace "urn:hl7-org:sdtc". The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the dischargeDispositionCode element

- a. This sdtc:dischargeDispositionCode **SHOULD** contain exactly [0..1] *code*, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.33 NUBC UB-04 FL17-Patient Status (code system 2.16.840.1.113883.6.301.5) *DYNAMIC* or, if access to NUBC is unavailable, from CodeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.12.112 HL7 Discharge Disposition (CONF:1198-32177).
 - b. This sdtc:dischargeDispositionCode **SHOULD** contain exactly [0..1] *codeSystem*, which **SHOULD** be either CodeSystem: NUBC 2.16.840.1.113883.6.301.5 *OR* CodeSystem: HL7 Discharge Disposition 2.16.840.1.113883.12.112 (CONF:1198-32377).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1198-8725).
- a. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-8726).
 - i. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Healthcare Provider Taxonomy urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8727).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-8738) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="LOC"** Location (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8740).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32) (CONF:1198-14903).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8722) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="RSON"** Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8723).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-14899).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-15492) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Encounter Diagnosis (v3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15973).

Table 272: EncounterTypeCode

Value Set: EncounterTypeCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32 (Clinical Focus: Concepts that represent an interaction between a patient and clinician. Interactions may include in-person encounters, telephone conversations, and email exchanges.),(Data Element Scope: Indicator of an encounter),(Inclusion Criteria: CPT codes found in the following CPT sections: 99201-99499 E/M 99500-99600 home health (mainly nonphysician, such as newborn care in home) 99605-99607 medication management 98966-98968 non physician telephone services),(Exclusion Criteria: Only codes as defined in the inclusion criteria) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190517. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
98966	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Telephone assessment and management service provided by a qualified nonphysician health care professional to an established patient, parent, or guardian not originating from a related assessment and management service provided within the previous 7 days nor leading to an assessment and management service or procedure within the next 24 hours or soonest available appointment; 5-10 minutes of medical discussion
98967	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Telephone assessment and management service provided by a qualified nonphysician health care professional to an established patient, parent, or guardian not originating from a related assessment and management service provided within the previous 7 days nor leading to an assessment and management service or procedure within the next 24 hours or soonest available appointment; 11-20 minutes of medical discussion

98968	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Telephone assessment and management service provided by a qualified nonphysician health care professional to an established patient, parent, or guardian not originating from a related assessment and management service provided within the previous 7 days nor leading to an assessment and management service or procedure within the next 24 hours or soonest available appointment; 21-30 minutes of medical discussion
99091	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Collection and interpretation of physiologic data (eg, ECG, blood pressure, glucose monitoring) digitally stored and/or transmitted by the patient and/or caregiver to the physician or other qualified health care professional, qualified by education, training, licensure/regulation (when applicable) requiring a minimum of 30 minutes of time, each 30 days
99201	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of a new patient, which requires these 3 key components: A problem focused history; A problem focused examination; Straightforward medical decision making. Counseling and/or coordination of care with other physicians, other qualified health care professionals, or agencies are provided consistent with the nature of the problem(s) and the patient's and/or

			family's needs. Usually, the presenting problem(s) are self limited or minor. Typically, 10 minutes are spent face-to-face with the patient and/or family.
99202	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of a new patient, which requires these 3 key components: An expanded problem focused history; An expanded problem focused examination; Straightforward medical decision making. Counseling and/or coordination of care with other physicians, other qualified health care professionals, or agencies are provided consistent with the nature of the problem(s) and the patient's and/or family's needs. Usually, the presenting problem(s) are of low to moderate severity. Typically, 20 minutes are spent face-to-face with the patient and/or family.
99203	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of a new patient, which requires these 3 key components: A detailed history; A detailed examination; Medical decision making of low complexity. Counseling and/or coordination of care with other physicians, other qualified health care professionals, or agencies are provided consistent with the nature of the problem(s) and the patient's and/or family's needs. Usually, the presenting

			problem(s) are of moderate severity. Typically, 30 minutes are spent face-to-face with the patient and/or family.
99204	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of a new patient, which requires these 3 key components: A comprehensive history; A comprehensive examination; Medical decision making of moderate complexity. Counseling and/or coordination of care with other physicians, other qualified health care professionals, or agencies are provided consistent with the nature of the problem(s) and the patient's and/or family's needs. Usually, the presenting problem(s) are of moderate to high severity. Typically, 45 minutes are spent face-to-face with the patient and/or family.
99205	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of a new patient, which requires these 3 key components: A comprehensive history; A comprehensive examination; Medical decision making of high complexity. Counseling and/or coordination of care with other physicians, other qualified health care professionals, or agencies are provided consistent with the nature of the problem(s) and the patient's and/or family's needs. Usually, the presenting

			problem(s) are of moderate to high severity. Typically, 60 minutes are spent face-to-face with the patient and/or family.
99211	CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12	Office or other outpatient visit for the evaluation and management of an established patient, that may not require the presence of a physician or other qualified health care professional. Usually, the presenting problem(s) are minimal. Typically, 5 minutes are spent performing or supervising these services.
...			

Figure 143: Encounter Activity (V3) Example

```
<encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4de8" />
    <code code="99213" displayName="Office outpatient visit 15 minutes"
codeSystemName="CPT-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.12">
        <originalText>
            <reference value="#Encounter1" />
        </originalText>
        <translation code="AMB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" displayName="Ambulatory"
codeSystemName="HL7 ActEncounterCode" />
    </code>
    <effectiveTime value="201209271300+0500" />
    <performer>
        <assignedEntity>
            .
            .
            .
        </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
    <participant typeCode="LOC">
        <participantRole classCode="SDLOC">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32" />
            .
            .
            .
        </participantRole>
    </participant>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09" />
            .
            .
            .
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</encounter>
```

3.24 Encounter Diagnosis (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 273: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (required)

This template wraps relevant problems or diagnoses at the close of a visit or that need to be followed after the visit. If the encounter is associated with a Hospital Discharge, the Hospital Discharge Diagnosis must be used. This entry requires at least one Problem Observation entry.

Table 274: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14889	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14890	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14895	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14896	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32542	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19182	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19183	29308-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32160	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-14892	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14893	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14898	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14889).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14890).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-14895) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80"** (CONF:1198-14896).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32542).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-19182).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="29308-4"** Diagnosis (CONF:1198-19183).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32160).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-14892) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14893).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-14898).

Figure 144: Encounter Diagnosis (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="29308-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayNames=" DIAGNOSIS" />
  <statusCode code="active" />
  <effectiveTime>
    <low value="20903003" />
  </effectiveTime>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <!-- Problem Observation -->
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.25 Entry Reference

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122 (open)]

Table 275: Entry Reference Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Goal Observation (optional) Outcome Observation (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (required) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	

This template represents the act of referencing another entry in the same CDA document instance. Its purpose is to remove the need to repeat the complete XML representation of the referred entry when relating one entry to another. This template can be used to reference many types of Act class derivations, such as encounters, observations, procedures etc., as it is often necessary when authoring CDA documents to repeatedly reference other Acts of these types. For example, in a Care Plan it is necessary to repeatedly relate Health Concerns, Goals, Interventions and Outcomes.

The id is required and must be the same id as the entry/id it is referencing. The id cannot be a null value. Act/Code is set to nullFlavor="NP" (Not Present). This means the value is not present in the message (in act/Code).

Table 276: Entry Reference Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31485	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31486	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31487	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31488	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .122
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31489	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31490	
@nullFlavor	1..1	SHALL		1098-31491	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 008 (HL7NullFlavor) = NP
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31498	
@code	0..1	MAY		1098-31499	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31485).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31486).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-31487) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" (CONF:1098-31488).

The ID must equal another entry/id in the same document instance. Application Software must be responsible for resolving the identifier back to its original object and then rendering the information in the correct place in the containing section's narrative text. The ID cannot have Null value (e.g., nullFlavor is not allowed).

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31489).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31490).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@nullFlavor**="NP" Not Present (CodeSystem: HL7NullFlavor urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008) (CONF:1098-31491).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31498).
 - a. This statusCode **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@code**="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31499).

Figure 145: Entry Reference Example

```

<!--
*****
Health Concern section
*****
-->
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Health Concern Act of a pneumonia diagnosis -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132" />
    <id root="4eab0e52-dd7d-4285-99eb-72d32ddb195c" />
    <code code="75310-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Health Concern" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130616" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Problem Observation (V2) -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <id root="8dfacd73-1682-4cc4-9351-e54cce83612" />
            <code code="29308-4"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                codeSystemName="LOINC"
                displayName="Diagnosis"/>
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime>
                <!-- Date of diagnosis -->
                <low value="20130616" />
            </effectiveTime>
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="233604007"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED"
                displayName="Pneumonia" />
        <!-- This Entry Reference refers to a goal, intervention, actual
            outcome, or some other entry present in the Care Plan
            that the Health Concern is related to-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
            <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" />
                <!-- This ID equals the ID of the goal of a pulse
                    ox greater than 92% -->
                <id root="3700b3b0-fbed-11e2-b778-0800200c9a66" />
                <!-- The code is nulled to "NP" Not Present -->
                <code nullFlavor="NP" />
                <statusCode code="completed" />
            </act>
        </entryRelationship>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
...
<!--
*****
Expected Outcomes/Goals section
*****
-->
...
<entry>
    <!-- This is an observation about the expected outcome of a pulse ox reading
        of 92 or greater. The Id is the same as the ID as the ID of the

```

```

    pneumonia problem above -->
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="GOL">
  <id root="3700b3b0-fbed-11e2-b778-0800200c9a66" />
  <code code="59408-5"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Oxygen saturation in Arterial blood by Pulse oximetry"/>
  <statusCode code="active" />
  <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
    <low value="92" unit="%" />
  </value>
  <!-- There could be another Entry Reference here referring to the
      related health concern, actual outcome, or intervention -->
  ...
</observation>
</entry>
...

```

Figure 146: Diagnosis Reference Example

```

<!-- Show how an encounter can include a discharge diagnosis which references an
     item on the problem list using the Entry Reference template -->
<!-- Problem Section -->
<observation>
  <id root="1234567" />
  <code code="123" codeSystem="1.2.3" displayName="asthma" />
</observation>
<!-- Encounter Section -->
<encounter>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act>
      <code code="145" codeSystem="4.5.6" displayName="discharge diagnosis" />
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33" extension="2014-06-09" />
      <!-- this is for illustrative purposes only. In this particular
          case, the template requires a nested Problem
          Observation (V2). In the Health Concern template,
          we'd need a constraint that says it's allowable to
          include the Entry Reference template. -->
      <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="XXX">
          <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" />
          <id root="1234567" />
          <code nullFlavor="NP" />
        </act>
      </entryRelationship>
    </act>
  </entryRelationship>
</encounter>

```

3.26 Estimated Date of Delivery

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1 (closed)]

Table 277: Estimated Date of Delivery Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Pregnancy Observation (optional)	

This clinical statement represents the anticipated date when a woman will give birth.

Table 278: Estimated Date of Delivery Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-444	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-445	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-16762	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-16763	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3 .1
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19139	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19140	11778-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26503	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-448	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19096	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	TS	81-450	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-444).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-445).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-16762) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1"** (CONF:81-16763).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19139).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="11778-8"** Estimated date of delivery (CONF:81-19140).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-26503).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-448).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19096).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="TS" (CONF:81-450).

Figure 147: Estimated Date of Delivery Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1"/>
  <code code="11778-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    displayName="Estimated date of delivery"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="TS" value="20110919" />
</observation>
```

3.27 External Document Reference

[externalDocument: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 279: External Document Reference Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Goal Observation (optional) Outcome Observation (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	

Where it is necessary to reference an external clinical document, the External Document Reference template can be used to reference this external document. However, if the containing document is appending to or replacing another document in the same set, that relationship is set in the header, using ClinicalDocument/relatedDocument.

Table 280: External Document Reference Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
externalDocument (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = DOCCLIN
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31932	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-32748	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32750	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .115
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32749	2014-06-09
id	1..1	SHALL		1098-32751	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31933	
setId	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32752	
versionNumber	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32753	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="DOCCLIN" Clinical Document (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31931).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31932).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-32748) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115" (CONF:1098-32750).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32749).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1098-32751).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31933).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **setId** (CONF:1098-32752).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **versionNumber** (CONF:1098-32753).

Figure 148: External Document Reference Example

```

<externalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115"
        extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="6f1bd58b-c58f-40b7-b314-caf1294ed98b" />
    <code codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        code="57133-1"
        displayName="Referral Note" />
    <setId extension="sTT988" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.99999.19" />
    <versionNumber value="1" />
</externalDocument>

```

3.28 Family History Death Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47 (open)]

Table 281: Family History Death Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Family History Observation (V3) (optional)	

This clinical statement records whether the family member is deceased.

Table 282: Family History Death Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8621	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8622	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8623	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10495	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .47
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19141	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19142	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26504	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8625	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19097	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	81-8626	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-26470	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 419099009

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8621).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8622).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:81-8623) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47" (CONF:81-10495).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:81-19141).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CONF:81-19142).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:81-26504).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:81-8625).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19097).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="CD" (CONF:81-8626).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="419099009" Dead (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-26470).

Figure 149: Family History Death Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47"/>
  <id root="6898fae0-5c8a-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66"/>
  <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="CD"
    code="419099009"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName="Dead"/>
</observation>
```

3.29 Family History Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 283: Family History Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Family History Organizer (V3) (required)	Age Observation (optional) Family History Death Observation (optional)

Family History Observations related to a particular family member are contained within a Family History Organizer. The effectiveTime in the Family History Observation is the biologically or clinically relevant time of the observation. The biologically or clinically relevant time is the time at which the observation holds (is effective) for the family member (the subject of the observation).

Table 284: Family History Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8586	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8587	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8599	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10496	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .46
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32605	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8592	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32427	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.2 (Problem Type (SNOMEDCT))
translation	1..*	SHALL		1198-32847	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1099.28 (Problem Type (LOINC))
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8590	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19098	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8593	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-8591	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8675	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8676	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-8677	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15526	Age Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8678	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8679	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = CAUS
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15527	Family History Death Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8586).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8587).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8599) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46"** (CONF:1198-10496).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32605).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8592).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Problem Type \(SNOMEDCT\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32427).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **translation**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Problem Type \(LOINC\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.28 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32847).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8590).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19098).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-8593).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Problem](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8591).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8675) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SUBJ"** Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8676).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@inversionInd="true"** True (CONF:1198-8677).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Age Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31) (CONF:1198-15526).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8678) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="CAUS"** Causal or Contributory (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8679).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Death Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47) (CONF:1198-15527).

Table 285: Problem Type (SNOMEDCT)

Value Set: Problem Type (SNOMEDCT) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2

(Clinical Focus: A problem observation categorization of the condition as represented in the SNOMED CT code system.),(Data Element Scope: Problem Observation),(Inclusion Criteria: High level condition types as selected for use.),(Exclusion Criteria: Only the codes selected.)

This value set was imported on 6/20/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
248536006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Finding of functional performance and activity (finding)
282291009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Diagnosis interpretation (observable entity)
373930000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Cognitive function finding (finding)
404684003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Clinical finding (finding)
409586006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Complaint (finding)
418799008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Finding reported by subject or history provider (finding)
55607006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Problem (finding)
64572001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Disease (disorder)

Table 286: Problem Type (LOINC)

Value Set: Problem Type (LOINC) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.28 (Clinical Focus: A problem observation categorization of the condition as represented in the LOINC code system.),(Data Element Scope: Problem observation),(Inclusion Criteria: High level condition types as selected for use.),(Exclusion Criteria: Only those selected) This value set was imported on 6/20/2019 with a version of 20190416. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.28/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
29308-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diagnosis
75275-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cognitive function [Interpretation]
75312-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Clinical finding Family member
75313-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Complaint Family member
75314-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diagnosis Family member
75315-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Condition Family member
75316-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Functional performance Family member
75317-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Symptom Family member
75318-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Problem Family member
75319-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Mental function Family member
...			

Figure 150: Family History Observation (V3) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <!-- Family History Observation template -->
    <id root="d42ebf70-5c89-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="75323-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Condition">
<translation code="64572001" displayName="Condition"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"></translation>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="1967" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="22298006" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayName="Myocardial infarction" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="CAUS">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.47" />
            ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31" />
                ....
                </observation>
            </entryRelationship>
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>
```

3.30 Family History Organizer (V3)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 287: Family History Organizer (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Family History Observation (V3) (required)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Family History Section (V3) (optional)	

The Family History Organizer associates a set of observations with a family member. For example, the Family History Organizer can group a set of observations about the patient's father.

Table 288: Family History Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8600	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8601	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8604	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10497	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .45
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32606	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-32485	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8602	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19099	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
subject	1..1	SHALL		1198-8609	
relatedSubject	1..1	SHALL		1198-15244	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-15245	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 1 (HL7EntityClass) = PRS
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15246	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.19579 (Family Member Value)
subject	0..1	SHOULD		1198-15248	
administrativeGenderCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-15974	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.1 (Administrative Gender (HL7 V3))
birthTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-15976	
component	1..*	SHALL		1198-32428	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32429	Family History Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.46:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="CLUSTER" Cluster (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8600).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8601).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-8604) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45" (CONF:1198-10497).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32606).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32485).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8602).
- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19099).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **subject** (CONF:1198-8609).
- a. This subject **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **relatedSubject** (CONF:1198-15244).
 - i. This relatedSubject **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="PRS" Person (CodeSystem: HL7EntityClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-15245).
 - ii. This relatedSubject **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Family Member Value](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19579 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-15246).
 - iii. This relatedSubject **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **subject** (CONF:1198-15248).
 - 1. The subject, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **administrativeGenderCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Administrative Gender \(HL7 v3\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-15974).
 - 2. The subject, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **birthTime** (CONF:1198-15976).
 - 3. The subject **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] sdtc:id. The prefix sdtc: **SHALL** be bound to the namespace "urn:hl7-org:sdtc". The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the id element (CONF:1198-15249).
 - 4. The subject **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:deceasedInd**. The prefix sdtc: **SHALL** be bound to the namespace "urn:hl7-org:sdtc". The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the deceasedInd element (CONF:1198-15981).
 - 5. The subject **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sdtc:deceasedTime**. The prefix sdtc: **SHALL** be bound to the namespace "urn:hl7-org:sdtc". The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the deceasedTime element (CONF:1198-15982).
 - 6. The age of a relative at the time of a family history observation **SHOULD** be inferred by comparing RelatedSubject/subject/birthTime with Observation/effectiveTime (CONF:1198-15983).
7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1198-32428).
- a. Such components **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32429).

Table 289: Family Member Value

Value Set: Family Member Value urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19579
(Clinical Focus: A characterization of the familial relationship between two people),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19579/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
AUNT	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	aunt
BRO	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	brother
BROINLAW	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	brother-in-law
CHILD	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	child
CHLDADOPT	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adopted child
CHLDFOST	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	foster child
CHLDINLAW	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	child-in-law
COUSN	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	cousin
DAU	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	natural daughter
DAUADOPT	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	adopted daughter
...			

Figure 151: Family History Organizer (V3) Example

```

<organizer moodCode="EVN" classCode="CLUSTER">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <subject>
        <relatedSubject classCode="PRS">
            <code code="FTH" displayName="Father" codeSystemName="HL7 FamilyMember"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111">
                <translation code="9947008" displayName="Natural father"
codeSystemName="SNOMED" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
            </code>
            <subject>
                <sdtc:id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.99999.2" extension="99999999" />
                <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.99999.2" extension="1234" />
                <administrativeGenderCode code="M" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.1" />
                <birthTime value="1910" />
                <!-- Example use of sdtc extensions :-->
                <!-- <sdtc:deceasedInd value="true"/><sdtc:deceasedTime value="1967" />
                -->
            </subject>
        </relatedSubject>
    </subject>
    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.46" extension="2015-08-01" />
            . . .
        </observation>
    </component>
</organizer>

```

3.31 Functional Status Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 290: Functional Status Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)	Caregiver Characteristics (optional)
Functional Status Organizer (V2) (required)	Assessment Scale Observation (optional)
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents the patient's physical function (e.g., mobility status, instrumental activities of daily living, self-care status) and problems that limit function (dyspnea, dysphagia). The template may include assessment scale observations, identify supporting caregivers, and provide information about non-medicinal supplies. This template is used to represent physical or developmental function of all patient populations.

Table 291: Functional Status Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-13905	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-13906	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-13889	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-13890	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .67
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32568	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-13907	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-13908	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31522	54522-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31523	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-13929	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19101	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-13930	
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-13932	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-13936	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-13892	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14596	REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-14218	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-13895	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14597	REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-	Caregiver Characteristics (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				13897	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-14465	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14598	COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14466	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)
referenceRange	0..*	MAY		1098-13937	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 STATIC](#)) (CONF:1098-13905).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 STATIC](#)) (CONF:1098-13906).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-13889) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67"** (CONF:1098-13890).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32568).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-13907).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-13908).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="54522-8"** Functional status (CONF:1098-31522).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1](#)) (CONF:1098-31523).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-13929).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 STATIC](#)) (CONF:1098-19101).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-13930).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-13932).
 - a. If xsi:type="CD", **SHOULD** contain a code from SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: [2.16.840.1.113883.6.96](#)) (CONF:1098-14234).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: [urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119](#)) (CONF:1098-13936).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-13892) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="REFR"** refers to (CONF:1098-14596).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2)** (identifier: [urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09](#)) (CONF:1098-14218).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-13895) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" refers to (CONF:1098-14597).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Caregiver Characteristics](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72) (CONF:1098-13897).
12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-14465) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" has component (CONF:1098-14598).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1098-14466).

referenceRange could be used to represent normal or expected capability for the function being evaluated.

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **referenceRange** (CONF:1098-13937).

Figure 152: Functional Status Observation (V2) Example

```
<entry>
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Functional Status Observation V2-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="ce7cfb78-bd16-467e-8bcf-859a3034108e" />
    <code code="54522-8" displayName="Functional status"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
    <text>
      <reference value="#FUNC1" />
    </text>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="200130311" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="129035000" displayName="independent with dressing"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
  </observation>
</entry>
```

3.32 Functional Status Organizer (V2)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 292: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (required) Functional Status Observation (V2) (required) Author Participation (optional)

This template groups related functional status observations into categories (e.g., mobility, self-care).

Table 293: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14355	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14357	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-14361	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-14362	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .66
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32569	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-14363	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14364	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14358	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31434	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31585	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
component	1..*	SHALL		1098-14359	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14368	Functional Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)
component	1..*	SHALL		1098-31432	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31433	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.128)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="CLUSTER" Cluster (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-14355).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 STATIC) (CONF:1098-14357).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-14361) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66" (CONF:1098-14362).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32569).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [..*] id (CONF:1098-14363).

The code selected should indicate the category that groups the contained functional status evaluation observations (e.g., mobility, self-care, communication).

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14364).
 - a. **SHOULD** be selected from ICF (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.254) OR LOINC (2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31417).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-14358).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31434).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31585).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1098-14359) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Functional Status Observation (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-14368).
9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1098-31432) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL)** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128) (CONF:1098-31433).

Figure 153: Functional Status Organizer (V2) Example

```
<organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Functional Status Organizer V2-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.66" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="a7bc1062-8649-42a0-833d-eed65bd017c9" />
    <code code="d5" displayName="Self-Care" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.254"
codeSystemName="ICF" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <author>
        <time value="200130311" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="KP00017" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>1003 Health Care
                    Drive</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Ann Arbor</city>
                <state>MI</state>
                <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
            </addr>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:(555)555-1003" />
            <assignedPerson>
                <name>
                    <given>Assigned</given>
                    <family>Amanda</family>
                </name>
            </assignedPerson>
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>

    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- Functional Status Observation V2-->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67" extension="2014-06-09" />
            ...
        </observation>
    </component>
    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- Functional Status Observation V2-->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67" extension="2014-06-09" />
            ...
        </observation>
    </component>
    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL)-->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128" />
            ...
        </observation>
    </component>
</organizer>
```

3.33 Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.68:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 294: Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)	

A functional status problem observation is a clinical statement that represents a patient's functional performance and ability.

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED IN C-CDA R2 AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for deprecation: Functional Status Problem Observation has been merged, without loss of expressivity, into Functional Status Observation (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09).

Table 295: Functional Status Problem Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.68:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14282	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14283	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
@negationInd	0..1	MAY		1098-14307	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-14312	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-14313	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .68
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32601	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-14284	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14314	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14315	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 248536006
text	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14304	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1098-15552	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-15553	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14286	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19100	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14287	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-26456	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-26457	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-14291	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-14292	
methodCode	0..1	MAY		1098-14316	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 STATIC) (CONF:1098-14282).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14283).

Use negationInd="true" to indicate that the problem was not observed.

3. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @negationInd (CONF:1098-14307).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-14312) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.68" (CONF:1098-14313).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32601).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-14284).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-14314).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code="248536006" finding of functional performance and activity (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14315).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] text (CONF:1098-14304).
 - a. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] reference (CONF:1098-15552).
 - i. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @value (CONF:1098-15553).
 1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-15554).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-14286).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19100).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-14287).

The value of effectiveTime/low represents onset date.

- a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] low (CONF:1098-26456).
- If the problem is resolved, record the resolution date in effectiveTime/high. If the problem is known to be resolved but the resolution date is not known, use @nullFlavor="UNK". If the problem is not resolved, do not include the high element.
- b. The effectiveTime, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] high (CONF:1098-26457).
10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Problem urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-14291).
 - a. This value **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @nullFlavor (CONF:1098-14292).
 - i. If the diagnosis is unknown or the SNOMED code is unknown, @nullFlavor **SHOULD** be "UNK". If the diagnosis is known but the code cannot be found in the Value Set, @nullFlavor **SHOULD** be "OTH" and the known diagnosis code **SHOULD** be placed in the translation element (CONF:1098-14293).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] methodCode (CONF:1098-14316).

3.34 Goal Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121 (open)]

Table 296: Goal Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Goals Section (required) Goal Observation (optional)	Goal Observation (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) External Document Reference (optional)

This template represents a patient health goal. A Goal Observation template may have related components that are acts, encounters, observations, procedures, substance administrations, or supplies.

A goal may be a patient or provider goal. If the author is set to the recordTarget (patient), this is a patient goal. If the author is set to a provider, this is a provider goal. If both patient and provider are set as authors, this is a negotiated goal.

A goal usually has a related health concern and/or risk.

A goal may have components consisting of other goals (milestones). These milestones are related to the overall goal through entryRelationships.

Table 297: Goal Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30418	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30419	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = GOL
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8583	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10512	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .121
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32332	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30784	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32333	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32334	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32335	
value	0..1	MAY		1098-32743	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-30995	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-30701	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30702	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-30703	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-30704	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30705	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32879	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30785	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30786	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-30787	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31448	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31449	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32880	Goal Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31559	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31560	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31588	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
reference	0..*	MAY		1098-32754	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32755	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1098-32756	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-30418).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "GOL" Goal (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-30419).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8583) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121" (CONF:1098-10512).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32332).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from CodeSystem LOINC (urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-30784).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-32333).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "active" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32334).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32335).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** (CONF:1098-32743).

If the author is the recordTarget (patient), this is a patient goal. If the author is a provider, this is a provider goal. If both patient and provider are authors, this is a negotiated goal. If no author is present, it is assumed the document or section author(s) is the author of this goal.

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-30995).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between a Goal Observation and a Health Concern Act (Goal Observation REFERS TO Health Concern Act). As Health Concern Act is already defined in Health Concerns Section, rather than clone the whole Health Concern Act template, an Entry Reference may be used in entryRelationship to refer the template.

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] entryRelationship (CONF:1098-30701) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-30702).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1098-30703).

The following entryRelationship represents a planned component of the goal such as Planned Encounter (V2), Planned Observation (V2), Planned Procedure (V2), Planned Medication Activity (V2), Planned Supply (V2), Planned Act (V2) or Planned Immunization Activity. Because these entries are already described in the Interventions Section of the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entries, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference the entries.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] entryRelationship (CONF:1098-30704) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-30705).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1098-32879).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that the patient or a provider puts on the goal.

12. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] entryRelationship (CONF:1098-30785) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-30786).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-30787).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Goal Observations where the target is a component of the source (Goal Observation HAS COMPONENT Goal Observation). The component goal (target) is a Milestone.

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] entryRelationship (CONF:1098-31448) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31449).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Goal Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121) (CONF:1098-32880).

Where a Goal Observation needs to reference another entry already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entry, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31559) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31560).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1098-31588).

Where it is necessary to reference an external clinical document such a Referral document, Discharge Summary document etc., the External Document Reference template can be used to reference this document. However, if this Care Plan document is replacing or appending another Care Plan document in the same set, that relationship is set in the header, using ClinicalDocument/relatedDocument.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1098-32754).

- a. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32755).
- b. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32756).

Figure 154: Goal Observation Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="GOL">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.121" />
    <id root="3700b3b0-fbed-11e2-b778-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="59408-5"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="Oxygen saturation in Arterial blood by Pulse oximetry" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130902" />
    <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
        <low value="92" unit="%" />
    </value>
    <!--
        If the author is set to the recordTarget (patient), this is a patient goal.
        If the author is set to a provider, this is a provider goal.
        If both patient and provider are set as authors, this is a negotiated goal.
    -->
    <!-- Provider Author -->
    <author>
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
        ...
    </author>
    <!-- Patient Author -->
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
        ...
    </author>
    <!-- This entryRelationship represents the relationship "Goal REFERS TO Health Concern" --
->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Entry Reference Concern Act -->
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" />
            <!-- This id points to an already defined Health Concern in the Health Concerns
Section -->
            <id root="4eab0e52-dd7d-4285-99eb-72d32ddb195c" />
            ...
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Priority Preference -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Priority Preference - this is the preference that the patient
            (specified by the Author Participation template)
            places on the Goal -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
            ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Priority Preference - this is the preference that the provider
        (specified by the Author Participation template)
        places on the Goal -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Priority Preference -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
            ...
    
```

```

</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</observation>

```

3.35 Handoff Communication Participants

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141 (open)]

Table 298: Handoff Communication Participants Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Interventions Section (V3) (optional)	Author Participation (required)

This template represents the sender (author) and receivers (participants) of a handoff communication in a plan of treatment. It does not convey details about the communication. The "handoff" process involves senders, those transmitting the patient's information and releasing the care of that patient to the next clinician, and receivers, those who accept the patient information and care of that patient.

Table 299: Handoff Communication Participants Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30832	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30833	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30834	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30835	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .141
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30836	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30837	432138007
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30838	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31668	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31669	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31670	
author	1..*	SHALL		1098-31672	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	1..*	SHALL		1098-31673	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31674	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = IRCP
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-31675	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32422	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31676	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
addr	1..*	SHALL		1098-32392	
playingEntity	0..1	MAY		1098-32393	
name	1..*	SHALL		1098-32394	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-30832).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-30833).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30834) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141" (CONF:1098-30835).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-30836).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "432138007" handoff communication (procedure) (CONF:1098-30837).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-30838).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31668).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31669).

The effective time is the time when the handoff process took place between the sender and receiver of the patient information. This could be the time the information was transmitted, released, or verbally communicated to the next clinician.

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31670).

The Author Participant contains the sender's contact information and is a resource for the Information Recipient for any follow-up questions.

7. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31672).

Documentation of the Information Recipient's name and address verifies that the information was exchanged.

8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-31673) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "IRCP" Information Recipient (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110) (CONF:1098-31674).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1098-31675).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32422).
 - ii. This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31676).
 - iii. This participantRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-32392).
 - iv. This participantRole **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1098-32393).
 1. The playingEntity, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1098-32394).

Figure 155: Handoff Communication Example

```
<entry>
  <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141" />
    <code code="432138007" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT" displayName="handoff communication (procedure)" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130712" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
      <time value="20130730" />
      <assignedAuthor>
        <id root="d839038b-7171-4165-a760-467925b43857" />
        ...
      </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <participant typeCode="IRCP">
      <participantRole>
        <code code="163W00000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
codeSystemName="NUCC Health Care Provider Taxonomy" displayName="Registered Nurse" />
        ...
      </participantRole>
    </participant>
  </act>
</entry>
```

3.36 Health Concern Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 300: Health Concern Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concerns Section (V2) (required)	Pregnancy Observation (optional) Caregiver Characteristics (optional) Assessment Scale Observation (optional) Characteristics of Home Environment (optional) Cultural and Religious Observation (optional) Sensory Status (optional) Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Nutritional Status Observation (optional) Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Nutrition Assessment (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (optional) Vital Sign Observation (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Tobacco Use (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) External Document Reference (optional) Result Observation (V3) (optional) Mental Status Observation (V3) (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (optional) Social History Observation (V3) (optional) Result Organizer (V3) (optional) Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Family History Organizer (V3) (optional) Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (optional) Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)

This template represents a health concern.

It is a wrapper for a single health concern which may be derived from a variety of sources within an EHR (such as Problem List, Family History, Social History, Social Worker Note, etc.).

A Health Concern Act is used to track non-optimal physical or psychological situations drawing the patient to the healthcare system. These may be from the perspective of the care team or from the perspective of the patient.

When the underlying condition is of concern (i.e., as long as the condition, whether active or resolved, is of ongoing concern and interest), the statusCode is “active”. Only when the underlying condition is

no longer of concern is the statusCode set to “completed”. The effectiveTime reflects the time that the underlying condition was felt to be a concern; it may or may not correspond to the effectiveTime of the condition (e.g., even five years later, a prior heart attack may remain a concern).

Health concerns require intervention(s) to increase the likelihood of achieving the goals of care for the patient and they specify the condition oriented reasons for creating the plan.

Table 301: Health Concern Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30750	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30751	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-30752	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-30753	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .132
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32861	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30754	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32310	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32311	75310-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32312	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30758	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32313	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.19 (ProblemAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	0..1	MAY		1198-30759	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31546	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-30761	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30762	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31001	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31007	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31008	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Allergy - Intolerance

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				31186	Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31157	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31158	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32106	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31160	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31161	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32107	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31190	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31191	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31192	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31232	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31264	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31265	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31234	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31268	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31273	Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31235	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				31269	002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31275	Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31236	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31270	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31277	Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31237	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31279	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-31280	Family History Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31238	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31282	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31283	Functional Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31241	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31291	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31292	Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31244	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31300	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31301	Nutrition Assessment (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31246	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31306	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31307	Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31247	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31309	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31310	Pregnancy Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31248	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31312	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31313	Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31250	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31318	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31319	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31251	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31321	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31322	Result Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31252	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31324	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31325	Sensory Status (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31253	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31327	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31328	Social History Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31254	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32955	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31331	Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31255	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31333	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31334	Tobacco Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31256	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31336	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31337	Vital Sign Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31257	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31339	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31340	Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31365	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31366	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31367	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31368	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31369	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31370	Caregiver Characteristics (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31371	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31372	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31373	Cultural and Religious Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31374	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31375	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31376	Characteristics of Home Environment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31377	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31378	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31379	Nutritional Status Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31380	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31381	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-31382	Result Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31442	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31443	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31444	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31544	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31547	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31548	Problem Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31549	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31550	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31551	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122
reference	0..*	MAY		1198-32757	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32758	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-32759	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-30750).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1198-30751).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-30752) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132" (CONF:1198-30753).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32861).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30754).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-32310).
- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75310-3" Health Concern (CONF:1198-32311).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32312).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-30758).
- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProblemAct statusCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19 STATIC (CONF:1198-32313).
7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-30759).
- A health concern may be a patient or provider concern. If the author is set to the recordTarget (patient), this is a patient concern. If the author is set to a provider, this is a provider concern. If both patient and provider are set as authors, this is a concern of both the patient and the provider.
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31546).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-30761) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-30762).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31001).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31007) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31008).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergy - Intolerance Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31186).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Health Concern Acts where there is a general relationship between the source and the target (Health Concern REFERS TO Health Concern). For example, a patient has 2 health concerns identified in a CARE Plan: Failure to Thrive and Poor Feeding, while it could be that one may have caused the other, at the time of care planning and documentation it is not necessary, nor desirable to have to assert what caused what. The Entry Reference template is used here because the target Health Concern Act will be defined elsewhere in the Health Concerns Section and thus a reference to that template is all that is required.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31157) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31158).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32106).
 - i. The Entry Reference template **SHALL** contain an id that references a Health Concern Act (CONF:1198-32860).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Health Concern Acts where the target is a component of the source (Health Concern HAS COMPONENT Health Concern). For example, a patient has an Impaired Mobility Health Concern. There may then be the need to document several component health concerns, such as "Unable to Transfer Bed to Chair", "Unable to Rise from Commode", "Short of Breath Walking with Walker". The Entry Reference template is used here because the target Health Concern Act will be defined elsewhere in the Health Concerns Section and thus a reference to that template is all that is required.

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31160) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31161).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32107).
 - i. The Entry Reference template **SHALL** contain an id that references a Health Concern Act (CONF:1198-32745).
13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31190) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31191).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1198-31192).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31232) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31264).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Self-Care Activities \(ADL and IADL\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128) (CONF:1198-31265).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31234) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31268).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31273).
16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31235) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31269).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Smoking Status - Meaningful Use \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31275).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31236) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31270).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31277).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31237) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers To (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31279).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Organizer \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31280).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31238) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31282).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31283).
20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31241) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31291).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Admission Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31292).
21. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31244) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31300).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Assessment](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138) (CONF:1198-31301).
22. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31246) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31306).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Postprocedure Diagnosis \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31307).
23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31247) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31309).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Pregnancy Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8) (CONF:1198-31310).
24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31248) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31312).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Preoperative Diagnosis \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31313).
25. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31250) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31318).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31319).
26. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31251) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31321).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Result Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31322).
27. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31252) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31324).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Sensory Status](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127) (CONF:1198-31325).
28. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31253) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31327).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31328).
29. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31254) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32955).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31331).
30. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31255) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31333).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Tobacco Use \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31334).
31. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31256) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31336).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Sign Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31337).
32. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31257) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31339).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Longitudinal Care Wound Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31340).
- The following entryRelationship represents the relationship Health Concern HAS SUPPORT Observation.
33. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31365) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31366).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31367).
34. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31368) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31369).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Caregiver Characteristics](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72) (CONF:1198-31370).
35. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31371) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31372).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Cultural and Religious Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111) (CONF:1198-31373).
36. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31374) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31375).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Characteristics of Home Environment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109) (CONF:1198-31376).
37. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31377) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31378).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Nutritional Status Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124) (CONF:1198-31379).
38. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31380) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31381).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Result Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31382).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that the patient or a provider puts on the health concern.

39. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31442) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31443).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1198-31444).
40. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31544) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31547).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Problem Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31548).

Where a Health Concern needs to reference another entry already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entry, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

41. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31549) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31550).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-31551).

Where it is necessary to reference an external clinical document such a Referral document, Discharge Summary document etc., the External Document Reference template can be used to reference this document. However, if this Care Plan document is replacing or appending another Care Plan document in the same set, that relationship is set in the header, using ClinicalDocument/relatedDocument.

42. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1198-32757).
- The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32758).
 - The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32759).

Figure 156: Health Concern Act Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.132" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="4eab0e52-dd7d-4285-99eb-72d32ddb195c" />
    <code code="75310-3"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="Health Concern" />
    <!-- This Health Concern has a statusCode of active because it is an active concern -->
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <!-- The effective time is the date that the Health Concern started being followed -
        this does not necessarily correlate to the onset date of the contained health issues-->
    <effectiveTime value="20130616" />
    <!-- Health Concern: Current every day smoker-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Tobacco Use (V2) -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85" extension="2014-06-09" />
        ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Health Concern Problem: Respiratory insufficiency -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Problem Observation (V2) -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Health Concern Diagnosis: Pneumonia -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Problem Observation (V2) -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--
        This is an entry relationship of the SPRT (support) type which shows
        that the productive cough supports the Health Concern (Problem: Respiratory
        Insufficiency and Diagnosis: Pneumonia
        This entryRelationship represents the relationship:
        Health Concern HAS SUPPORT Observation
    -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SPRT">
        <!-- Problem Observation (V2) -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Priority Preference -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">

```

```

<!-- Priority Preference - this is the preference that the patient
(specified by the Author Participation template)
places on the Health Concern -->
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
    ...
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- Priority Preference - this is the preference that the provider
(specified by the Author Participation template)
places on the Health Concern -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <!-- Priority Preference -->
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
    ...
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.37 Health Status Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09
 (open)]

Table 302: Health Status Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concerns Section (V2) (optional) Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (optional)	

This template represents information about the overall health status of the patient. To represent the impact of a specific problem or concern related to the patient's expected health outcome use the Prognosis Observation template 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113.

Table 303: Health Status Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-9057	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-9072	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-16756	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-16757	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .5
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32558	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32486	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19143	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19144	11323-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32161	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-9074	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19103	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-9075	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.12 (HealthStatus)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-9057).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-9072).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-16756) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5"** (CONF:1098-16757).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32558).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32486).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-19143).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="11323-3"** Health status (CONF:1098-19144).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32161).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-9074).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19103).
- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **HealthStatus** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.12 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-9075).

Table 304: HealthStatus

Value Set: HealthStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.12 (Clinical Focus: The general health status of the patient),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190517.			
Value Set Source:	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.12/expansion		
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
135815002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	General health good (finding)
135818000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	General health poor (finding)
161045001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Disability - severe (finding)
161901003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Chronic sick (finding)
162467007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Free of symptoms (situation)
21134002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Disability (finding)
271593001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Moribund (finding)
419099009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dead (finding)
765205004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Disorder in remission (disorder)
81323004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Normal general body function (finding)

Figure 157: Health Status Observation (V2) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.5" extension="2014-06-09"/>
  <code code="11323-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayNames="Health status" />
  <text>
    <reference value="#healthstatus" />
  </text>
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="81323004" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Alive and well" />
</observation>

```

3.38 Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77 (open)]

Table 305: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)	

This observation contains a description of the wound tissue of the most severe or highest staged pressure ulcer observed on a patient.

Table 306: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14726	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-14727	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-14728	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-14729	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77
id	1..*	SHALL		81-14730	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-14731	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-14732	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 420905001
value	1..1	SHALL		81-14733	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14726).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14727).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-14728) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77"** (CONF:81-14729).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-14730).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-14731).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="420905001"** Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-14732).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:81-14733).

Figure 158: Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77"/>
  <id root="08edb7c0-2111-43f2-a784-9a5fdfaa67f0"/>
  <code code="420905001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName=" Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="421306004"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName="necrotic eschar"/>
</observation>
```

3.39 Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 307: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Admission Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (required)

This template represents problems or diagnoses identified by the clinician at the time of the patient's admission.

This Hospital Admission Diagnosis act may contain more than one Problem Observation to represent multiple diagnoses for a Hospital Admission.

Table 308: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7671	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7672	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16747	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16748	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .34
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32535	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19145	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19146	46241-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32162	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-7674	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7675	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15535	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7671).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7672).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16747) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34"** (CONF:1198-16748).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32535).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-19145).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="46241-6"** Admission diagnosis (CONF:1198-19146).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32162).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-7674) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7675).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15535).

Figure 159: Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <id root="5a784260-6856-4f38-9638-80c751aff2fb" />
  <code code="46241-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Hospital Admission Diagnosis" />
  <statusCode code="active" />
  <effectiveTime>
    <low value="20090303" />
  </effectiveTime>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="false">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Problem observation template -->
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
      ...
      ...
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.40 Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 309: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Discharge Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (required)

This template represents problems or diagnoses present at the time of discharge which occurred during the hospitalization or need to be monitored after hospitalization. It requires at least one Problem Observation entry.

Table 310: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7663	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7664	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16764	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16765	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .33
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32534	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19147	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19148	11535-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32163	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-7666	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7667	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15536	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7663).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7664).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16764) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33"** (CONF:1198-16765).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32534).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-19147).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="11535-2"** Hospital discharge diagnosis (CONF:1198-19148).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32163).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-7666) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7667).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Problem Observation (v3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15536).

Figure 160: Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33" extension="2015-08-01"/>
    <id root="5a784260-6856-4f38-9638-80c751aff2fb" />
    <code code="11535-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="HOSPITAL DISCHARGE DIAGNOSIS" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <low value="201209091904-0400" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="false">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- Problem observation template -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
            ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </act>
```

3.41 Immunization Activity (V3)

[substanceAdministration: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 311: Immunization Activity (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Immunizations Section (entries required) (V3) (required) Immunizations Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Drug Vehicle (optional) Immunization Refusal Reason (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Medication Dispense (V2) (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Substance Administered Act (optional) Immunization Medication Information (V2) (required) Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (optional)

An Immunization Activity describes immunization substance administrations that have actually occurred or are intended to occur. Immunization Activities in "INT" mood are reflections of immunizations a clinician intends a patient to receive. Immunization Activities in "EVN" mood reflect immunizations actually received.

An Immunization Activity is very similar to a Medication Activity with some key differentiators. The drug code system is constrained to CVX codes. Administration timing is less complex. Patient refusal reasons should be captured. All vaccines administered should be fully documented in the patient's permanent medical record. Healthcare providers who administer vaccines covered by the National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act are required to ensure that the permanent medical record of the recipient indicates:

APPENDIX A — Date of administration

APPENDIX B — Vaccine manufacturer

APPENDIX C — Vaccine lot number

APPENDIX D — Name and title of the person who administered the vaccine and the address of the clinic or facility where the permanent record will reside

APPENDIX E — Vaccine information statement (VIS)

Date printed on the VISDate VIS given to patient or parent/guardian.

This information should be included in an Immunization Activity when available. (Reference: [https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/downloads/applications/c/vis-instruct.pdf])

Table 312: Immunization Activity (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
substanceAdministration (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8826	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SBADM
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8827	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 (MoodCodeEvnInt)
@negationInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-8985	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8828	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10498	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32528	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8829	
code	0..1	MAY		1198-8830	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8833	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32359	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.15933 (ActStatus)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-8834	
repeatNumber	0..1	MAY		1198-8838	
routeCode	0..1	MAY		1198-8839	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.7 (SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology)
translation	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32960	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 (Medication Route)
approachSiteCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C-D>	1198-8840	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
doseQuantity	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8841	
@unit	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8842	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
administrationUnitCode	0..1	MAY		1198-8846	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30 (AdministrationUnitDoseForm)
consumable	1..1	SHALL		1198-8847	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1198-15546	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09)
performer	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8849	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31151	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	MAY		1198-8850	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8851	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CSM
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-15547	Drug Vehicle (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-8853	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8854	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15537	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8856	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8857	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-8858	true
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31392	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8860	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8861	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1198-15539	Medication Supply Order (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8863	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8864	= REF_R
supply	1..1	SHALL		1198-15540	Medication Dispense (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8866	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8867	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = CAUS
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15541	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-8988	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8989	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15542	Immunization Refusal Reason (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.53)
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31510	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31511	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-31512	true
sequenceNumber	0..1	MAY		1198-31513	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31514	Substance Administered Act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.118)
precondition	0..*	MAY		1198-8869	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8870	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = PRCN
criterion	1..1	SHALL		1198-15548	Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="SBADM" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8826).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [MoodCodeEvnInt](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-8827).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@negationInd** (CONF:1198-8985).
Note: Use negationInd="true" to indicate that the immunization was not given.
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8828) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52" (CONF:1198-10498).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32528).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8829).
6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8830).
Note: SubstanceAdministration.code is an optional field. Per HL7 Pharmacy Committee, "this is intended to further specify the nature of the substance administration act. To date the committee has made no use of this attribute". Because the type of substance administration is generally implicit in the routeCode, in the consumable participant, etc., the field is generally not used and there is no defined value set.
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8833).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActStatus](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32359).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-8834).

In "INT" (intent) mood, the repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times. In "EVN" (event) mood, the repeatNumber is the number of occurrences. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" in a substance administration event means that the current administration is the 3rd in a series.

9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1198-8838).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **routeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8839).
 - a. The routeCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Route](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32960).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **approachSiteCode**, where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8840).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **doseQuantity** (CONF:1198-8841).
 - a. The doseQuantity, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@unit**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8842).
13. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **administrationUnitCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [AdministrationUnitDoseForm](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8846).
14. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consumable** (CONF:1198-8847).
 - a. This consumable **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier:

- urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15546).
15. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **performer** (CONF:1198-8849).
 16. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31151).
 17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1198-8850) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CSM" (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8851).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Drug Vehicle (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24) (CONF:1198-15547).
 18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8853) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8854).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15537).
 19. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8856) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8857).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1198-8858).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31392).
 20. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8860) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8861).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Medication Supply Order (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15539).
 21. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8863) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8864).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Medication Dispense (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15540).
 22. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8866) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CAUS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8867).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15541).
23. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8988) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8989).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Refusal Reason](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.53) (CONF:1198-15542).

The following entryRelationship is used to indicate a given immunization's order in a series. The nested Substance Administered Act identifies an administration in the series. The entryRelationship/sequenceNumber shows the order of this particular administration in that series.

24. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31510) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31511).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" (CONF:1198-31512).
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sequenceNumber** (CONF:1198-31513).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Substance Administered Act](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118) (CONF:1198-31514).
25. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **precondition** (CONF:1198-8869) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PRCN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8870).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Precondition for Substance Administration \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15548).

Table 313: MoodCodeEvnInt

Value Set: MoodCodeEvnInt urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 (Clinical Focus: Subset of HL7 ActMood codes, constrained to represent event (EVN) and intent (INT) moods.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 4/24/2019 with a version of 20190104.			
Value Set Source:	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18/expansion		
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
EVN	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	event (occurrence)
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	intent

Table 314: SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology

Value Set: SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7 (Clinical Focus: The set of route of administration concepts that may be used in structured product labeling.),(Data Element Scope: Ordered, administered, medication route),(Inclusion Criteria: Selected concepts that are descendent of C38114 as determined by the FDA. These concepts are linked to "SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology (Code C54455)" by Concept_In_Subset.),(Exclusion Criteria: As determined by the FDA those routes not to be used in SPL (navigational concepts, etc.)) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190604. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
C132737	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Intracanalicular Route of Administration
C28161	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Intramuscular Route of Administration
C38192	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Auricular Route of Administration
C38193	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Buccal Route of Administration
C38194	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Conjunctival Route of Administration
C38197	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Dental Route of Administration
C38198	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Soft Tissue Route of Administration
C38200	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Administration via Hemodialysis
C38203	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Iontophoresis Route of Administration
C38205	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Endocervical Route of Administration
...			

Table 315: Body Site Value Set

Value Set: Body Site Value Set urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 (Clinical Focus: All SNOMED CT anatomic structures, locations, abnormal structures that can be considered to describe an anatomical site.),(Data Element Scope: data element describing body location),(Inclusion Criteria: SNOMED CT concepts descending from the Anatomical Structure (91723000) or Acquired body structure (body structure) (280115004) or Anatomical site notations for tumor staging (body structure) (258331007) or Body structure, altered from its original anatomical structure (morphologic abnormality) (118956008) or Physical anatomical entity (body structure) (91722005)),(Exclusion Criteria: none) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190420. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10013000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Lateral meniscus structure (body structure)
10024003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of base of lung (body structure)
10025002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of base of phalanx of index finger (body structure)
10026001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of ventral spinocerebellar tract of pons (body structure)
10036009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of nucleus pulposus of intervertebral disc of eighth thoracic vertebra (body structure)
10042008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of intervertebral foramen of fifth thoracic vertebra (body structure)
10047002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of transplanted lung (body structure)
1005009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Entire diaphragmatic lymph node (body structure)
10052007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Male structure (body structure)
10056005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Structure of ophthalmic nerve (body structure)
...			

Table 316: UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive

Value Set: UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 (Clinical Focus: Common UCUM units. This value set is based on the Common UCUM set.),(Data Element Scope: unit of measure),(Inclusion Criteria: all valid UCUM units case sensitive),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20180509.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
%	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent
%{Hb}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent hemoglobin
%{RBCs}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent of red blood cells
%{WBCs}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent of white blood cells
%{abnormal}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent abnormal
%{activity}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent activity
%{aggregation}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent aggregation
%{at_60_min}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent at 60 minute
%{bacteria}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent of bacteria
%{basal_activity}	UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1	percent basal activity
...			

Table 317: AdministrationUnitDoseForm

Value Set: AdministrationUnitDoseForm urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30 (Clinical Focus: Codes that are similar to a drug "form" but limited to those used as units when describing drug administration when the drug item is a physical form that is continuous and therefore not administered as an "each" of the physical form, or is not using standard measurement units (inch, ounce, gram, etc.) This set does not include unit concepts that mimic "physical form" concepts that can be counted using "each", such as tablet, bar, lozenge, packet, etc.),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA substanceAdministration/administrationUnitCode),(Inclusion Criteria: Unit concepts describing drug administration when the drug item is not administered as an "each" of the physical form, or is not using standard measurement units (inch, ounce, gram, etc.) Concepts have a "Concept_In_Subset" relationship to "SPL Unit of Presentation Terminology" (Code C87300)),(Exclusion Criteria: This set does not include unit concepts that mimic "physical form" concepts that can be counted using "each", such as tablet, bar, lozenge, packet, etc. Does not include standard measurement units (inch, ounce, gram, etc.))																																																			
This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190604.																																																			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30/expansion																																																			
<table border="1"><thead><tr><th>Code</th><th>Code System</th><th>Code System OID</th><th>Print Name</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>C102405</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Capful Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C122629</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Actuation Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C122631</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Dropperful Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C25397</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Application Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C44278</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C48491</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Metric Drop</td></tr><tr><td>C48501</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Inhalation Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C48536</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Scoopful Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C48537</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Spray Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td>C65060</td><td>NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1</td><td>Puff Dosing Unit</td></tr><tr><td colspan="4">...</td></tr></tbody></table>				Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name	C102405	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Capful Dosing Unit	C122629	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Actuation Dosing Unit	C122631	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Dropperful Dosing Unit	C25397	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Application Unit	C44278	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Unit	C48491	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Metric Drop	C48501	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Inhalation Dosing Unit	C48536	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Scoopful Dosing Unit	C48537	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Spray Dosing Unit	C65060	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Puff Dosing Unit	...			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name																																																
C102405	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Capful Dosing Unit																																																
C122629	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Actuation Dosing Unit																																																
C122631	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Dropperful Dosing Unit																																																
C25397	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Application Unit																																																
C44278	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Unit																																																
C48491	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Metric Drop																																																
C48501	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Inhalation Dosing Unit																																																
C48536	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Scoopful Dosing Unit																																																
C48537	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Spray Dosing Unit																																																
C65060	NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26 .1.1	Puff Dosing Unit																																																
...																																																			

Table 318: Medication Route

Value Set: Medication Route urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 (Clinical Focus: Terms used to describe the path by which a substance is taken into the body.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: All SNOMED CT values descending from 284009009 route of administration value),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190521. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10547007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Otic route (qualifier value)
12130007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intra-articular route (qualifier value)
127490009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Gastrostomy route (qualifier value)
127491008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Jejunostomy route (qualifier value)
127492001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nasogastric route (qualifier value)
1611000175109	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Sublesional route (qualifier value)
16857009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Vaginal route (qualifier value)
26643006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Oral route (qualifier value)
34206005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Subcutaneous route (qualifier value)
37161004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Rectal route (qualifier value)
...			

Figure 161: Immunization Activity (V3) Example

```
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" negationInd="false">
    <!-- ** Immunization activity -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="e6f1ba43-c0ed-4b9b-9f12-f435d8ad8f92" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="19981215" />
    <routeCode code="C28161" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
codeSystemName="National Cancer Institute (NCI) Thesaurus" displayName="Intramuscular
injection" />
    <doseQuantity value="50" unit="ug" />
    <consumable>
        <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
            <!-- ** Immunization medication information -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code code="33" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.59"
displayName="Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine" codeSystemName="CVX">
                    <translation code="854981" displayName="Pneumovax 23 (Pneumococcal
vaccine polyvalent) Injectable Solution" codeSystemName="RxNORM"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" />
                </code>
                <lotNumberText>1</lotNumberText>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
            <manufacturerOrganization>
                <name>Health LS - Immuno Inc.</name>
            </manufacturerOrganization>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <performer>
        <assignedEntity>
            <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.9999.456" extension="2981824" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>1007 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Portland</city>
                <state>OR</state>
                <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
            </addr>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-1030" />
            <assignedPerson>
                <name>
                    <given>Harold</given>
                    <family>Hippocrates</family>
                </name>
            </assignedPerson>
            <representedOrganization>
                <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5.9999.1394" />
                <name>Good Health Clinic</name>
                <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +(555)-555-1030" />
                <addr>
                    <streetAddressLine>1007 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
                    <city>Portland</city>
                    <state>OR</state>
                    <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                    <country>US</country>
                </addr>
            </representedOrganization>
        </assignedEntity>
    </performer>

```

```

    </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
</substanceAdministration>
```

3.42 Immunization Medication Information (V2)

[manufacturedProduct: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 319: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Medication Dispense (V2) (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (required) Immunization Activity (V3) (required)	

The Immunization Medication Information represents product information about the immunization substance. The vaccine manufacturer and vaccine lot number are typically recorded in the medical record and should be included if known.

Table 320: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
manufacturedProduct (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-9002	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-9004	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10499	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32602	2014-06-09
id	0..*	MAY		1098-9005	
manufacturedMaterial	1..1	SHALL		1098-9006	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-9007	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6 (CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set)
translation	0..*	MAY		1098-31543	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8 (Vaccine Clinical Drug)
translation	0..*	MAY		1098-31881	
lotNumberText	0..1	SHOULD		1098-9014	
manufacturerOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1098-9012	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="MANU"** (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-9002).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-9004) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54"** (CONF:1098-10499).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32602).
3. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-9005).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **manufacturedMaterial** (CONF:1098-9006).
 - a. This manufacturedMaterial **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-9007).
 - i. This code **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **MAY** be selected from ValueSet [Vaccine Clinical Drug](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31543).
 - ii. This code **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation** (CONF:1098-31881).

lotNumberText should be included if known. It may not be known for historical immunizations, planned immunizations, or refused/deferred immunizations.

- b. This manufacturedMaterial **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **lotNumberText** (CONF:1098-9014).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **manufacturerOrganization** (CONF:1098-9012).

Table 321: CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set

<p>Value Set: CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6 (Clinical Focus: CVX vaccine concepts that represent actual vaccines types, including those that are historical record of a vaccine administered where the exact formulation is unknown. This does not include the identifiers for CVX codes that are administrative codes or never active codes. Available at http://www2a.cdc.gov/vaccines/iis/iisstandards/vaccines.asp?rpt=cvx),(Data Element Scope: Vaccine representation),(Inclusion Criteria: Any CVX code with "CVX status" (VSAC Property) = Active, Inactive, Non-US except those noted in exclusions),(Exclusion Criteria: CVX codes that have a CVX 'status' of either "Pending" or "Never Active" AND CVX codes with CVX "Nonvaccine" property = True.)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190415.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
01	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	diphtheria, tetanus toxoids and pertussis vaccine
02	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	trivalent poliovirus vaccine, live, oral
03	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	measles, mumps and rubella virus vaccine
04	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	measles and rubella virus vaccine
05	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	measles virus vaccine
06	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	rubella virus vaccine
07	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	mumps virus vaccine
08	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	hepatitis B vaccine, pediatric or pediatric/adolescent dosage
09	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	tetanus and diphtheria toxoids, adsorbed, preservative free, for adult use (2 Lf of tetanus toxoid and 2 Lf of diphtheria toxoid)
10	CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.2 92	poliovirus vaccine, inactivated
...			

Table 322: Vaccine Clinical Drug

<p>Value Set: Vaccine Clinical Drug urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8 (Clinical Focus: Administrable vaccine medication formulations represented using either a "generic" or "brand-specific" concept.),(Data Element Scope: vaccine medication),(Inclusion Criteria: Currently Active RxNorm clinical drug concepts that have the a mapped CVX code. Limit to SBD or SCD TTY.),(Exclusion Criteria: Any drug not meeting the inclusion criteria)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190620.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1099936	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Adenovirus Type 4 Vaccine Live 32000 UNT Delayed Release Oral Tablet
1099940	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Adenovirus Type 7 Vaccine Live 32000 UNT Delayed Release Oral Tablet
1190916	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.5 ML diphtheria toxoid vaccine, inactivated 4 UNT/ML / tetanus toxoid vaccine, inactivated 10 UNT/ML Injection [Tenivac]
1190919	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.5 ML diphtheria toxoid vaccine, inactivated 4 UNT/ML / tetanus toxoid vaccine, inactivated 10 UNT/ML Prefilled Syringe [Tenivac]
1244205	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.5 ML diphtheria toxoid vaccine, inactivated 50 UNT/ML / tetanus toxoid vaccine, inactivated 10 UNT/ML Injection
1292435	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.65 ML Varicella-Zoster Virus Vaccine Live (Oka-Merck) strain 29800 UNT/ML Injection [Zostavax]
1292443	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.5 ML Measles Virus Vaccine Live, Enders' attenuated Edmonston strain 2000 UNT/ML / Mumps Virus Vaccine Live, Jeryl Lynn Strain 40000 UNT/ML / Rubella Virus Vaccine Live (Wistar RA 27-3 Strain) 2000 UNT/ML / Varicella-Zoster Virus

			Vaccine Live (Oka-Merck) strain 20000 UNT/ML Injection [ProQuad]
1292459	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	0.5 ML Varicella-Zoster Virus Vaccine Live (Oka-Merck) strain 2700 UNT/ML Injection [Varivax]
1292828	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Yellow-Fever Virus Vaccine, 17D-204 strain 4000 UNT/ML Injectable Suspension [YF-Vax]
1298819	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	influenza A-California-7-2009-(H1N1)v-like virus vaccine 158000000 UNT/ML Nasal Spray
...			

Figure 162: Immunization Medication Information (V2) Example

```
<manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
    <!-- ** Immunization medication information ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="33" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.292" displayName="Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine" codeSystemName="CVX">
            <translation code="854981" displayName="Pneumovax 23 (Pneumococcal vaccine polyvalent) Injectable Solution" codeSystemName="RxNORM" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" />
        </code>
        <lotNumberText>1</lotNumberText>
    </manufacturedMaterial>
    <manufacturerOrganization>
        <name>Health LS - Immuno Inc.</name>
    </manufacturerOrganization>
</manufacturedProduct>
```

3.43 Immunization Refusal Reason

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.53 (open)]

Table 323: Immunization Refusal Reason Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	

The Immunization Refusal Reason documents the rationale for the patient declining an immunization.

Table 324: Immunization Refusal Reason Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.53)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8991	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8992	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-8993	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10500	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .53
id	1..*	SHALL		81-8994	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-8995	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.19717 (No Immunization Reason)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-8996	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19104	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8991).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-8992).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-8993) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.53" (CONF:81-10500).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-8994).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [No Immunization Reason](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19717 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-8995).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-8996).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19104).

Table 325: No Immunization Reason

Value Set: No Immunization Reason urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19717 (Clinical Focus: Rationale for not administering indicated immunization),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: All descendant codes from ActNoImmunizationReason in code system ActReason),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19717/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
IMMUNE	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	immunity
MEDPREC	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	medical precaution
OSTOCK	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	product out of stock
PATOBJ	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	patient objection
PHILISOP	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	philosophical objection
RELIG	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	religious objection
VACEFF	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	vaccine efficacy concerns
VACSAF	HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8	vaccine safety concerns

Figure 163: Immunization Refusal Reason Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
<templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.53"/>
<id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4dd8"/>
<code displayName="Patient Objection" code="PATOBJ"
  codeSystemName="HL7 ActNoImmunizationReason" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.8"/>
<statusCode code="completed"/>
</observation>
```

3.44 Indication (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 326: Indication (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Indications Section (V2) (optional) Patient Referral Act (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the rationale for an action such as an encounter, a medication administration, or a procedure. The id element can be used to reference a problem recorded elsewhere in the document, or can be used with a code and value to record the problem. Indications for treatment are not laboratory results; rather the problem associated with the laboratory result should be cited (e.g., hypokalemia instead of a laboratory result of Potassium 2.0 mEq/L). Use the Drug Monitoring Act [templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123] to indicate if a particular drug needs special monitoring (e.g., anticoagulant therapy). Use Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) [templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25.2] to represent that a medication is to be administered only when the associated criteria are met.

Table 327: Indication (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7480	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7481	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7482	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10502	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .19
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32570	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7483	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31229	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.2 (Problem Type (SNOMEDCT))
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7487	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19105	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7488	
value	0..1	MAY	CD	1098-7489	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7480).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7481).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7482) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19"** (CONF:1098-10502).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32570).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7483).

Note: If the id element is used to reference a problem recorded elsewhere in the document then this id must equal another entry/id in the same document instance. Application Software must be responsible for resolving the identifier back to its original object and then rendering the information in the correct place in the containing section's narrative text. Its purpose is to obviate the need to repeat the complete XML representation of the referred to entry when relating one entry to another.
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **MAY** be selected from ValueSet [Problem Type \(SNOMEDCT\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31229).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7487).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19105).
- 7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7488).
- 8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet **Problem** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7489).

Figure 164: Indication (V2) Example

```

<entry typeCode="DRIIV">
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
        <!-- ** MEDICATION ACTIVITY -->
        <id root="cdbd33f0-6cde-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
        <text>
            <reference value="#Med1" /> 0.09 MG/ACTUAT inhalant solution, 2 puffs QID PRN
wheezing

        </text>
        ...
        <!-- Indication snippet inside a Medication Activity -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
            <!-- Note that this id equals the problem observation/id -->
            <id root="db734647-fc99-424c-a864-7e3cda82e703" />
            <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="32398004" displayName="Bronchitis"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        ...
    </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
    <!-- Points to a problem on the problem list -->
    <!-- Problem observation template
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4"/>
    Note that this id equals the Indication observation/id
<id root="db734647-fc99-424c-a864-7e3cda82e703"/> -->
```

3.45 Instruction (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 328: Instruction (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Instructions Section (V2) (required) Planned Immunization Activity (V2) (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	

The Instruction template can be used in several ways, such as to record patient instructions within a Medication Activity or to record fill instructions within a supply order. The template's moodCode can only be INT. If an instruction was already given, the Procedure Activity Act template (instead of this template) should be used to represent the already occurred instruction. The act/code defines the type of instruction. Though not defined in this template, a Vaccine Information Statement (VIS) document could be referenced through act/reference/externalDocument, and patient awareness of the instructions can be represented with the generic participant and the participant/awarenessCode.

Table 329: Instruction (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7391	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7392	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = INT
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7393	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10503	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .20
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32598	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-16884	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.34 (Patient Education)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7396	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19106	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7391).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="INT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7392).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7393) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20"** (CONF:1098-10503).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32598).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Patient Education](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.34 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-16884).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7396).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19106).

Table 330: Patient Education

Value Set: Patient Education urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.34 (Clinical Focus: Interventions intended to inform the patient about a condition, its treatment, and the patient's role in the treatment),(Data Element Scope: procedure or communication),(Inclusion Criteria: All concepts descending from the Education (409073007) or the Education with explicit context (460615006) hierarchies in SNOMED CT.),(Exclusion Criteria: any concept not in the hierarchies described) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190413. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.34/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10189761000 046105	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Hypertension exercise education (procedure)
10756541000 119104	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Childbirth education done (situation)
108247002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Visual correction training AND/OR re-education procedure (procedure)
113145005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Biofeedback training in conduction disorder, arrhythmia (regime/therapy)
113155009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Myocardial infarction education (procedure)
11464100011 9104	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Natural contraception education done (situation)
11581009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Swinging transfer training (regime/therapy)
11816003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Diet education (procedure)
118629009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Functional training (procedure)
11924009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Orthotics training of upper extremities (procedure)
...			

Figure 165: Instruction (V2) Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
<templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" extension="2014-06-09" />
<code code="171044003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" displayName="immunization
education" />
<text>
<reference value="#immunSect" />
Possible flu-like symptoms for three days.
</text>
<statusCode code="completed" />
</act>
```

3.46 Intervention Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 331: Intervention Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Interventions Section (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Handoff Communication Participants (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) External Document Reference (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)

This template represents an Intervention Act. It is a wrapper for intervention-type activities considered to be parts of the same intervention. For example, an activity such as "elevate head of bed" combined with "provide humidified O₂ per nasal cannula" may be the interventions performed for a health concern of "respiratory insufficiency" to achieve a goal of "pulse oximetry greater than 92%". These intervention activities may be newly described or derived from a variety of sources within an EHR.

Interventions are actions taken to increase the likelihood of achieving the patient's or providers' goals. An Intervention Act should contain a reference to a Goal Observation representing the reason for the intervention.

Intervention Acts can be related to each other, or to Planned Intervention Acts. (E.g., a Planned Intervention Act with moodCode of INT could be related to a series of Intervention Acts with moodCode of EVN, each having an effectiveTime containing the time of the intervention.)

All interventions referenced in an Intervention Act must have a moodCode of EVN, indicating that they have occurred.

Table 332: Intervention Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30971	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30972	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-30973	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-30974	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .131
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32916	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-30975	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-30976	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-30977	362956003
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-30978	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30979	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32316	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-31624	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31552	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-30980	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30981	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-30982	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-30984	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30985	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-30986	Immunization Activity (V3) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-30988	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30989	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-30990	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-30991	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-30992	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-30993	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31154	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31155	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32460	Intervention Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31164	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31165	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31166	Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31168	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31169	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1198-31170	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31171	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31172	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-31173	Encounter Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31174	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32956	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31176	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31177	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31178	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1198-31179	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31413	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31414	Nutrition Recommendation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.130)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31545	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31554	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31555	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31621	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31622	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-31623	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32317	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32318	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32319	Handoff Communication Participants (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32914	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32773	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32915	Planned Intervention Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01)
reference	0..*	MAY		1198-32760	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32761	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-32762	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-30971).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-30972).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-30973) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131"** (CONF:1198-30974).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32916).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-30975).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-30976).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="362956003"** procedure / intervention (navigational concept) (CONF:1198-30977).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-30978).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-30979).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32316).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-31624).

8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31552).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-30980) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-30981).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Advance Directive Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30982).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-30984) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-30985).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-30986).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-30988) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-30989).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30990).
12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-30991) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-30992).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-30993).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Intervention Acts (Intervention RELATES TO Intervention).

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-31154) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31155).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Intervention Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32460).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1198-31164) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31165).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31166).

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31168) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31169).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31170).
16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31171) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31172).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Activity \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31173).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31174) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32956).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31176).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31177) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31178).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Non-Medicinal Supply Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-31179).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31413) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Recommendation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130) (CONF:1198-31414).

Where an Intervention needs to reference another entry already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entry, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31545) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31554).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-31555).

An Intervention Act should reference a Goal Observation. Because the Goal Observation is already described in the CDA document instance's Goals section, rather than repeating the full content of the Goal Observation, the Entry Reference template can be used to reference this entry. The following entryRelationship represents an Entry Reference to Goal Observation.

21. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31621) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31622).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-31623).
 - c. This entryReference template **SHALL** reference an instance of a Goal Observation template (CONF:1198-32459).
22. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32317) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32318).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Handoff Communication Participants](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141) (CONF:1198-32319).
23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32914) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32773).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Intervention Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32915).
24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1198-32760).
- a. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32761).
 - b. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [External Document Reference](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32762).

Figure 166: Intervention Act (*moodCode*="INT") Example

```

<!--
This entry shows an act in intent mood (planned intervention-
meaning this is intended to be done), with the reason "RSN" for the act
being the already defined Goal (pulse ox reading > 92)
The intervention contains relationships to different components of
the intervention.

-->
<!-- Intervention Act -->
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131" />
    <id root="85fa4b62-e3a9-4385-b064-fe04cca35adb" />
    <code code="code_for_intervention" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Intervention" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- The following act is one part of the intervention -
            "Elevate head of bed" -->
        <!-- Procedure Activity Act -->
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12" extension="2015-08-01" />
            <id root="7658963e-54da-496f-bf18-dealddaa3b0" />
            <code code="423171007" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Elevate head of bed" />
            <statusCode code="active" />
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- The following procedure is one part of the intervention -
            "Oxygen administration by nasal cannula" -->
        <!-- Procedure Activity Procedure -->
        <procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="INT">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <id root="6a560f3d-88fd-4292-9415-f9371adaec46" />
            <code code="371907003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Oxygen administration by nasal cannula" />
            <statusCode code="active" />
        </procedure>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- This entryRelationship represents the relationship between an
Intervention Act and a Goal Observation (Intervention HAS REASON Goal).
The Entry Reference template is being used here as this Goal is
defined elsewhere in the CDA document -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Entry Reference template -->
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" />
            <!-- This id points to an already defined Goal
(pulse ox reading > 92) in the Goals Section -->
            <id root="3700b3b0-fbed-11e2-b778-0800200c9a66" />
            <code nullFlavor="NP" />
            <statusCode code="completed" />
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.47 Medical Equipment Organizer

[organizer: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135 (open)]

Table 333: Medical Equipment Organizer Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional)	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional)

This template represents a set of current or historical medical devices, supplies, aids and equipment used by the patient. Examples are hearing aids, orthotic devices, ostomy supplies, visual aids, diabetic supplies such as syringes and pumps, and wheelchairs.

Devices that are applied during a procedure (e.g., cardiac pacemaker, gastrostomy tube, port catheter), whether permanent or temporary, are represented within the Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) template (templateId: 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14.2).

Table 334: Medical Equipment Organizer Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31020	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31021	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31022	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31023	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31024	
code	0..1	MAY		1098-31025	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31026	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31029	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39 (Result Status)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-32136	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-32378	
high	1..1	SHALL		1098-32379	
component	0..*	MAY		1098-31027	
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-31862	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09)
component	0..*	MAY		1098-31887	
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-31888	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="CLUSTER" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-31020).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-31021).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-31022) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135" (CONF:1098-31023).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-31024).

This code can represent a category of devices. The code is strictly optional, and is not currently limited to any value set or code system. Implementers may use it if they wish to provide optional coded information about this grouping of medical equipment.

5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31025).

The organizer is a collection of statuses for contained entries. The organizer remains active until all contained entries are done.

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31026).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Result Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-31029).

The effectiveTime can be used to show the time period over which the patient will be using the set of equipment. The organizer would probably not be used with devices applied in or on the patient.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32136).

- a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1098-32378).
- b. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1098-32379).

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **component** (CONF:1098-31027) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Non-Medicinal Supply Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31862).

9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **component** (CONF:1098-31887) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31888).

10. Either Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2)

(templateId:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09) **OR** Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (templateId:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) **SHALL** be present (CONF:1098-32380).

Table 335: Result Status

Value Set: Result Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39
(Clinical Focus: The processing status of a laboratory test or panel),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 4/24/2019 with a version of 20190103.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	aborted
active	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	active
cancelled	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	cancelled
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	completed
held	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	held
suspended	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	suspended

Figure 167: Medical Equipment Organizer Example

```
<organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.135" />
    <!-- Medical Equipment Organizer template -->
    <id root="3e414708-0e61-4d48-8863-484a2d473a02" />
    <code code="337588003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
displayName="Incontinence appliances">
        <originalText>Incontinence appliances</originalText>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="20070103" />
        <high nullFlavor="UNK" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <component>
        <supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <!-- Non-medicinal supply activity V2 template ***** -->
            ...
        </supply>
    </component>
    <component>
        <supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <!-- Non-medicinal supply activity V2 template ***** -->
            ...
        </supply>
    </component>
</organizer>
```

3.48 Medication Activity (V2)

[substanceAdministration: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 336: Medication Activity (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medications Section (entries required) (V2) (required) Medications Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Admission Medication (V2) (required) Medications Administered Section (V2) (optional) Anesthesia Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Discharge Medication (V3) (required)	Drug Vehicle (optional) Drug Monitoring Act (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Medication Information (V2) (required) Medication Dispense (V2) (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Substance Administered Act (optional) Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (optional) Medication Free Text Sig (optional)

A Medication Activity describes substance administrations that have actually occurred (e.g., pills ingested or injections given) or are intended to occur (e.g., "take 2 tablets twice a day for the next 10 days"). Medication activities in "INT" mood are reflections of what a clinician intends a patient to be taking. For example, a clinician may intend that a patient be administered Lisinopril 20 mg PO for blood pressure control. If what was actually administered was Lisinopril 10 mg., then the Medication activities in the "EVN" mood would reflect actual use.

A moodCode of INT is allowed, but it is recommended that the Planned Medication Activity (V2) template be used for moodCodes other than EVN if the document type contains a section that includes Planned Medication Activity (V2) (for example a Care Plan document with Plan of Treatment, Intervention, or Goal sections).

At a minimum, a Medication Activity shall include an effectiveTime indicating the duration of the administration (or single-administration timestamp). Ambulatory medication lists generally provide a summary of use for a given medication over time - a medication activity in event mood with the duration reflecting when the medication started and stopped. Ongoing medications will not have a stop date (or will have a stop date with a suitable NULL value). Ambulatory medication lists will generally also have a frequency (e.g., a medication is being taken twice a day). Inpatient medications generally record each administration as a separate act.

The dose (doseQuantity) represents how many of the consumables are to be administered at each administration event. As a result, the dose is always relative to the consumable and the interval of administration. Thus, a patient consuming a single "metoprolol 25mg tablet" per administration will have a doseQuantity of "1", whereas a patient consuming "metoprolol" will have a dose of "25 mg".

Table 337: Medication Activity (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
substanceAdministration (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7496	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SBADM
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7497	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 (MoodCodeEvnInt)
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7499	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10504	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32498	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7500	
code	0..1	MAY		1098-7506	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7507	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32360	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11 (Medication Status)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-7508	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32775	
low	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32776	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-32777	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7513	
@operator	1..1	SHALL		1098-9106	A
repeatNumber	0..1	MAY		1098-7555	
routeCode	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7514	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.12.3221.8.7 (SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology)
translation	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32950	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 (Medication Route)
approachSiteCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C-D>	1098-7515	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
doseQuantity	1..1	SHALL		1098-7516	
@unit	0..1	SHOULD		1098-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				7526	1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
rateQuantity	0..1	MAY		1098-7517	
@unit	1..1	SHALL		1098-7525	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
maxDoseQuantity	0..1	MAY	RTO<P Q, PQ>	1098-7518	
administrationUnitCode	0..1	MAY		1098-7519	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1021.30 (AdministrationUnitDoseForm)
consumable	1..1	SHALL		1098-7520	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-16085	Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09
performer	0..1	MAY		1098-7522	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31150	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-7523	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7524	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = CSM
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-16086	Drug Vehicle (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7536	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7537	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16087	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7539	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7540	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-7542	true

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31387	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7543	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7547	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-16089	Medication Supply Order (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7549	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7553	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-16090	Medication Dispense (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7552	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7544	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = CAUS
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16091	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-30820	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30821	COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-30822	Drug Monitoring Act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.123
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31515	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31516	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-31517	true
sequenceNumber	0..1	MAY		1098-31518	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-	Substance Administered Act (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				31519	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32907	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32908	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-32909	Medication Free Text Sig (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147)
precondition	0..*	MAY		1098-31520	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31882	PRCN
criterion	1..1	SHALL		1098-31883	Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode** = "SBADM" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7496).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [MoodCodeEvnInt](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 **STATIC** 2011-04-03 (CONF:1098-7497).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7499) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root** = "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" (CONF:1098-10504).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension** = "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32498).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7500).
5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1098-7506).

Note: SubstanceAdministration.code is an optional field. Per HL7 Pharmacy Committee, "this is intended to further specify the nature of the substance administration act. To date the committee has made no use of this attribute". Because the type of substance administration is generally implicit in the routeCode, in the consumable participant, etc., the field is generally not used, and there is no defined value set.
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7507).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32360).

The substance administration effectiveTime field can repeat, in order to represent varying levels of complex dosing. effectiveTime can be used to represent the duration of administration (e.g., "10 days"), the frequency of administration (e.g., "every 8 hours"), and more. Here, we require that there **SHALL** be an effectiveTime documentation of the duration (or single-administration timestamp), and that there **SHOULD** be an effectiveTime documentation of the frequency. Other timing nuances, supported by the base CDA R2 standard, may also be included.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7508) such that it

Note: This effectiveTime represents either the medication duration (i.e., the time the medication was started and stopped) or the single-administration timestamp.

 - a. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:1098-32775).

Note: indicates a single-administration timestamp
 - b. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **low** (CONF:1098-32776).

Note: indicates when medication started
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-32777).

Note: indicates when medication stopped
 - d. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain either a low or a @value but not both (CONF:1098-32890).
 8. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7513) such that it

Note: This effectiveTime represents the medication frequency (e.g., administration times per day).

 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@operator="A"** (CONF:1098-9106).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@xsi:type="PIVL_TS" or "EIVL_TS"** (CONF:1098-28499).
- In "INT" (intent) mood, the repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times. In "EVN" (event) mood, the repeatNumber is the number of occurrences. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" in a substance administration event means that the current administration is the 3rd in a series.
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1098-7555).
 10. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **routeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7514).
 - a. The routeCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Route](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32950).
 11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **approachSiteCode**, where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7515).
 12. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **doseQuantity** (CONF:1098-7516).
 - a. This doseQuantity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@unit**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7526).
 - b. Pre-coordinated consumable: If the consumable code is a pre-coordinated unit dose (e.g., "metoprolol 25mg tablet") then doseQuantity is a unitless number that indicates the number of products given per administration (e.g., "2", meaning 2 x "metoprolol 25mg tablet" per administration) (CONF:1098-16878).
 - c. Not pre-coordinated consumable: If the consumable code is not pre-coordinated (e.g., is simply "metoprolol"), then doseQuantity must represent a physical quantity with @unit, e.g., "25" and "mg", specifying the amount of product given per administration (CONF:1098-16879).
 13. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **rateQuantity** (CONF:1098-7517).

- a. The rateQuantity, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7525).
- 14. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **maxDoseQuantity** (CONF:1098-7518).
administrationUnitCode@code describes the units of medication administration for an item using a code that is pre-coordinated to include a physical unit form (ointment, powder, solution, etc.) which differs from the units used in administering the consumable (capful, spray, drop, etc.). For example when recording medication administrations, “metric drop (C48491)” would be appropriate to accompany the RxNorm code of 198283 (Timolol 0.25% Ophthalmic Solution) where the number of drops would be specified in doseQuantity@value.
- 15. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **administrationUnitCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [AdministrationUnitDoseForm](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7519).
- 16. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consumable** (CONF:1098-7520).
 - a. This consumable **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16085).
- 17. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **performer** (CONF:1098-7522).
- 18. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31150).
- 19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-7523) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CSM" (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7524).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Drug Vehicle](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.24) (CONF:1098-16086).
- 20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7536) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7537).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16087).
- 21. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7539) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7540).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-7542).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31387).
- 22. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7543) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7547).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Supply Order \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16089).
23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7549) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7553).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Dispense \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16090).
24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7552) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CAUS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7544).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16091).
25. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-30820) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CONF:1098-30821).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Drug Monitoring Act](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.123) (CONF:1098-30822).
- The following entryRelationship is used to indicate a given medication's order in a series. The nested Substance Administered Act identifies an administration in the series. The entryRelationship/sequenceNumber shows the order of this particular administration in that series.
26. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31515) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31516).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" (CONF:1098-31517).
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **sequenceNumber** (CONF:1098-31518).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Substance Administered Act](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118) (CONF:1098-31519).
27. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32907) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32908).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Free Text Sig](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147) (CONF:1098-32909).
28. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **precondition** (CONF:1098-31520).
- a. The precondition, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PRCN" (CONF:1098-31882).
 - b. The precondition, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Precondition for Substance Administration \(v2\)](#) (identifier:

urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31883).

29. Medication Activity **SHOULD** include doseQuantity **OR** rateQuantity (CONF:1098-30800).

Table 338: Medication Status

Value Set: Medication Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11 (Clinical Focus: A coded concept indicating the current status of a Medication administration or fulfillment.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria: All concepts are subsumed by the selected concepts.) This value set was imported on 9/21/2017 with a version of 20170914. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	aborted
active	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	active
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	completed
nullified	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	nullified
suspended	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	suspended

Figure 168: Medication Activity (V2) Example

```
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Medication Activity (V2) -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16"
        extension="2014-06-09"/>
    <id root="6c844c75-aa34-411c-b7bd-5e4a9f206e29"/>
    <statusCode code="active"/>
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="20120318"/>
    </effectiveTime>
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true" operator="A">
        <period value="12" unit="h"/>
    </effectiveTime>
    <routeCode code="C38288"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
        codeSystemName="NCI Thesaurus"
        displayName="ORAL"/>
    <doseQuantity value="1"/>
    <consumable>
        <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
            <!-- ** Medication information -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23"
                extension="2014-06-09"/>
            <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4ee8"/>
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code code="197380"
                    displayName="Atenolol 25 MG Oral Tablet"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" codeSystemName="RxNorm"/>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Indication -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19"
                extension="2014-06-09"/>
            <id root="e63166c7-6482-4a44-83a1-37ccdbde725b"/>
            <code code="75321-0"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                codeSystemName="LOINC"
                displayName="Clinical finding"/>
            <statusCode code="completed"/>
            <value xsi:type="CD"
                code="38341003"
                displayName="Hypertension"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"/>
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
```

Figure 169: No Known Medications Example

```

<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" negationInd="true">
    <!-- ** Medication activity -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="072f00fc-4f9d-4516-8d6f-ed00ed523fe0" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="20110103" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <consumable>
        <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
            <!-- ** Medication information -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code nullFlavor="OTH" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88">
                    <translation code="410942007" displayName="drug or medication"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
                </code>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
</substanceAdministration>

```

3.49 Medication Dispense (V2)

[supply: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09
 (open)]

Table 339: Medication Dispense (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (optional) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Medication Information (V2) (optional) Immunization Medication Information (V2) (optional)

This template records the act of supplying medications (i.e., dispensing).

Table 340: Medication Dispense (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
supply (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7451	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SPLY
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7452	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7453	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10505	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .18
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32580	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7454	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7455	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32361	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.64 (Medication Fill Status)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7456	
repeatNumber	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7457	
quantity	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7458	
product	0..1	MAY		1098-7459	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-15607	Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09)
product	0..1	MAY		1098-9331	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-31696	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09)
performer	0..1	MAY		1098-7461	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-7467	
addr	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7468	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7473	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7474	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-15606	Medication Supply Order (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="SPLY" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7451).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7452).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-7453) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18" (CONF:1098-10505).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32580).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-7454).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-7455).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Fill Status](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.64 **STATIC** 2014-04-23 (CONF:1098-32361).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-7456).

In "INT" (intent) mood, the repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times. In "EVN" (event) mood, the repeatNumber is the number of occurrences. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" in a substance administration event means that the current administration is the 3rd in a series.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] repeatNumber (CONF:1098-7457).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] quantity (CONF:1098-7458).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] product (CONF:1098-7459) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15607).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] product (CONF:1098-9331) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31696).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] performer (CONF:1098-7461).
 - a. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] assignedEntity (CONF:1098-7467).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1098-7468).

1. The content of addr **SHALL** be a conformant US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1098-10565).
12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7473) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7474).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Medication Supply Order (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15606).
13. A supply act **SHALL** contain one product/Medication Information *OR* one product/Immunization Medication Information template (CONF:1098-9333).

Table 341: Medication Fill Status

Value Set: Medication Fill Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.64 Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Aborted
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	Completed

Figure 170: Medication Dispense (V2) Example

```

<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.18" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <id root="1.2.3.4.56789.1" extension="cb734647-fc99-424c-a864-7e3cda82e704" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <effectiveTime value="201208151450-0800" />
  <repeatNumber value="1" />
  <quantity value="75" />
  <product>
    <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23" extension="2014-06-09" />
      . .
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </product>
  <performer>
    <assignedEntity>
      . .
    </assignedEntity>
  </performer>
</supply>

```

3.50 Medication Free Text Sig

[substanceAdministration: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147
(closed)]

Table 342: Medication Free Text Sig Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional)	

The template is available to explicitly identify the free text Sig within each medication.

An example free text sig: Thyroxin 150 ug, take one tab by mouth every morning.

Table 343: Medication Free Text Sig Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
substanceAdministration (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-32770	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SBADM
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-32771	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 (MoodCodeEvnInt)
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-32753	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-32772	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147
code	1..1	SHALL		81-32775	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-32780	76662-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-32781	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
text	1..1	SHALL		81-32754	
reference	1..1	SHALL		81-32755	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		81-32756	
consumable	1..1	SHALL		81-32776	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		81-32777	
manufacturedLabeledDrug	1..1	SHALL		81-32778	
@nullFlavor	1..1	SHALL		81-32779	NA

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="SBADM" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-32770).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [MoodCodeEvnInt](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 **STATIC** 2011-04-03 (CONF:81-32771).
Note: moodCode must match the parent substanceAdministration EVN or INT
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-32753) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147" (CONF:81-32772).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:81-32775).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="76662-6" Instructions Medication (CONF:81-32780).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-32781).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **text** (CONF:81-32754).

Reference into the section/text to a tag that only contains free text sig.

- a. This text **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **reference** (CONF:81-32755).
 - i. This reference **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @value (CONF:81-32756).
 - 1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:81-32774).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consumable** (CONF:81-32776).
 - a. This consumable **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **manufacturedProduct** (CONF:81-32777).
 - i. This manufacturedProduct **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **manufacturedLabeledDrug** (CONF:81-32778).
 - 1. This manufacturedLabeledDrug **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @nullFlavor="NA" Not Applicable (CONF:81-32779).

Figure 171: Medication Free Text Sig Example

```
<!-- moodCode matches the parent substanceAdministration EVN or INT -->
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.147"/>
  <code code="76662-6"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Medication Instructions"/>
  <text>
    <!-- Reference into the section.text to a tag that ONLY contains free text SIG -->
    <reference value="#AD1"/>
  </text>
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedLabeledDrug nullFlavor="NA"/>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
```

3.51 Medication Information (V2)

[manufacturedProduct: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 344: Medication Information (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (required) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (required) Medication Supply Order (V2) (optional) Medication Dispense (V2) (optional)	

A medication should be recorded as a pre-coordinated ingredient + strength + dose form (e.g., "metoprolol 25mg tablet", "amoxicillin 400mg/5mL suspension") where possible. This includes RxNorm codes whose Term Type is SCD (semantic clinical drug), SBD (semantic brand drug), GPCK (generic pack), BPCK (brand pack).

The dose (doseQuantity) represents how many of the consumables are to be administered at each administration event. As a result, the dose is always relative to the consumable. Thus, a patient consuming a single "metoprolol 25mg tablet" per administration will have a doseQuantity of "1", whereas a patient consuming "metoprolol" will have a dose of "25 mg".

Table 345: Medication Information (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
manufacturedProduct (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7408	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7409	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10506	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .23
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32579	2014-06-09
id	0..*	MAY		1098-7410	
manufacturedMaterial	1..1	SHALL		1098-7411	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-7412	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1010.4 (Medication Clinical Drug)
translation	0..*	MAY		1098-31884	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1010.2 (Clinical Substance)
manufacturerOrganization	0..1	MAY		1098-7416	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="MANU"** (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7408).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7409) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23"** (CONF:1098-10506).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32579).
3. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7410).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **manufacturedMaterial** (CONF:1098-7411).
Note: A medication should be recorded as a pre-coordinated ingredient + strength + dose form (e.g., “metoprolol 25mg tablet”, “amoxicillin 400mg/5mL suspension”) where possible. This includes RxNorm codes whose Term Type is SCD (semantic clinical drug), SBD (semantic brand drug), GPCK (generic pack), BPCK (brand pack).
 - a. This manufacturedMaterial **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Clinical Drug](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7412).
 - i. This code **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **MAY** be selected from ValueSet [Clinical Substance](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31884).
5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **manufacturerOrganization** (CONF:1098-7416).

Table 346: Medication Clinical Drug

<p>Value Set: Medication Clinical Drug urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.4 (Clinical Focus: All prescribable medication formulations represented using either a "generic" or "brand-specific" concept developed to support HL7 C-CDA R2 October 2013 ballot.),(Data Element Scope: Medication orderable),(Inclusion Criteria: GROUPING value set made up of: UNION(Value set: Medication Clinical General Drug OID: 2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.17 Value set: Medication Clinical Brand-specific Drug OID: 2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.5).),(Exclusion Criteria: none)</p>																																											
<p>This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190620.</p>																																											
<p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.4/expansion</p>																																											
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Code System</th><th>Code System OID</th><th>Print Name</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1000000</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 12.5 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000001</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000003</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG [Tribenzor]</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000005</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000009</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>dimethicone 100 MG/ML / Miconazole Nitrate 20 MG/ML / Zinc Oxide 100 MG/ML Topical Spray</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000012</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000013</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML Injectable Solution</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000014</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML</td></tr> <tr> <td>1000015</td><td>RxNorm</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88</td><td>western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML Injectable Solution</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name	1000000	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 12.5 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]	1000001	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet	1000003	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG [Tribenzor]	1000005	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]	1000009	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	dimethicone 100 MG/ML / Miconazole Nitrate 20 MG/ML / Zinc Oxide 100 MG/ML Topical Spray	1000012	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML	1000013	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML Injectable Solution	1000014	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML	1000015	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML Injectable Solution
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name																																								
1000000	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 12.5 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]																																								
1000001	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet																																								
1000003	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG [Tribenzor]																																								
1000005	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]																																								
1000009	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	dimethicone 100 MG/ML / Miconazole Nitrate 20 MG/ML / Zinc Oxide 100 MG/ML Topical Spray																																								
1000012	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML																																								
1000013	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML Injectable Solution																																								
1000014	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML																																								
1000015	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML Injectable Solution																																								

1000023	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	methenamine mandelate 100 MG/ML
...			

Table 347: Clinical Substance

Value Set: Clinical Substance urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.2 (Clinical Focus: Any substance that can be ordered or is included in a clinical record. This is not restricted to medications.),(Data Element Scope: Clinical Substance ManufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code/translation/),(Inclusion Criteria: As defined in grouped value sets),(Exclusion Criteria: No drug classes) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190620. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.2/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1000000	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 12.5 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]
1000001	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet
1000003	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG [Tribenzor]
1000005	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Amlodipine 5 MG / Hydrochlorothiazide 25 MG / Olmesartan medoxomil 40 MG Oral Tablet [Tribenzor]
1000009	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	dimethicone 100 MG/ML / Miconazole Nitrate 20 MG/ML / Zinc Oxide 100 MG/ML Topical Spray
1000012	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML
1000013	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	whole wheat allergenic extract 50 MG/ML Injectable Solution
1000014	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML
1000015	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	western wheatgrass pollen extract 10000 UNT/ML Injectable Solution
1000023	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	methenamine mandelate 100 MG/ML
...			

Figure 172: Medication Information (V2) Example

```
<manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
    <!-- ** Medication information ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4ee8" />
    <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="745679" displayName="200 ACTUAT Albuterol 0.09 MG/ACTUAT Metered Dose
Inhaler" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" codeSystemName="RxNorm" />
    </manufacturedMaterial>
    <manufacturerOrganization>
        <name>Medication Factory Inc.</name>
    </manufacturerOrganization>
</manufacturedProduct>
```

3.52 Medication Supply Order (V2)

[supply: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 348: Medication Supply Order (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional)	Medication Information (V2) (optional)
Medication Dispense (V2) (optional)	Instruction (V2) (optional)
Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (optional)

This template records the intent to supply a patient with medications.

Table 349: Medication Supply Order (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
supply (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7427	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SPLY
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7428	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = INT
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7429	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10507	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .17
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32578	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7430	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7432	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32362	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.15933 (ActStatus)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD	IVL_TS	1098-15143	
high	1..1	SHALL		1098-15144	
repeatNumber	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7434	
quantity	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7436	
product	0..1	MAY		1098-7439	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-16093	Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09
product	0..1	MAY		1098-9334	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-31695	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09
author	0..1	MAY		1098-7438	
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7442	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7444	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-	true

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				7445	
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31391	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "SPLY" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7427).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "INT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7428).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7429) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17" (CONF:1098-10507).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32578).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7430).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7432).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActStatus](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32362).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-15143) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1098-15144).

In "INT" (intent) mood, the repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times. In "EVN" (event) mood, the repeatNumber is the number of occurrences. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" in a substance administration event means that the current administration is the 3rd in a series.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1098-7434).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **quantity** (CONF:1098-7436).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **product** (CONF:1098-7439) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16093).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **product** (CONF:1098-9334) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31695).
 - i. A supply act **SHALL** contain one product/Medication Information *OR* one product/Immunization Medication Information template (CONF:1098-16870).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **author** (CONF:1098-7438).
12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7442).
 - a. The entryRelationship, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "SUBJ" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7444).

- b. The entryRelationship, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@inversionInd="true"** True (CONF:1098-7445).
- c. The entryRelationship, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Instruction** (**V2**) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31391).

Figure 173: Medication Supply Order (V2) Example

```

<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.17" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="aba2fc75-1a43-435f-8309-d24e4be5f1cd" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <low value="20070103" />
        <high nullFlavor="UNK" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <repeatNumber value="1" />
    <quantity value="75" />
    <product>
        <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23" extension="2014-06-09" />

            . . .
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </product>
    <author>

    . . .
</author>
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" extension="2014-06-09" />

        . . .
    </act>
</entryRelationship>
</supply>

```

3.53 Mental Status Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 350: Mental Status Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Mental Status Organizer (V3) (required) Mental Status Section (V2) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Assessment Scale Observation (optional) Author Participation (optional)

The Mental Status Observation template represents an observation about mental status that can come from a broad range of subjective and objective information (including measured data) to address those

categories described in the Mental Status Section. See also Assessment Scale Observation for specific collections of observations that together yield a summary evaluation of a particular condition.

Table 351: Mental Status Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14249	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14250	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14255	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14256	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .74
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32565	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-14257	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14591	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32788	373930000
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32789	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32790	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32791	75275-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32792	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14254	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19092	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-14261	
value	1..1	SHALL		1198-14263	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-14266	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-14469	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14595	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				14470	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69
referenceRange	0..*	MAY		1198-14267	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14249).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14250).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-14255) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" (CONF:1198-14256).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32565).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-14257).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-14591).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "373930000" Cognitive function (CONF:1198-32788).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-32789).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32790) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "75275-8" Cognitive Function (CONF:1198-32791).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32792).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-14254).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19092).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-14261).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1198-14263).
 - a. If xsi:type="CD", **SHOULD** contain a code from SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-14271).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-14266).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-14469) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "COMP" has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14595).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Assessment Scale Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1198-14470).

The referenceRange could be used to represent normal or expected capability for the mental function being evaluated.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **referenceRange** (CONF:1198-14267).

Figure 174: Mental Status Observation (V3) Example

```
<entry>
  <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Mental Status Organizer-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="a7bc1062-8649-42a0-833d-ekd65bd013c9" />
    <code code="75275-8"
          displayName="Cognitive function"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <component>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Mental Status Observation V3 -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        <code code="373930000" displayName="Cognitive function"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
          <translation code="75275-8"
                      displayName="Cognitive function"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                      codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
        </code>
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        ...
        <!-- Value element holds the Cognitive Function assessment -->
        ...
      </observation>
    </component>
    <component>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Mental Status Observation V3 -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        </observation>
    </component>
  </organizer>
</entry>
```

3.54 Mental Status Organizer (V3)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 352: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Mental Status Section (V2) (optional)	Mental Status Observation (V3) (required)

The Mental Status Organizer template may be used to group related Mental Status Observations (e.g., results of mental tests) and associated Assessment Scale Observations into subcategories and/or groupings by time. Subcategories can be things such as Mood and Affect, Behavior, Thought Process, Perception, Cognition, etc.

Table 353: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14369	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14371	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14375	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14376	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .75
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32566	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-14377	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14378	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14697	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14372	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19093	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32424	
component	1..*	SHALL		1198-14373	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14381	Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@classCode="CLUSTER"` Cluster (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-14369).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@moodCode="EVN"` Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14371).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `templateId` (CONF:1198-14375) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75"` (CONF:1198-14376).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@extension="2015-08-01"` (CONF:1198-32566).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] `id` (CONF:1198-14377).

The code selected indicates the category that groups the contained mental status observations (e.g., communication, learning and applying knowledge).

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `code` (CONF:1198-14378).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@code` (CONF:1198-14697).
 - i. **SHOULD** be selected from ICF (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.254) OR LOINC (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-14698).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `statusCode` (CONF:1198-14372).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@code="completed"` Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19093).

The effectiveTime is an interval that spans the effectiveTimes of the contained mental status observations. Because all contained mental status observations have a required time stamp, it is not required that this effectiveTime be populated.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] `effectiveTime` (CONF:1198-32424).
 - a. The Organizer **SHALL** have at least one of `code` or `effectiveTime` (CONF:1198-32426).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] `component` (CONF:1198-14373) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Observation \(v3\)](#) (`identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01`) (CONF:1198-14381).

Figure 175: Mental Status Organizer (V3) Example

```
<entry>
  <organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Mental Status Organizer V3-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.75" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="a7bc1062-8649-42a0-833d-ekd65bd013c9" />
    <code code="75275-8"
          displayName="Cognitive function"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <component>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Mental Status Observation V3-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        ...
        <code code="373930000" displayName="Cognitive function"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
          <translation code="75275-8"
                      displayName="Cognitive function"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                      codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
        </code>
        <statusCode code="completed"/>
        ...
        ...
        <!-- Value element holds the Cognitive Function assessment -->
        ...
      </observation>
    </component>
    <component>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Mental Status Observation V3 -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74" extension="2015-08-01" />
        ...
        ...
        </observation>
    </component>
  </organizer>
</entry>
```

3.55 Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2)

[supply: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 354: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Organizer (optional) Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Product Instance (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional)

This template represents equipment supplied to the patient (e.g., pumps, inhalers, wheelchairs). Devices applied to, or placed in, the patient are represented with the Product Instance entry contained within a Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii: 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14)

Table 355: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
supply (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8745	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SPLY
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8746	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 (MoodCodeEvnInt)
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8747	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10509	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32514	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8748	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8749	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32363	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.15933 (ActStatus)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD	IVL_TS	1098-15498	
quantity	0..1	SHOULD		1098-8751	
participant	0..1	MAY		1098-8752	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8754	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = PRD
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-15900	Product Instance (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-30277	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30278	SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-30279	TRUE
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31393	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="SPLY"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8745).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [MoodCodeEvnInt](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18 **STATIC** 2011-04-03 (CONF:1098-8746).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8747) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50" (CONF:1098-10509).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32514).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8748).
 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-8749).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActStatus](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32363).
 6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-15498).
 - a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] *high* (CONF:1098-16867).
 7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **quantity** (CONF:1098-8751).
 8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **participant** (CONF:1098-8752) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PRD" Product (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8754).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Product Instance](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37) (CONF:1098-15900).
 9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-30277) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" (CONF:1098-30278).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="TRUE" (CONF:1098-30279).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31393).

Figure 176: Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) Example

```
<supply classCode="SPLY" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Non-medicinal supply activity V2 template ***** -->
    <id root="39b5f1b4-a8e1-4ad7-8849-0deab10c97b1" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
        <high value="20130703" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <quantity value="1" />
    <participant typeCode="PRD">
        <participantRole classCode="MANU">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37" />
            <!-- Product instance template -->
            <id root="24993f33-6222-41ce-add6-37a9d3da6acb" />
            <playingDevice>
                <code code="14106009" displayName="cardiac pacemaker, device (physical
object)" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
                    <originalText>Cardiac Pacemaker</originalText>
                </code>
            </playingDevice>
            <scopingEntity>
                <id root="eb936010-7b17-11db-9fe1-0800200c9b65" />
                <desc>Good Health Durable Medical Equipment</desc>
            </scopingEntity>
        </participantRole>
    </participant>
</supply>
```

3.56 Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 356: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)	

This template represents the number of pressure ulcers observed at a particular stage.

Table 357: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14705	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14706	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14707	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14708	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .76
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32604	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-14709	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14767	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14768	2264892003
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32164	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32849	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32850	75277-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32851	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14714	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19108	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-14715	
value	1..1	SHALL	INT	1198-14771	
author	0..1	MAY		1198-14717	
entryRelationship	1..1	SHALL		1198-14718	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14719	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14720	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				14721	(HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-14722	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31930	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = ASSERTION
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-14725	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35 (Pressure Ulcer Stage)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14705).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14706).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-14707) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76"** (CONF:1198-14708).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32604).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-14709).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-14767).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="2264892003"** Number of pressure ulcers (CONF:1198-14768).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32164).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32849) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="75277-4"** Number of pressure ulcers (CONF:1198-32850).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32851).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-14714).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19108).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-14715).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with **@xsi:type="INT"** (CONF:1198-14771).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **author** (CONF:1198-14717).
10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-14718) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SUBJ"** Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14719).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observation** (CONF:1198-14720).

- i. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14721).
- ii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-14722).
- iii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1198-31930).
- iv. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Pressure Ulcer Stage](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-14725).

Table 358: Pressure Ulcer Stage

Value Set: Pressure Ulcer Stage urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35 (Clinical Focus: Pressure Injury (ulcer) stages),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190319.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
420324007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pressure ulcer stage 2 (disorder)
420597008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pressure ulcer stage 4 (disorder)
421076008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pressure ulcer stage 1 (disorder)
421594008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nonstageable pressure ulcer (disorder)
421927004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pressure ulcer stage 3 (disorder)
723071003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pressure injury of deep tissue (disorder)

Figure 177: Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) Example

```
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Number of Pressure Ulcers -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76" extension="2015-08-01"/>
        <id root="08edb7c0-2111-43f2-a784-9a5fdfaa67f0" />
        <code code="2264892003" displayName="Number of pressure ulcers"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT">
            <translation code="75277-4"
                         displayName="Number of pressure ulcers"
                         codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                         codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
        </code>
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <value xsi:type="INT" value="3" />
        <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
                <value xsi:type="CD" code="421927004" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayName="Pressure ulcer stage 3" />
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
```

3.57 Nutrition Assessment

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138 (open)]

Table 359: Nutrition Assessment Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Nutritional Status Observation (required) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents the patient's nutrition abilities and habits including intake, diet requirements or diet followed.

Table 360: Nutrition Assessment Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32914	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32915	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-32916	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32917	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .138
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32918	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32919	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32926	75303-8
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32927	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32920	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32921	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-32923	
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-32922	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32924	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-32914).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-32915).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-32916) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138" (CONF:1098-32917).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-32918).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-32919).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75303-8" Nutrition assessment (CONF:1098-32926).

- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32927).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-32920).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-32921).
- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32923).
- 8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-32922).
 - a. If xsi:type="CD", **SHOULD** contain a code from SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-32925).
- 9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32924).

Figure 178: Nutrition Assessment Example

```

<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Nutrition Assessment** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138" />
    <id root="ab1791b0-5c71-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="75303-8"
      displayName="Nutrition assessment"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130512" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="437421000124105"
      displayName="Decreased sodium diet (regime/therapy)"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
      <time value="201300512" />
      ...
    </author>
  </observation>
</entryRelationship>

```

3.58 Nutrition Recommendation

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130 (open)]

Table 361: Nutrition Recommendation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional)

This template represents nutrition regimens (e.g., fluid restrictions, calorie minimum), interventions (e.g., NPO, nutritional supplements), and procedures (e.g., G-Tube by bolus, TPN by central line). It may also depict the need for nutrition education.

Table 362: Nutrition Recommendation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30385	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30386	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 (Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30340	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30341	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30342	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.9 (Nutrition Recommendations)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31697	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31698	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31699	
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32382	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32928	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1098-32383	Planned Encounter (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32384	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32929	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-32385	Planned Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32386	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32930	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32387	Planned Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32388	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-32389	Planned Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32390	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32932	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1098-32391	Planned Supply (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32632	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32933	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32633	Planned Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ACT" act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-30385).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(Act/Encounter/Procedure\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 STATIC 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-30386).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-30340) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130" (CONF:1098-30341).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Nutrition Recommendations](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.9 DYNAMIC (CONF:1098-30342).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-31697).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31698).

The effectiveTime indicates the time when the activity is intended to take place.

6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-31699).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] entryRelationship (CONF:1098-32382) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32928).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Encounter \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32383).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32384) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32929).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Medication Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32385).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32386) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32930).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32387).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32388) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32931).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32389).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32390) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32932).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Supply \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32391).
12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32632) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32933).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32633).

Table 363: Nutrition Recommendations

Value Set: Nutrition Recommendations urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.9 (Clinical Focus: Types of nutritional regimes, therapies or interventions.),(Data Element Scope: @Code in Nutrition Recommendation template C-CDA r2.1 [act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130 (open)]),(Inclusion Criteria: Specified codes for high level types of nutritional regimes),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.9/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
182922004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dietary regime (regime/therapy)
225372007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Total parenteral nutrition (regime/therapy)
229912004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Enteral feeding (regime/therapy)
386373004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nutrition therapy (regime/therapy)
413315001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nutrition / feeding management (regime/therapy)
418995006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Feeding regime (regime/therapy)
42846100012 4101	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Referral to nutrition professional (procedure)
43569100012 4100	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Diet modified for specific foods or ingredients (regime/therapy)
44104100012 4100	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Counseling about nutrition (procedure)
448556005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Oral nutritional support (regime/therapy)
...			

Table 364: Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure)

Value Set: Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 This value set is used to restrict the moodCode on an act, an encounter or a procedure to future moods Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Intent
ARQ	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Appointment Request
PRMS	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Promise
PRP	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Proposal
RQO	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Request
APT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Appointment

Figure 179: Nutrition Recommendation Example

```

<entry>
  <act moodCode="INT" classCode="ACT">
    <!-- Nutrition Recommendation ACT-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130" />
    <id root="9a6d1bac-17d3-4195-89a4-1121bc809a5c" />
    <code code="61310001"
      displayName="nutrition education"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130512" />
  </act>
</entry>

```

3.59 Nutritional Status Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124 (open)]

Table 365: Nutritional Status Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Nutrition Section (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Nutrition Assessment (required)

This template describes the overall nutritional status of the patient including findings related to nutritional status.

Table 366: Nutritional Status Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29841	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29842	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29843	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29844	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .124
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-29845	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29846	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29897	75305-3
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-29898	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29852	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29853	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31867	
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-29854	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.7 (Nutritional Status)
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1098-30323	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30335	SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-30336	Nutrition Assessment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29841).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29842).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-29843) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124" (CONF:1098-29844).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-29845).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-29846).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75305-3" Nutrition status (CONF:1098-29897).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-29898).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-29852).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29853).
 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31867).
 8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Nutritional Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.7 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-29854).
 9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-30323) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CONF:1098-30335).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Nutrition Assessment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138) (CONF:1098-30336).

Table 367: Nutritional Status

Value Set: Nutritional Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.7 (Clinical Focus: A Value Set of SNOMED-CT codes representing nutrition problems.),(Data Element Scope: Condition),(Inclusion Criteria: Individually identified conditions that in some way may provide insight into the patient's nutritional status.),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.7/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
105726004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Age AND/OR growth finding (finding)
107647005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Weight finding (finding)
129689002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	At risk for nutritional problem (finding)
129845004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	At risk for imbalanced nutrition, less than body requirements (finding)
162020001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Difficulty chewing (finding)
1881003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Increased nutritional requirement (finding)
206568009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Difficulty in feeding at breast (finding)
248324001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Well nourished (finding)
284670008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nutritionally compromised (finding)
288939007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Difficulty swallowing (finding)
...			

Figure 180: Nutritional Status Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Nutritional Status Observation -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124" />
    <id root="c12ecaaf-53f8-4593-8f79-359aeaaa3948b" />
    <code code="75305-3"
        displayName="Nutrition status"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC">
        <originalText>Nutritional Status</originalText>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130512" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="248324001"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
        codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT"
        displayName="well nourished" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN" >
            <!-- ** Nutrition Assessment** -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138" />
            ...
        </observation>

        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN" >
            <!-- ** Nutrition Assessment** -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138" />
            ...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>
```

3.60 Outcome Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.144 (open)]

Table 368: Outcome Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Status Evaluations and Outcomes Section (required)	Progress Toward Goal Observation (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) External Document Reference (optional)

This template represents the outcome of care resulting from the interventions used to treat the patient. In the Care Planning workflow, the judgment about how well the person is progressing towards the goal is based on the observations made about the status of the patient with respect to interventions performed in the pursuit of achieving that goal.

Often thought of as an "actual outcome", the Outcome Observation may be related to goals, progression toward goals, and the associated interventions. For example, an observation outcome of a blood oxygen saturation level of 95% is related to the goal of "Maintain Pulse Ox greater than 92",

which in turn is related to the health concern of respiratory insufficiency and the problem of pneumonia. The template makes use of the Entry Reference (templateId:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) to reference the interventions and goals defined elsewhere in the Care Plan CDA instance.

Table 369: Outcome Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.144)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31219	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31220	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31221	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31222	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .144
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31223	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32746	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32747	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31553	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31224	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31225	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = GEVL
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32465	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31427	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31428	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-31429	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31430	Progress Toward Goal Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.110)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31688	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31689	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31690	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.122)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
reference	0..*	MAY		1098-32763	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32764	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1098-32765	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31219).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31220).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-31221) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.144" (CONF:1098-31222).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31223).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from CodeSystem LOINC (urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32746).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** (CONF:1098-32747).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31553).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between an Outcome Observation and a Goal Observation. Because the Goal Observation is already described in the CDA document instance's Goals section, rather than repeating the full content of the Goal Observation, the Entry Reference template can be used to reference this entry.

8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31224) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "GEVL" Evaluates goal (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31225).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Entry Reference** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1098-32465).
 - c. This entryReference template **SHALL** reference an instance of a Goal Observation template (CONF:1098-32461).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between an Outcome Observation and a Progress Toward Goal Observation (Outcome Observation SUPPORTS Progress Toward Goal Observation). In the Care Planning workflow, the judgment about how well the person is progressing towards the goal is based on the observations made about the status of the patient with respect to interventions performed in the pursuit of achieving that goal.

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31427) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31428).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" (CONF:1098-31429).
- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Progress Toward Goal Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110) (CONF:1098-31430).

Where an Outcome Observation needs to reference an Intervention Act already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the Intervention Act, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31688) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31689).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1098-31690).
 - c. This entryReference template **SHALL** reference an instance of a Intervention Act template (CONF:1098-32462).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1098-32763).
 - a. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32764).
 - b. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [External Document Reference](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32765).
12. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] entryRelationships (CONF:1098-32782).

Figure 181: Outcome Observation Example

```
<!-- Outcome Observation -->
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.144" />
  <id root="0aaaal23-24e2-46b3-9d49-6b753c712dec" />
  <code code="44616-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Pulse oximetry panel" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <effectiveTime value="20130806" />
  <value xsi:type="PQ" value="95" unit="%" />
  <author>
    ...
  </author>
  <!-- This Outcome Observation EVALUATES a Goal
(Pulse ox reading of 95 evaluates the goal of Pulse ox reading > 92) -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="GEVL">
    ...
  </entryRelationship>
  <!-- This Outcome Observation SUPPORTS the Progress Toward Goal Observation -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SPRT" inversionInd="true">
    ...
  </entryRelationship>
</observation>
```

3.61 Patient Referral Act

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140 (open)]

Table 370: Patient Referral Act Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Reason for Referral Section (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This template represents the type of referral (e.g., for dental care, to a specialist, for aging problems) and represents whether the referral is for full care or shared care. It may contain a reference to another act in the document instance representing the clinical reason for the referral (e.g., problem, concern, procedure).

Table 371: Patient Referral Act Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30884	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PCPR
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30885	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.66 (Patient Referral Act moodCode)
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30886	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30887	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-30888	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30889	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56 (Referral Types)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30892	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31598	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-30893	
priorityCode	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32623	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31612	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-32635	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32638	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFT
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-32636	
code	0..1	MAY		1098-32637	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31604	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31613	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31605	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31606	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31607	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = RQO
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31608	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31619	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31620	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31614	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31615	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
priorityCode	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32443	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.16866 (ActPriority)
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-31611	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.61 (Care Model)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31635	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31636	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32634	Indication (V2) /identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="PCPR" provision of care (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-30884).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Patient Referral Act moodCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.66 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-30885).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30886) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140" (CONF:1098-30887).

In the case of a Consultation Note where this referral is being fulfilled by this consultation, this id would be referenced in the inFullfilmentOf/order/id of the Consultation Note.

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-30888).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Referral Types](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-30889).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30892).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31598).

The effectiveTime represents the time when the future referral is intended to take place.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30893).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **priorityCode** (CONF:1098-32623).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31612).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-32635).
 - a. The participant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="REFT"** Referred to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32638).
 - b. The participant, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1098-32636).
 - i. This participantRole **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet **Healthcare Provider Taxonomy** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32637).

The following entryRelationship represents whether the referral is for full or shared care.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31604) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SUBJ"** has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31613).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observation** (CONF:1098-31605).
 - i. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31606).
 - ii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="RQO"** request (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31607).
 - iii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31608).
 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ASSERTION"** assertion (CONF:1098-31619).
 2. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-31620).
 - iv. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31614).
 1. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31615).
 - v. This observation **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **priorityCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet **ActPriority** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32443).
 - vi. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with **@xsi:type="CD"**, where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet **Care Model** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.61 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31611).

The following entryRelationship represents a reference to another act in the document instance representing the clinical reason for the referral (e.g., problem, concern, procedure).

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31635) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31636).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32634).

Table 372: Patient Referral Act moodCode

Value Set: Patient Referral Act moodCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.66 Contains all the moodCode values it is possible to have for an Patient Referral Act. Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Intent
RQO	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Request

Table 373: Referral Types

Value Set: Referral Types urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56 (Clinical Focus: Concepts representing procedures that characterize a patient referral),(Data Element Scope: C-CDA r2.1 @code in Patient Referral Act [act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140 (open)] DYNAMIC),(Inclusion Criteria: SNOMED CT codes descending from "3457005" patient referral (procedure)),(Exclusion Criteria: only as in inclusion) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190416. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
103696004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to specialist (procedure)
103697008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral for dental care (procedure)
103698003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to non-physician provider (procedure)
103699006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to dietitian (procedure)
103700007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to massage therapist (procedure)
103701006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to homeopath (procedure)
103702004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to naturopath (procedure)
103703009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to acupuncturist (procedure)
103704003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Patient referral to sex therapist (procedure)
105406002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Referral of patient to certified pastoral caregiver (procedure)
...			

Table 374: Care Model

Value Set: Care Model urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.61 (Clinical Focus: Concepts representing care management styles),(Data Element Scope: Finding),(Inclusion Criteria: A value set of SNOMED-CT codes representing care management styles (e.g., shared care, full care) descending from "170932006" "Chronic disease - care arrangement".),(Exclusion Criteria: none) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.61/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
170935008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Full care by hospice (finding)
170936009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Shared care - hospice and general practitioner (finding)
170937000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Shared care: district nurse and general practitioner (finding)
170939002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Full care: nurse practitioner (finding)
170940000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Shared care: practice nurse and general practitioner (finding)
170941001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Full care by general practitioner (finding)
268528005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Full care by specialist (finding)
268529002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Shared care - consultant and general practitioner (finding)
370985002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Care by local physician (finding)

Table 375: ActPriority

Value Set: ActPriority urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866

(Clinical Focus: The urgency under which the Act happened, can happen, is happening, is intended to happen, or is requested/demanded to happen.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: All members of system 2.16.840.1.113883.5.7),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
A	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	ASAP
CR	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	callback results
CS	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	callback for scheduling
CSP	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	callback placer for scheduling
CSR	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	contact recipient for scheduling
EL	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	elective
EM	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	emergency
P	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	preop
PRN	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	as needed
R	HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7	routine
...			

Figure 182: Patient Referral Act Example

```
<entry>
  <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
    <!--Patient Referral Act-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.140" />
    <id root="70bdd7db-e02d-4eff-9829-35e3b7d9e154" />
    <code code="44383000" displayName="Patient referral for consultation"
codeSystemName="SNOMED" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130311" />
    <priorityCode code="A"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.7"
      codeSystemName="ActPriority"
      displayName="ASAP" />
    <author>
      <time value="200130311" />
      <assignedAuthor>
        <id extension="KP00017" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
        <addr>
          <streetAddressLine>1003 Health Care
            Drive</streetAddressLine>
          <city>Ann Arbor</city>
          <state>MI</state>
          <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
          <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:(555)555-1003" />
        <assignedPerson>
          <name>
            <given>Assigned</given>
            <family>Amanda</family>
          </name>
        </assignedPerson>
      </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <value xsi:type="CD" code="268528005" displayName="full care by specialist"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </act>
</entry>
```

3.62 Planned Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 376: Planned Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Assessment and Plan Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This template represents planned acts that are not classified as an observation or a procedure according to the HL7 RIM. Examples of these acts are a dressing change, the teaching or feeding of a patient or the providing of comfort measures.

The priority of the activity to the patient and provider is communicated through Priority Preference. The effectiveTime indicates the time when the activity is intended to take place.

Table 377: Planned Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8538	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8539	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 (Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30430	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30431	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32552	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8546	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31687	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30432	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32019	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30433	
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-30435	
author	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32020	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31067	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31068	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31069	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32021	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32022	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32023	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32024	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32025	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32026	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8538).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(Act/Encounter/Procedure\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-8539).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30430) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39" (CONF:1098-30431).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32552).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8546).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31687).
 - a. This code in a Planned Act **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) OR SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-32030).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30432).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32019).

The effectiveTime in a planned act represents the time that the act should occur.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30433).

The clinician who is expected to carry out the act could be identified using act/performer.

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-30435).

The author in a planned act represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the act.

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32020).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the activity.

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31067) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31068).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31069).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the act.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32021) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32022).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32023).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned act.

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32024) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32025).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Instruction (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32026).

Figure 183: Planned Act (V2) Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="7658963e-54da-496f-bf18-de1ddaa3b0" />
    <code code="423171007" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
displayName="Elevate head of bed" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130902" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <!-- Author Participation -->
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Patient Priority Preference -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Provider Priority Preference -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Indication (V2) -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <!-- Instruction (V2) -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <!-- Planned Coverage -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
</act>
```

3.63 Planned Coverage

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129 (open)]

Table 378: Planned Coverage Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents the insurance coverage intended to cover an act or procedure.

Table 379: Planned Coverage Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31945	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31946	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = INT
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31947	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31948	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .129
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31950	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31951	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31952	48768-6
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31953	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31954	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31955	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = active
author	0..*	MAY		1098-32178	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	1..1	SHALL		1098-31967	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31968	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31969	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31970	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31971	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = INT
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31972	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31973	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.3591 (Payer)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31974	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31975	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = active

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" act (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-31945).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "INT" Intent (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31946).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-31947) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129" (CONF:1098-31948).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31950).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31951).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "48768-6" Payment Sources (CONF:1098-31952).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31953).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31954).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-31955).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32178).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31967) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "COMP" has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31968).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **act** (CONF:1098-31969).
 - i. This act **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" ACT (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31970).
 - ii. This act **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "INT" intent (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31971).

These act/identifiers are unique identifiers for the policy or program providing the coverage.

- iii. This act **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31972).
- iv. This act **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Payer** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.3591 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31973).
- v. This act **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31974).
 1. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31975).

Table 380: Payer

Value Set: Payer urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.3591 A value set of Public Health Data Standards Consortium Source of Payment Typology Version 3.0 Codes Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	MEDICARE
11	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare (Managed Care)
111	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare HMO
112	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare PPO
113	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare POS
119	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare Managed Care Other
12	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare (Non-managed Care)
121	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare FFS
122	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare Drug Benefit
123	Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.22 1.5	Medicare Medical Savings Account (MSA)
...			

Figure 184: Planned Coverage Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129" />
    <id root="03f5e10b-7e79-4610-9626-d2984ff10cc1" />
    <code code="48768-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayNames="Payment Sources" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
            <!-- These act/identifiers are unique identifiers
for the policy or program providing the coverage. -->
            <id root="4c9a3be1-5f09-46dd-88e7-14c8ec612e4c" />
            <code code="111" displayName="Medicare HMO"
                  codeSystemName="Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.221.5" />
            <statusCode code="active" />
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.64 Planned Encounter (V2)

[encounter: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 381: Planned Encounter (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Service Delivery Location (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This template represents a planned or ordered encounter. The type of encounter (e.g., comprehensive outpatient visit) is represented. Clinicians participating in the encounter and the location of the planned encounter may be captured. The priority that the patient and providers place on the encounter may be represented.

Table 382: Planned Encounter (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
encounter (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8564	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ENC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8565	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 (Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30437	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30438	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32553	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8567	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31032	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52 (Encounter Planned)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30439	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31880	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30440	
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-30442	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-31874	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32045	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-30443	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31875	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = LOC
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-31876	Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-31033	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31034	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31035	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.33

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					20.22.4.143
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31877	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31878	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31879	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="ENC" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8564).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(Act/Encounter/Procedure\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-8565).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30437) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40" (CONF:1098-30438).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32553).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8567).

Records the type of encounter ordered or recommended.

5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Encounter Planned](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31032).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30439).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31880).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30440).

Performers represent clinicians who are responsible for assessing and treating the patient.

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-30442) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-31874).

The author in a planned encounter represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the encounter.

9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32045).

This location participation captures where the planned or ordered encounter may take place.

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-30443) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="LOC" Location (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90) (CONF:1098-31875).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Service Delivery Location](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32) (CONF:1098-31876).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the encounter.

11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31033) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31034).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31035).

The following entryRelationship captures the reason for the planned or ordered encounter

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31877) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31878).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31879).

Table 383: Encounter Planned

<p>Value Set: Encounter Planned urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52 (Clinical Focus: Activities that represent planned patient encounters with clinicians),(Data Element Scope: encounter),(Inclusion Criteria: SNOMED-CT codes descending from "308335008" patient encounter procedure (procedure).),(Exclusion Criteria: unknown)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 10/25/2017 with a version of 20171016.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
108219001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Physician visit with evaluation AND/OR management service (procedure)
108220007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Evaluation AND/OR management - new patient (procedure)
108221006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Evaluation AND/OR management - established patient (procedure)
11429006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Consultation (procedure)
11797002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Telephone call by physician to patient or for consultation (procedure)
12566000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Consultation in computer dosimetry and isodose chart, teletherapy (procedure)
12586001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Physician direction of emergency medical systems (procedure)
12843005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Subsequent hospital visit by physician (procedure)
14736009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	History and physical examination with evaluation and management of patient (procedure)
15301000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Consultation in chemotherapy (procedure)
...			

Figure 185: Planned Encounter (V2) Example

```

<entry>
  <encounter moodCode="INT" classCode="ENC">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Planned Encounter V2 template -->
    <id root="9a6d1bac-17d3-4195-89a4-1121bc809b4d" />
    <code code="185349003" displayName="encounter for check-up (procedure)" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"> </code>
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130615" />
    <performer>
      <assignedEntity>
        ...
      </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Patient Priority Preference-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.142" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Provider Priority Preference-->
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </encounter>
</entry>

```

3.65 Planned Immunization Activity

[substanceAdministration: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120 (open)]

Table 384: Planned Immunization Activity Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Immunization Medication Information (V2) (required) Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (optional)

This template represents planned immunizations. Planned Immunization Activity is very similar to Planned Medication Activity with some key differences, for example, the drug code system is constrained to CVX codes.

The priority of the immunization activity to the patient and provider is communicated through Priority

Preference. The effectiveTime indicates the time when the immunization activity is intended to take place and authorTime indicates when the documentation of the plan occurred.

Table 385: Planned Immunization Activity Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
substanceAdministration (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32091	SBADM
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32097	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 (Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-32098	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32099	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32100	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32101	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32102	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-32103	
repeatNumber	0..1	MAY		1098-32126	
routeCode	0..1	MAY		1098-32127	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.7 (SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology)
translation	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32951	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 (Medication Route)
approachSiteCode	0..*	MAY		1098-32128	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
doseQuantity	0..1	MAY		1098-32129	
@unit	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32130	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
consumable	1..1	SHALL		1098-32131	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-32132	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09)
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-32104	
author	0..*	MAY		1098-32105	Author Participation (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32108	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32109	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32110	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32114	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32115	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32116	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32117	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32118	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32119	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
precondition	0..*	MAY		1098-32123	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32124	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = PRCN
criterion	1..1	SHALL		1098-32125	Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "SBADM" (CONF:1098-32091).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(SubstanceAdministration/Supply\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 STATIC 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-32097).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-32098) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120" (CONF:1098-32099).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32100).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-32101).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32102).

The effectiveTime in a planned immunization activity represents the time that the immunization activity should occur.

- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32103).

In a Planned Immunization Activity, repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times.

- 7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1098-32126).
- 8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **routeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32127).
 - a. The routeCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Route](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32951).
- 9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **approachSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32128).
- 10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **doseQuantity** (CONF:1098-32129).
 - a. The doseQuantity, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32130).
- 11. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consumable** (CONF:1098-32131).
 - a. This consumable **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier:
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32132).

The clinician who is expected to perform the planned immunization activity could be identified using substanceAdministration/performer.

- 12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-32104).

The author in a planned immunization activity represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the immunization activity.

- 13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32105).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the immunization activity.

- 14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32108) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32109).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier:
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-32110).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the immunization activity.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32114) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32115).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32116).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned immunization activity.

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32117) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32118).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Instruction (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32119).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **precondition** (CONF:1098-32123) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PRCN" Precondition (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32124).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Precondition for Substance Administration (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32125).

Table 386: Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply)

Value Set: Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 This value set is used to restrict the moodCode on a substance administration or a supply to future moods. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
--	--	--	--

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Intent
PRMS	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Promise
PRP	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Proposal
RQO	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Request

Figure 186: Planned Immunization Activity

```
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT">
    <!-- Planned Immunization Activity -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120" />
    <id root="81505d5e-2305-42b3-9273-f579d622000d" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS" value="20131115" />
    <repeatNumber value="1" />
    <routeCode code="IM" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.112"
codeSystemName="RouteOfAdministration" displayName="Intramuscular injection" />
    <consumable>
        <!-- Immunization Medication Information (V2) -->
    </consumable>
    <performer>
        ...
    </performer>
    <author>
        <!-- Author Participation -->
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Patient Priority Preference -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Provider Priority Preference -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Indication (V2) -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <!-- Instruction (V2) -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <precondition typeCode="PRCN">
        <!-- Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) -->
        ...
    </precondition>
</substanceAdministration>
```

3.66 Planned Intervention Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 387: Planned Intervention Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Interventions Section (V3) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Handoff Communication Participants (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) Entry Reference (required) External Document Reference (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)

This template represents a Planned Intervention Act. It is a wrapper for planned intervention-type activities considered to be parts of the same intervention. For example, an activity such as "elevate head of bed" combined with "provide humidified O₂ per nasal cannula" may be the interventions planned for a health concern of "respiratory insufficiency" in order to attempt to achieve a goal of "pulse oximetry greater than 92%". These intervention activities may be newly described or derived from a variety of sources within an EHR.

Interventions are actions taken to increase the likelihood of achieving the patient's or providers' goals. An Intervention Act should contain a reference to a Goal Observation representing the reason for the intervention.

Planned Intervention Acts can be related to each other or to Intervention Acts. (E.g., a Planned Intervention Act with moodCode of INT could be related to a series of Intervention Acts with moodCode of EVN, each having an effectiveTime containing the time of the intervention.)

All interventions referenced in a Planned Intervention Act must have moodCodes indicating that they are planned (have not yet occurred).

Table 388: Planned Intervention Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32678	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32679	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.54 (Planned Intervention moodCode)
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-32653	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-32680	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32912	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-32681	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32654	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32682	362956003
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32683	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32655	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32684	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1198-32723	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32719	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32652	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32685	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32677	Advance Directive Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32656	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32686	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Immunization Activity (V3)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32687	(identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32657	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32688	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-32689	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32658	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32690	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32691	Procedure Activity Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32659	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32692	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32693	Intervention Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32660	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32694	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32695	Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32661	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32696	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1198-32697	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32662	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32698	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-32699	Encounter Activity (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32663	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32957	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32701	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32664	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32702	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1198-32703	Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32665	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32704	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32705	Planned Act (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32666	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32706	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1198-32707	Planned Encounter (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32667	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32708	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32709	Planned Observation (V2) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32668	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32710	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1198-32711	Planned Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32669	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32712	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-32713	Planned Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32670	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32714	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
supply	1..1	SHALL		1198-32715	Planned Supply (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32671	
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32716	Nutrition Recommendation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32672	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32717	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32718	Entry Reference <a href;"="">(identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-32673	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32720	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Entry Reference <a href;"="">(identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32721	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32675	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32726	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32727	Handoff Communication Participants (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32676	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32728	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1198-32729	Planned Immunization Activity (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120)
reference	0..*	MAY		1198-32766	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32767	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-32768	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32678).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned Intervention moodCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.54 DYNAMIC (CONF:1198-32679).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-32653) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.146" (CONF:1198-32680).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32912).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32681).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-32654).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "362956003" procedure / intervention (navigational concept) (CONF:1198-32682).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-32683).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-32655).
 - a. This **statusCode** **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-32684).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-32723).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-32719).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32652) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32685).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Advance Directive Observation (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.48:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32677).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32656) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32686).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Immunization Activity (V3)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.52:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32687).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32657) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32688).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Medication Activity (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32689).
12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32658) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32690).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Procedure Activity Act (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32691).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Intervention Acts (Intervention RELATES TO Intervention).

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32659) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32692).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Intervention Act (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.131:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32693).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32660) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32694).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32695).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32661) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32696).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32697).
16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32662) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32698).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Activity \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.49:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32699).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32663) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32957).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32701).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32664) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32702).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Non-Medicinal Supply Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.50:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32703).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32665) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32704).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Act \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.39:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32705).
20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32666) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32706).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Encounter \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.40:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32707).
21. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32667) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32708).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32709).
22. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32668) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32710).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Procedure \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32711).
23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32669) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32712).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Medication Activity \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32713).
24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32670) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32714).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Supply \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32715).
25. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32671) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Recommendation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.130) (CONF:1198-32716).

Where an Intervention needs to reference another entry already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entry, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

26. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32672) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32717).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32718).

An Intervention Act SHALL reference a Goal Observation. Because the Goal Observation is already described in the CDA document instance's Goals section, rather than repeating the full

content of the Goal Observation, the Entry Reference template can be used to reference this entry. The following entryRelationship represents an Entry Reference to Goal Observation.

27. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32673) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32720).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32721).
 - c. This entryReference template **SHALL** reference an instance of a Goal Observation template (CONF:1198-32722).
28. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32675) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32726).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Handoff Communication Participants](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.141) (CONF:1198-32727).
29. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32676) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32728).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Immunization Activity](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.120) (CONF:1198-32729).
30. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1198-32766).
 - a. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32767).
 - b. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [External Document Reference](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32768).

Table 389: Planned Intervention moodCode

Value Set: Planned Intervention moodCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.54 Contains all the moodCode values it is possible to have for a Planned Intervention. Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
APT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Appointment
ARQ	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Appointment Request
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Intent
PRMS	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Promise
PRP	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Proposal
RQO	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Request

3.67 Planned Medication Activity (V2)

[substanceAdministration: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 390: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Medication Information (V2) (required) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (optional)

This template represents planned medication activities. The priority of the medication activity to the patient and provider is communicated through Priority Preference. The effectiveTime indicates the time when the medication activity is intended to take place. The authorTime indicates when the documentation of the plan occurred.

Table 391: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
substanceAdministration (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8572	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SBADM
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8573	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 (Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30465	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30466	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32557	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8575	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32087	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32088	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL	IVL_TS	1098-30468	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32944	
low	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32948	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-32949	
effectiveTime	1..1	SHOULD		1098-32943	
@operator	1..1	SHALL		1098-32945	A
repeatNumber	0..1	MAY		1098-32066	
routeCode	0..1	MAY		1098-32067	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.7 (SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology)
translation	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32952	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 (Medication Route)
approachSiteCode	0..*	MAY		1098-32078	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
doseQuantity	0..1	MAY		1098-32068	
@unit	0..1	SHOULD		1098-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1.1.12839

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32133	(UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
rateQuantity	0..1	MAY		1098-32079	
@unit	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32134	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
maxDoseQuantity	0..1	MAY		1098-32080	
administrationUnitCode	0..1	MAY		1098-32081	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1021.30 (AdministrationUnitDoseForm)
consumable	1..1	SHALL		1098-32082	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-32083	Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-30470	
author	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32046	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31104	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31105	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31106	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.143
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32069	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32070	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32071	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32072	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32073	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32074	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
precondition	0..*	MAY		1098-32084	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32085	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = PRCN
criterion	1..1	SHALL		1098-32086	Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="SBADM" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8572).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(SubstanceAdministration/Supply\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:1098-8573).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30465) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42" (CONF:1098-30466).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32557).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8575).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-32087).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32088).

The effectiveTime in a planned medication activity represents the time that the medication activity should occur.

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30468) such that it
 Note: This effectiveTime represents either the medication duration (i.e., the time the medication should be started and stopped) or the timestamp when the single-administration should occur.
 - a. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:1098-32944).
 Note: indicates a single-administration timestamp
 - b. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **low** (CONF:1098-32948).
 Note: indicates when medication started
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-32949).
 Note: indicates when medication stopped
 - d. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain either a low or a @value but not both (CONF:1098-32947).

The effectiveTime in a planned medication activity represents the time that the medication activity should occur.

7. **SHOULD** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32943) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@operator**="A" (CONF:1098-32945).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @xsi:type="PIVL_TS" or "EIVL_TS" (CONF:1098-32946).

In a Planned Medication Activity, repeatNumber defines the number of allowed administrations. For example, a repeatNumber of "3" means that the substance can be administered up to 3 times.

8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1098-32066).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **routeCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32067).
 - a. The routeCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Medication Route](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32952).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **approachSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32078).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **doseQuantity** (CONF:1098-32068).
 - a. The doseQuantity, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32133).
12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **rateQuantity** (CONF:1098-32079).
 - a. The rateQuantity, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32134).
13. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **maxDoseQuantity** (CONF:1098-32080).
14. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **administrationUnitCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [AdministrationUnitDoseForm](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32081).
15. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **consumable** (CONF:1098-32082).
 - a. This consumable **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32083).

The clinician who is expected to perform the medication activity could be identified using substanceAdministration/performer.

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-30470).

The author in a planned medication activity represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the medication activity.

17. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32046).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the planned medication activity.

18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31104) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31105).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31106).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the planned medication activity.

- 19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-32069) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32070).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32071).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned medication activity.

- 20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-32072) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32073).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32074).
- 21. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [precondition](#) (CONF:1098-32084).
 - a. The precondition, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="PRCN" Precondition (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32085).
 - b. The precondition, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Precondition for Substance Administration \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32086).

Figure 187: Planned Medication Activity (V2) Example

```

<substanceAdministration moodCode="INT" classCode="SBADM">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.42" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <!-- Planned Medication Activity (V2)-->
  <id root="cdbd33f0-6cde-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
  <text>Heparin 0.25 ml Prefilled Syringe</text>
  <statusCode code="active" />
  <!-- The effectiveTime in a planned medication activity
       represents the time that the medication activity should occur. -->
  <effectiveTime value="20130905" />
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
      <!-- Medication Information (V2) -->
      ...
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Patient Priority Preference-->
      ...
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <!-- Provider Priority Preference-->
      ...
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <!-- Indication (V2) -->
    ...
  </entryRelationship>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <!-- Instruction (V2) -->
    ...
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>

```

3.68 Planned Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 392: Planned Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Planned Coverage (optional)

This template represents planned observations that result in new information about the patient which cannot be classified as a procedure according to the HL7 RIM, i.e., procedures alter the patient's body. Examples of these observations are laboratory tests, diagnostic imaging tests, EEGs, and EKGs.

The importance of the planned observation to the patient and provider is communicated through Priority Preference. The `effectiveTime` indicates the time when the observation is intended to take place and `authorTime` indicates when the documentation of the plan occurred.

The Planned Observation template may also indicate the potential insurance coverage for the observation.

Table 393: Planned Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8581	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8582	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.25 (Planned moodCode (Observation))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30451	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30452	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32555	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8584	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31030	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30453	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32032	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30454	
value	0..1	MAY		1098-31031	
methodCode	0..1	MAY		1098-32043	
targetSiteCode	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32044	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8.8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-30456	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32033	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31073	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31074	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31075	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32034	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32035	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32036	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32037	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32038	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32039	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32040	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32041	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32042	Planned Coverage (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8581).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(Observation\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.25 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:1098-8582).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30451) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44"** (CONF:1098-30452).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32555).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8584).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from CodeSystem LOINC (urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31030).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30453).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="active"** Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32032).

The effectiveTime in a planned observation represents the time that the observation should occur.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30454).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** (CONF:1098-31031).

In a planned observation the provider may suggest that an observation should be performed using a particular method.

9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **methodCode** (CONF:1098-32043).

The targetSiteCode is used to identify the part of the body of concern for the planned observation.

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **targetSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32044).

The clinician who is expected to perform the observation could be identified using procedure/performer.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-30456).

The author in a planned observation represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the observation.

12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32033).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the observation.

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31073) such that it

a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31074).

b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31075).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the observation.

14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32034) such that it

a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32035).

b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32036).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned observation.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32037) such that it

a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32038).

b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32039).

The following entryRelationship represents the insurance coverage the patient may have for the observation.

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32040) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32041).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Coverage](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129) (CONF:1098-32042).

Table 394: Planned moodCode (Observation)

Value Set: Planned moodCode (Observation) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.25 This value set is used to restrict the moodCode on an Observation to future moods. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
INT	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Intent
PRMS	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Promise
PRP	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Proposal
RQO	HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.10 01	Request

Figure 188: Planned Observation (V2) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.44"
        extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="b52bee94-c34b-4e2c-8c15-5ad9d6def205" />
    <code code="59408-5"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        codeSystemName="LOINC"
        displayName="Oxygen saturation in Arterial blood by Pulse oximetry" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130903" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <!-- Author Participation -->
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Priority Preference -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Indication (V2) -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <!-- Instruction (V2) -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <!-- Planned Coverage -->
    ...
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>

```

3.69 Planned Procedure (V2)

[procedure: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 395: Planned Procedure (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Procedure Section (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Indication (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Planned Coverage (optional)

This template represents planned alterations of the patient's physical condition. Examples of such procedures are tracheostomy, knee replacement, and craniectomy. The priority of the procedure to the patient and provider is communicated through Priority Preference. The effectiveTime indicates the time

when the procedure is intended to take place and authorTime indicates when the documentation of the plan occurred. The Planned Procedure Template may also indicate the potential insurance coverage for the procedure.

Table 396: Planned Procedure (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
procedure (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8568	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PROC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8569	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 (Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30444	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30445	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32554	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8571	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31976	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30446	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31978	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30447	
methodCode	0..*	MAY		1098-31980	
targetSiteCode	0..*	MAY		1098-31981	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-30449	
author	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31979	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31079	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31080	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31081	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31982	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31983	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31984	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31985	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31986	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1.002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-31987	true
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31989	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31990	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31991	COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31992	Planned Coverage (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "PROC" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8568).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(Act/Encounter/Procedure\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:1098-8569).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30444) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41" (CONF:1098-30445).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32554).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8571).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31976).
 - a. The procedure/code in a planned procedure **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) OR SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96), and **MAY** be selected from CPT-4 (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12) OR ICD10 PCS (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.4) (CONF:1098-31977).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30446).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31978).

The effectiveTime in a planned procedure represents the time that the procedure should occur.

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30447).

In a planned procedure the provider may suggest that a procedure should be performed using a particular method.

MethodCode *SHALL NOT* conflict with the method inherent in Procedure / code.

8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **methodCode** (CONF:1098-31980).

The targetSiteCode is used to identify the part of the body of concern for the planned procedure.

9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **targetSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31981).

The clinician who is expected to perform the procedure could be identified using procedure/performer.

10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-30449).

The author in a planned procedure represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the procedure.

11. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31979).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the procedure.

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31079) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31080).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31081).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the procedure.

13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31982) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31983).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31984).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned procedure.

14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31985) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31986).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-31987).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31989).

The following entryRelationship represents the insurance coverage the patient may have for the procedure.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-31990) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CONF:1098-31991).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Planned Coverage (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129) (CONF:1098-31992).

Figure 189: Planned Procedure (V2) Example

```
<entry>
  <procedure moodCode="RQO" classCode="PROC">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.41" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- **Planned Procedure (V2) template -->
    <id root="9a6d1bac-17d3-4195-89c4-1121bc809b5a" />
    <code code="73761001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT" displayName="Colonoscopy" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130613" />
    <!-- Author Participation -->
    <author typeCode="AUT">
      ...
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Patient Priority Preference-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.142" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Provider Priority Preference-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Indication-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
        <!-- Instruction-->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" extension="2014-06-09"
/>
        ...
      </act>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <observation classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
        <!-- Planned Coverage -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </procedure>
</entry>
```

3.70 Planned Supply (V2)

[supply: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 397: Planned Supply (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Plan of Treatment Section (V2) (optional) Nutrition Recommendation (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Product Instance (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Medication Information (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Immunization Medication Information (V2) (optional) Planned Coverage (optional)

This template represents both medicinal and non-medicinal supplies ordered, requested, or intended for the patient (e.g., medication prescription, order for wheelchair). The importance of the supply order or request to the patient and provider may be indicated in the Priority Preference.

The effective time indicates the time when the supply is intended to take place and author time indicates when the documentation of the plan occurred. The Planned Supply template may also indicate the potential insurance coverage for the procedure.

Depending on the type of supply, the product or participant will be either a Medication Information product (medication), an Immunization Medication Information product (immunization), or a Product Instance participant (device/equipment).

Table 398: Planned Supply (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
supply (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8577	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = SPLY
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8578	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 (Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply))
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30463	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30464	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32556	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8580	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30458	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32047	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = active
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30459	
repeatNumber	0..1	MAY		1098-32063	
quantity	0..1	MAY		1098-32064	
product	0..1	MAY		1098-32049	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-32050	Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09)
product	0..1	MAY		1098-32051	
manufacturedProduct	1..1	SHALL		1098-32052	Immunization Medication Information (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09)
product	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32325	
performer	0..*	MAY		1098-32048	
author	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31129	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..1	MAY		1098-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32094	
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-32095	Product Instance (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-31110	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31111	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-31112	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32054	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32055	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32056	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32057	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32058	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32059	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32060	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32061	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-32062	Planned Coverage (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "SPLY" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8577).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Planned moodCode \(SubstanceAdministration/Supply\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:1098-8578).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30463) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43" (CONF:1098-30464).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32556).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8580).

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-30458).
 - a. This **statusCode** **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**="active" Active (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32047).

The effectiveTime in a planned supply represents the time that the supply should occur.

6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-30459).

In a Planned Supply, repeatNumber indicates the number of times the supply event can occur. For example, if a medication is filled at a pharmacy and the prescription may be refilled 3 more times, the supply RepeatNumber equals 4.

7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **repeatNumber** (CONF:1098-32063).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **quantity** (CONF:1098-32064).

This product represents medication that is ordered, requested or intended for the patient.

9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **product** (CONF:1098-32049) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32050).
 - b. If the product is Medication Information (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23.2) then the product **SHALL NOT** be Immunization Medication Information (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54.2) and the participant **SHALL NOT** be Product Instance (CONF:1098-32092).

This product represents immunization medication that is ordered, requested or intended for the patient.

10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **product** (CONF:1098-32051) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Immunization Medication Information \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32052).
 - b. If the product is Medication Information (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23.2) then the product **SHALL NOT** be Immunization Medication Information (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54.2) and the participant **SHALL NOT** be Product Instance (CONF:1098-32093).

A product is recommended or even required under certain implementations. This IG makes product as recommended (SHOULD).

11. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **product** (CONF:1098-32325).

The clinician who is expected to perform the supply could be identified using supply/performer.

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-32048).

The author in a supply represents the clinician who is requesting or planning the supply.

13. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31129).

This participant represents a device that is ordered, requested or intended for the patient.

14. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **participant** (CONF:1098-32094) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Product Instance](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37) (CONF:1098-32095).
- b. If the participant is Product Instance then the product **SHALL NOT** be Medication Information (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23.2) and the product **SHALL NOT** be Immunization Medication Information (V2) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.54.2) (CONF:1098-32096).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that a patient or a provider places on the supply.

15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-31110) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-31111).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1098-31112).

The following entryRelationship represents the indication for the supply.

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-32054) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32055).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32056).

The following entryRelationship captures any instructions associated with the planned supply.

17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-32057) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32058).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32059).

The following entryRelationship represents the insurance coverage the patient may have for the supply.

18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] [entryRelationship](#) (CONF:1098-32060) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32061).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Planned Coverage](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.129) (CONF:1098-32062).

Figure 190: Planned Supply (V2) Example

```

<supply moodCode="INT" classCode="SPLY">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.43" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <!-- Planned Supply (V2) -->
    <id root="9a6d1bac-17d3-4195-89c4-1121bc809b5d" />
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <!-- The effectiveTime in a planned supply represents
        the time that the supply should occur. -->
    <effectiveTime value="20130615" />
    <repeatNumber value="1" />
    <quantity value="3" />
    <!-- This product represents medication that is ordered,
        requested or intended for the patient. -->
    <product>
        <manufacturedProduct classCode="MANU">
            <!-- Medication Information (V2) -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.23" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <id root="2a620155-9d11-439e-92b3-5d9815ff4ee8" />
            <manufacturedMaterial>
                <code code="573621" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88"
displayName="Proventil 0.09 MG/ACTUAT inhalant solution">
                    <originalText>
                        <reference value="#MedSec_1" />
                    </originalText>
                    <translation code="573621" displayName="Proventil 0.09 MG/ACTUAT
inhalant solution" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88" codeSystemName="RxNorm" />
                </code>
            </manufacturedMaterial>
            <manufacturerOrganization>
                <name>Medication Factory Inc.</name>
            </manufacturerOrganization>
        </manufacturedProduct>
    </product>
    <!-- The clinician who is expected to perform the supply
        could be identified using supply/performer. -->
    <performer>
        ...
    </performer>
    <!-- The author in a supply represents the clinician
        who is requesting or planning the supply. -->
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        ...
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Patient Priority Preference -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Provider Priority Preference -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <!-- Indication (V2) -->
        ...
    </entryRelationship>

```

```

</entryRelationship>
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <!-- Instruction (V2) -->
    ...
    ...
    ...
</entryRelationship>
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <!-- Planned Coverage -->
    ...
    ...
</entryRelationship>
</supply>

```

3.71 Policy Activity (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 399: Policy Activity (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Coverage Activity (V3) (required)	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (optional)

A policy activity represents the policy or program providing the coverage. The person for whom payment is being provided (i.e., the patient) is the covered party. The subscriber of the policy or program is represented as a participant that is the holder of the coverage. The payer is represented as the performer of the policy activity.

Table 400: Policy Activity (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8898	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8899	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8900	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10516	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .61
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32595	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8901	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8903	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.5.2 (Health Insurance Type)
translation	1..*	SHALL		1198-32852	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.1 1.3591 (Payer)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8902	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19109	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
performer	1..1	SHALL		1198-8906	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8907	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = PRF
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16808	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16809	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .87
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-8908	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8909	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8914	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-15992	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.10416 (Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set)
addr	0..1	MAY		1198-8910	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
telecom	0..*	MAY		1198-8911	
representedOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8912	
name	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8913	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8961	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = PRF
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16810	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16811	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.88
time	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8963	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1198-8962	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8968	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-16096	GUAR
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32165	2.16.840.1.113883.5.110
addr	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8964	US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2)
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		1198-8965	
participant	1..1	SHALL		1198-8916	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8917	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = COV
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16812	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16814	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.89
time	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8918	
low	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8919	
high	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8920	
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-8921	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8922	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8923	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1198-16078	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.18877 (Coverage Role Type Value Set)
addr	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8956	
playingEntity	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8932	
name	1..*	SHALL		1198-8930	
sdtc:birthTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-31344	
participant	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8934	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8935	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = HLD
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16813	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16815	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.90
time	0..1	MAY		1198-8938	
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1198-8936	
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8937	
addr	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8925	
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-8939	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8940	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8898).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8899).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8900) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61"** (CONF:1198-10516).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32595).

This id is a unique identifier for the policy or program providing the coverage

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8901).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Health Insurance Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.5.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8903).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **translation**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Payer](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.3591 (CONF:1198-32852).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8902).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19109).

This performer represents the Payer.

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **performer** (CONF:1198-8906) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="PRF"** Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8907).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16808).
 - i. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.87"** Payer Performer (CONF:1198-16809).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-8908).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8909).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8914).
 1. The code, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10416 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-15992).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-8910).
 - iv. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-8911).
 - v. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1198-8912).
 1. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **name** (CONF:1198-8913).

This performer represents the Guarantor.

8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer="PRF"** Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8961) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16810).

- i. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.88" Guarantor Performer (CONF:1198-16811).
 - b. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **time** (CONF:1198-8963).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1198-8962).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8968).
 - 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="GUAR" Guarantor (CONF:1198-16096).
 - 2. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.110" (CONF:1198-32165).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] [US Realm Address \(AD.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-8964).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1198-8965).
 - iv. **SHOULD** include assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name AND/OR assignedEntity/representedOrganization/name (CONF:1198-8967).
9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participant** (CONF:1198-8916) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COV" Coverage target (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8917).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16812).
 - i. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.89" Covered Party Participant (CONF:1198-16814).
 - c. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **time** (CONF:1198-8918).
 - i. The time, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **low** (CONF:1198-8919).
 - ii. The time, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1198-8920).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1198-8921).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8922).
 - 1. This id is a unique identifier for the covered party member. Implementers **SHOULD** use the same GUID for each instance of a member identifier from the same health plan (CONF:1198-8984).
 - ii. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-8923).
 - 1. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Coverage Role Type Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.18877 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-16078).
 - iii. This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **addr** (CONF:1198-8956).

1. The content of addr **SHALL** be a conformant US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-10484).
- iv. This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1198-8932).

If the covered party's name is recorded differently in the health plan and in the registration/pharmacy benefit summary (due to marriage or for other reasons), use the name as it is recorded in the health plan.

1. The playingEntity, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **name** (CONF:1198-8930).

If the covered party's date of birth is recorded differently in the health plan and in the registration/pharmacy benefit summary, use the date of birth as it is recorded in the health plan.

2. The playingEntity, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **sdtc:birthTime** (CONF:1198-31344).
 - a. The prefix sdtc: **SHALL** be bound to the namespace "urn:hl7-org:sdtc". The use of the namespace provides a necessary extension to CDA R2 for the use of the birthTime element (CONF:1198-31345).

When the Subscriber is the patient, the participant element describing the subscriber **SHALL NOT** be present. This information will be recorded instead in the data elements used to record member information.

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **participant** (CONF:1198-8934) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="HLD"** Holder (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8935).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16813).
 - i. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.90"** Policy Holder Participant (CONF:1198-16815).
 - c. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **time** (CONF:1198-8938).
 - d. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1198-8936).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8937).
 1. This id is a unique identifier for the subscriber of the coverage (CONF:1198-10120).
 - ii. This participantRole **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **addr** (CONF:1198-8925).
 1. The content of addr **SHALL** be a conformant US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2) (CONF:1198-10483).
 - e. When the Subscriber is the patient, the participant element describing the subscriber **SHALL NOT** be present. This information will be recorded instead in the data elements used to record member information (CONF:1198-17139).
 11. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8939) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8940).
- b. The target of a policy activity with act/entryRelationship/@typeCode="REFR" **SHALL** be an authorization activity (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19) *OR* an act, with act[@classCode="ACT"] and act[@moodCode="DEF"], representing a description of the coverage plan (CONF:1198-8942).
- c. A description of the coverage plan **SHALL** contain one or more act/id, to represent the plan identifier, and an act/text with the name of the plan (CONF:1198-8943).

Table 401: Health Insurance Type

Value Set: Health Insurance Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.5.2			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
12	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Working Aged Beneficiary or Spouse with Employer Group Health Plan
13	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary End-Stage Renal Disease Beneficiary in the 12 month coordination period with an employer's group health plan
14	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary, No- fault Insurance including Auto is Primary
15	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Worker's Compensation
16	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Public Health Service (PHS)or Other Federal Agency
41	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Black Lung
42	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Veteran's Administration
43	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary Disabled Beneficiary Under Age 65 with Large Group Health Plan (LGHP)
47	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Medicare Secondary, Other Liability Insurance is Primary
AP	Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88 .12.3221.5.2	Auto Insurance Policy
...			

Table 402: Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set

Value Set: Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10416 (Clinical Focus: A relationship between two entities that is formally recognized, frequently by a contract or similar agreement),(Data Element Scope: Financially responsible person code),(Inclusion Criteria: All selectable descendants of RoleClassRelationshipFormal from the RoleClass HL7 code system),(Exclusion Criteria: none)			
This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190517.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10416/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
AFFL	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	affiliate
AGNT	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	agent
ASSIGNED	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	assigned entity
CASEBJ	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	Case Subject
CIT	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	citizen
CLAIM	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	claimant
COMPAR	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	commissioning party
CON	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	contact
COVPTY	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	covered party
CRINV	HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110	clinical research investigator
...			

Table 403: Coverage Role Type Value Set

Value Set: Coverage Role Type Value Set urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.18877 (Clinical Focus: The role of the covered patient with respect to the coverage holder),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: descendants of _CoverageRoleType [abstract term] in RoleCode 2.16.840.1.113883.5.111),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190425. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.18877/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
FAMDEP	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	family dependent
FSTUD	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	full-time student
HANDIC	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	handicapped dependent
INJ	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	injured plaintiff
PSTUD	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	part-time student
SELF	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	self
SPON	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	sponsored dependent
STUD	HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 1	student

Figure 191: Policy Activity (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.61" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="3e676a50-7aac-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="12" displayName="Medicare Secondary Working Aged Beneficiary or Spouse with Employer Group Health Plan"
          codeSystemName="Insurance Type Code (x12N-1336)"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.255.1336">
        <translation code="2" displayName="Medicare"
                     codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.221.5"
                     codeSystemName="Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)"></translation>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <!-- Insurance company information -->
    <performer typeCode="PRF">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.87" />
        <time>
            <low nullFlavor="UNK" />
            <high nullFlavor="UNK" />
        </time>
        <assignedEntity>
            <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
            <code code="PAYOR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.110" codeSystemName="HL7
RoleCode" />
            <addr use="WP">
                <streetAddressLine>123 Insurance Road</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Blue Bell</city>
                <state>MA</state>
                <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
                <!-- US is "United States" from ISO 3166-1 Country Codes: 1.0.3166.1 -->
            </addr>
            <telecom value="tel:+(555)555-1515" use="WP" />
            <representedOrganization>
                <name>Good Health Insurance</name>
                <telecom value="tel:+(555)555-1515" use="WP" />
                <addr use="WP">
                    <streetAddressLine>123 Insurance Road</streetAddressLine>
                    <city>Blue Bell</city>
                    <state>MA</state>
                    <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
                    <country>US</country>
                </addr>
            </representedOrganization>
        </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
    <!-- Guarantor information (the person responsible for the final bill) -->
    <performer typeCode="PRF">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.88" />
        <time>
            <low nullFlavor="UNK" />
            <high nullFlavor="UNK" />
        </time>
        <assignedEntity>
            <id root="329fcdf0-7ab3-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a66" />
            <code code="GUAR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="HL7
RoleCode" />
            <addr use="HP">

```

```

<streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
<city>Blue Bell</city>
<state>MA</state>
<postalCode>02368</postalCode>
<country>US</country>
</addr>
<telecom value="tel:+(781)555-1212" use="HP" />
<assignedPerson>
    <name>
        <prefix>Mr.</prefix>
        <given>Adam</given>
        <given>Frankie</given>
        <family>Everyman</family>
    </name>
</assignedPerson>
</assignedEntity>
</performer>
<!-- Covered party -->
<participant typeCode="COV">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.89.2" />
    <time>
        <low nullFlavor="UNK" />
        <high nullFlavor="UNK" />
    </time>
    <participantRole classCode="PAT">
        <!-- Health plan ID for patient. -->
        <id root="1.1.1.1.1.1.14" extension="1138345" />
        <code code="SELF" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" />
        <addr use="HP">
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Blue Bell</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>
        <playingEntity>
            <name>
                <!-- Name is needed if different than name on health plan. -->
                <prefix>Mr.</prefix>
                <given>Frank</given>
                <given>A.</given>
                <family>Everyman</family>
            </name>
        </playingEntity>
    </participantRole>
</participant>
<!-- Policy holder -->
<participant typeCode="HLD">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.90.2" />
    <participantRole>
        <id extension="1138345" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
        <addr use="HP">
            <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
            <city>Blue Bell</city>
            <state>MA</state>
            <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
            <country>US</country>
        </addr>

```

```

        </participantRole>
    </participant>
<entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.1.19" />
        . . .
    </act>
</entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.72 Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 404: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (required)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Postprocedure Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the diagnosis or diagnoses discovered or confirmed during the procedure. They may be the same as preprocedure diagnoses or indications.

Table 405: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8756	ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8757	EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16766	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16767	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32539	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19151	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19152	59769-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32166	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-8759	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8760	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15583	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" (CONF:1198-8756).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CONF:1198-8757).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16766) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51" (CONF:1198-16767).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32539).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-19151).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "59769-0" Postprocedure diagnosis (CONF:1198-19152).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32166).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-8759) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 STATIC) (CONF:1198-8760).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15583).

Figure 192: Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) Example

```

<section>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.2.36" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="59769-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="POSTPROCEDURE DIAGNOSIS" />
  <title>Postprocedure Diagnosis</title>
  <text>
    ...
  </text>
  <entry>
    <act moodCode="EVN" classCode="ACT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51" extension="2015-08-01" />
      <!-- ** Postprocedure Diagnosis ** -->
      ...
    </act>
  </entry>
</section>

```

3.73 Precondition for Substance Administration (V2)

[criterion: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 406: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	

A criterion for administration can be used to record that the medication is to be administered only when the associated criteria are met.

Table 407: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
criterion (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25:2014-06-09)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7372	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10517	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32603	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-32396	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32397	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32398	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-7369	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7372) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25" (CONF:1098-10517).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32603).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** with @xsi:type="CD" (CONF:1098-32396).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CONF:1098-32397).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-32398).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Problem](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7369).

Figure 193: Precondition for Substance Administration (V2) Example

```
<criterion>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.25"
    extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="ASSERTION"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
  <value xsi:type="CD"
    code="56018004"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    displayName="Wheezing" />
</criterion>
```

3.74 Pregnancy Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8 (open)]

Table 408: Pregnancy Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional)	Estimated Date of Delivery (optional)

This clinical statement represents current and/or prior pregnancy dates enabling investigators to determine if the subject of the case report was pregnant during the course of a condition.

Table 409: Pregnancy Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-451	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-452	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-16768	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-16868	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3 .8
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19153	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19154	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26505	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		81-455	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19110	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-2018	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	81-457	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1099.24 (Extended Pregnancy Status)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		81-458	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-459	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15584	Estimated Date of Delivery (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-451).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-452).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-16768) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8" (CONF:81-16868).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19153).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CONF:81-19154).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:81-26505).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:81-455).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19110).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-2018).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Extended Pregnancy Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.24 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-457).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-458) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-459).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Estimated Date of Delivery](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1) (CONF:81-15584).

Table 410: Extended Pregnancy Status

Value Set: Extended Pregnancy Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.24 (Clinical Focus: Defines the status of pregnancy),(Data Element Scope: Pregnancy status at time of encounter),(Inclusion Criteria: SNOMED CT concepts intended to indicate whether a patient is pregnant, not pregnant or possibly pregnant.),(Exclusion Criteria: None)			
--	--	--	--

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.24/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
102874004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Possible pregnancy (finding)
60001007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Not pregnant (finding)
77386006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Pregnant (finding)

Figure 194: Pregnancy Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8"/>
  <id extension="123456789" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19"/>
  <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <effectiveTime>
    <low value="20110410"/>
  </effectiveTime>
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="77386006"
    displayName="pregnant"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"/>
  <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.1"/>
    .
    .
  </entryRelationship>
</observation>
```

3.75 Preoperative Diagnosis (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 411: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Preoperative Diagnosis Section (V3) (optional)	Problem Observation (V3) (required)

This template represents the surgical diagnosis or diagnoses assigned to the patient before the surgical procedure and is the reason for the surgery. The preoperative diagnosis is, in the opinion of the surgeon, the diagnosis that will be confirmed during surgery.

Table 412: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-10090	ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-10091	EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16770	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16771	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32540	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19155	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19156	10219-4
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32167	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-10093	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-10094	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1.002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15605	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ACT" (CONF:1198-10090).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CONF:1198-10091).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-16770) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65" (CONF:1198-16771).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32540).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-19155).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="10219-4" Preoperative Diagnosis (CONF:1198-19156).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32167).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] entryRelationship (CONF:1198-10093) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 STATIC) (CONF:1198-10094).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15605).

Figure 195: Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) Example

```

<act moodCode="EVN" classCode="ACT">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65" extension="2015-08-01" />
  <code code="10219-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Preoperative Diagnosis" />
  <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
      . . .
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.76 Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.70:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 413: Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional)	

The pressure ulcer observation contains details about the pressure ulcer such as the stage of the ulcer, location, and dimensions. If the pressure ulcer is a diagnosis, you may find this on the problem list. An example of how this would appear is in the Problem Section.

THIS TEMPLATE HAS BEEN DEPRECATED IN C-CDA R2 AND MAY BE DELETED FROM A FUTURE RELEASE OF THIS IMPLEMENTATION GUIDE. USE OF THIS TEMPLATE IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

Reason for deprecation: This template has been replaced by Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114).

Table 414: Pressure Ulcer Observation (DEPRECATED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.70:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14383	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14384	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
@negationInd	0..1	MAY		1098-14385	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-14387	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-14388	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .70
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32594	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-14389	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14759	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14760	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = ASSERTION
text	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14391	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14392	
@value	1..1	SHALL		1098-15585	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14394	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19111	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-14395	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-14396	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.35 (Pressure Ulcer Stage)
targetSiteCode	0..*	SHOULD		1098-14797	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14798	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.36 (Pressure Point)
qualifier	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14799	
name	1..1	SHALL		1098-14800	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14801	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 272741003
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-14802	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14803	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37 (TargetSite Qualifiers)
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14410	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14411	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14619	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14685	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14686	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14620	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14621	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 401238003
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	1098-14622	
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14601	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14602	COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14623	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14687	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14688	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14624	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14625	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 (SNOMED CT) = 401239006
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	1098-14626	
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-14605	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14606	COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-14627	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14689	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14690	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				14628	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14629	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 425094009
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	1098-14630	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14383).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14384).

Use negationInd="true" to indicate that the problem was not observed.

3. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @negationInd (CONF:1098-14385).

4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-14387) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.70" (CONF:1098-14388).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32594).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-14389).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-14759).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14760).

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] text (CONF:1098-14391).

- a. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] reference (CONF:1098-14392).

- i. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @value (CONF:1098-15585).
 1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-15586).

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-14394).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19111).

9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-14395).

10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Pressure Ulcer Stage](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-14396).

11. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] targetSiteCode (CONF:1098-14797).

- a. The targetSiteCode, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Pressure Point](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.36 **STATIC** (CONF:1098-14798).
- b. The targetSiteCode, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] qualifier (CONF:1098-14799).

- i. The qualifier, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:1098-14800).
 - 1. This name **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code="272741003" laterality (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14801).
 - ii. The qualifier, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-14802).
 - 1. This value **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [TargetSite Qualifiers](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37 **STATIC** 2014-09-01 (CONF:1098-14803).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-14410) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14411).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observation** (CONF:1098-14619).
 - i. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14685).
 - ii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14686).
 - iii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14620).
 - 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="401238003" Length of Wound (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14621).
 - iv. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:1098-14622).
13. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-14601) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" (CONF:1098-14602).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observation** (CONF:1098-14623).
 - i. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14687).
 - ii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14688).
 - iii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14624).
 - 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="401239006" Width of Wound (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14625).
 - iv. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:1098-14626).
14. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-14605) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" (CONF:1098-14606).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observation** (CONF:1098-14627).

- i. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14689).
- ii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14690).
- iii. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-14628).
 - 1. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="425094009" Depth of Wound (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14629).
- iv. This observation **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:1098-14630).

Table 415: Pressure Point

Value Set: Pressure Point urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.36 This value set represents points on the body that are susceptible to pressure ulcer development. Specific URL Pending Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
43631005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	occipital region structure
23747009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	skin structure of chin
91774008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	structure of right shoulder
7874003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	structure of scapular region of back; 272741003 = laterality; 24028007 = right (qualifier value)
368149001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	right elbow region structure
368148009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	left elbow region structure
87141009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	sacral vertebra structure
122495006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	thoracic spine structure
122496007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	lumbar spine structure
287579007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	right hip region structure
...			

Table 416: TargetSite Qualifiers

Value Set: TargetSite Qualifiers urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37 (Clinical Focus: Spatial refinements to anatomical site concepts),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
24028007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Right (qualifier value)
255549009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Anterior (qualifier value)
255551008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Posterior (qualifier value)
255561001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Medial (qualifier value)
7771000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Left (qualifier value)

3.77 Priority Preference

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143 (open)]

Table 417: Priority Preference Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Goal Observation (optional) Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents priority preferences chosen by a patient or a care provider. Priority preferences are choices made by care providers or patients or both relative to options for care or treatment (including scheduling, care experience, and meeting of personal health goals), the sharing and disclosure of health information, and the prioritization of concerns and problems.

Table 418: Priority Preference Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30949	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-30950	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30951	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30952	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .143
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-30953	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30954	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-30955	225773000
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-30956	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32327	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-30957	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.60 (Priority Level)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-30958	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-30949).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-30950).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30951) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143"** (CONF:1098-30952).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-30953).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-30954).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="225773000"** Preference (CONF:1098-30955).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-30956).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32327).

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Priority Level** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.60 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-30957).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-30958).

Table 419: Priority Level

<p>Value Set: Priority Level urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.60 (Clinical Focus: Qualifier representing the priority of an action),(Data Element Scope: qualifier for an action),(Inclusion Criteria: selected concepts for priority),(Exclusion Criteria: only concepts identified; excludes scheduled - priority)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190319.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.60/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
394848005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Normal priority (qualifier value)
394849002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	High priority (qualifier value)
441808003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Delayed priority (qualifier value)

Figure 196: Priority Preference Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143" />
  <id root="7d66f448-ba82-4291-a9da-9e5db5e58803" />
  <code code="225773000"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
    displayName="preference" />
  <value xsi:type="CD"
    code="394849002"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED"
    displayName="High priority" />
  <!--
    Author Participation Template
    In this case, the author is the same as a participant already described in the
    header.
    However, the author could be a the record target (patient), a different provider -
    someone else in the header, or a new provider not elsewhere specified.
  -->
  <author>
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
    <time value="20130801" />
    <assignedAuthor>
      <!-- This id points back to a participant in the header -->
      <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />
    </assignedAuthor>
  </author>
</observation>

```

3.78 Problem Concern Act (V3)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 420: Problem Concern Act (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Problem Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Problem Section (entries required) (V3) (required)	Priority Preference (optional) Author Participation (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (required)

This template reflects an ongoing concern on behalf of the provider that placed the concern on a patient's problem list. So long as the underlying condition is of concern to the provider (i.e., as long as the condition, whether active or resolved, is of ongoing concern and interest to the provider), the statusCode is "active". Only when the underlying condition is no longer of concern is the statusCode set to "completed". The effectiveTime reflects the time that the underlying condition was felt to be a concern; it may or may not correspond to the effectiveTime of the condition (e.g., even five years later, the clinician may remain concerned about a prior heart attack).

The statusCode of the Problem Concern Act is the definitive indication of the status of the concern, whereas the effectiveTime of the nested Problem Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying condition is resolved.

The effectiveTime/low of the Problem Concern Act asserts when the concern became active. The effectiveTime/high asserts when the concern was completed (e.g., when the clinician deemed there is no longer any need to track the underlying condition).

A Problem Concern Act can contain many Problem Observations (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4). Each Problem Observation is a discrete observation of a condition, and therefore will have a statusCode of “completed”. The many Problem Observations nested under a Problem Concern Act reflect the change in the clinical understanding of a condition over time. For instance, a Concern may initially contain a Problem Observation of “chest pain”:

- Problem Concern 1
 - Problem Observation: Chest Pain
- Later, a new Problem Observation of “esophagitis” will be added, reflecting a better understanding of the nature of the chest pain. The later problem observation will have a more recent author time stamp.
- Problem Concern 1
 - Problem Observation (author/time Jan 3, 2012): Chest Pain
 - Problem Observation (author/time Jan 6, 2012): Esophagitis
- Many systems display the nested Problem Observation with the most recent author time stamp, and provide a mechanism for viewing prior observations.

Table 421: Problem Concern Act (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9024	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9025	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-16772	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-16773	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .3
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32509	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-9026	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-9027	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19184	CONC
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32168	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.6
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9029	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-31525	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.19 (ProblemAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-9030	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-9032	
high	0..1	MAY		1198-9033	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31146	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		1198-9034	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9035	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15980	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31638	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31639	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31640	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9024).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9025).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-16772) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3"** (CONF:1198-16773).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32509).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-9026).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-9027).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="CONC"** Concern (CONF:1198-19184).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.6"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32168).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-9029).

The statusCode of the Problem Concern Act is the definitive indication of the status of the concern, whereas the effectiveTime of the nested Problem Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying condition is resolved.

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProblemAct statusCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-31525).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-9030).
 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-9032). Note: The effectiveTime/low of the Problem Concern Act asserts when the concern became active.
 - b. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1198-9033). Note: The effectiveTime/high asserts when the concern was completed (e.g., when the clinician deemed there is no longer any need to track the underlying condition).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31146).
9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-9034) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SUBJ"** Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9035).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-15980).

The following entryRelationship represents the importance of the concern to a provider.

- 10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31638) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31639).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1198-31640).

Figure 197: Problem Concern Act (V3) Example

```

<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Problem Concern Act (V3) ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3"
        extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="ec8a6ff8-ed4b-4f7e-82c3-e98e58b45de7" />
    <code code="CONC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.6" displayName="Concern" />
    <!-- The statusCode represents the need to continue tracking the problem -->
    <!-- This is of ongoing concern to the provider -->
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <!-- The low value represents when the problem was first recorded in the patient's
chart -->
        <!-- Concern was documented on July 6, 2013 -->
        <low value="201307061145-0800" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
        <!-- Same as Concern effectiveTime/low -->
        <time value="201307061145-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
            <code code="207QA0505X" displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
codeSystemName="Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Problem Observation (V3) ** -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
            <id root="ab1791b0-5c71-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
            <code code="75323-6" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Condition" />
            <!-- The statusCode reflects the status of the observation itself -->
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime>
                <!-- The low value reflects the date of onset -->
                <!-- Based on patient symptoms, presumed onset is July 3, 2013 -->
                <low value="20130703" />
                <!-- The high value reflects when the problem was known to be resolved -->
                <!-- Based on signs and symptoms, appears to be resolved on Aug 14, 2013 -->
                <high value="20080814" />
            </effectiveTime>
            <value xsi:type="CD"
code="233604007"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayName="Pneumonia" />
            <author typeCode="AUT">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
                <time value="200808141030-0800" />
                <assignedAuthor>
                    <id extension="555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
                    <code code="207QA0505X"
displayName="Adult Medicine"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
codeSystemName="Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)" />
                </assignedAuthor>
            </author>
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>

```

```

        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.79 Problem Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 422: Problem Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Age Observation (optional)
Complications Section (V3) (optional)	Prognosis Observation (optional)
Deceased Observation (V3) (optional)	Priority Preference (optional)
Hospital Discharge Diagnosis (V3) (required)	Author Participation (optional)
Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (required)	Problem Status (optional)
Past Medical History (V3) (optional)	
Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (required)	
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Procedure Findings Section (V3) (optional)	
Problem Concern Act (V3) (required)	
Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (required)	
Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (required)	

This template reflects a discrete observation about a patient's problem. Because it is a discrete observation, it will have a statusCode of "completed". The effectiveTime, also referred to as the "biologically relevant time" is the time at which the observation holds for the patient. For a provider seeing a patient in the clinic today, observing a history of heart attack that occurred five years ago, the effectiveTime is five years ago.

The effectiveTime of the Problem Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying condition is resolved. If the problem is known to be resolved, then an effectiveTime/high would be present. If the date of resolution is not known, then effectiveTime/high will be present with a nullFlavor of "UNK".

Table 423: Problem Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9041	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9042	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
@negationInd	0..1	MAY		1198-10139	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-14926	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-14927	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .4
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32508	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-9043	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-9045	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.2 (Problem Type (SNOMEDCT))
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9049	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19112	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-9050	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-15603	
high	0..1	MAY		1198-15604	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-9058	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)
@code	0..1	MAY		1198-31871	
qualifier	0..*	MAY		1198-31870	
translation	0..*	MAY		1198-16749	
@code	0..1	MAY		1198-16750	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 0 (ICD-10-CM)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31147	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-9059	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				9060	002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1198-9069	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15590	Age Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-29951	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31531	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-29952	Prognosis Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31063	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31532	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31064	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-9063	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-9068	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15591	Problem Status (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.6:2019-06-20)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9041).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9042).

The negationInd is used to indicate the absence of the condition in observation/value. A negationInd of "true" coupled with an observation/value of SNOMED code 64572001 "Disease (disorder)" indicates that the patient has no known conditions.

3. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @negationInd (CONF:1198-10139).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-14926) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" (CONF:1198-14927).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32508).
5. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1198-9043).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Problem Type \(SNOMEDCT\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-9045).

- a. If code is selected from ValueSet Problem Type (SNOMEDCT) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2 **DYNAMIC**, then it **SHALL** have at least one [1..*] translation, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet Problem Type (LOINC) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.28 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32950) (CONF:1198-32950).

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-9049).

- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19112).

If the problem is known to be resolved, but the date of resolution is not known, then the high element **SHALL** be present, and the nullFlavor attribute **SHALL** be set to 'UNK'. Therefore, the existence of a high element within a problem does indicate that the problem has been resolved.

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-9050).

The effectiveTime/low (a.k.a. "onset date") asserts when the condition became biologically active.

- a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-15603).

The effectiveTime/high (a.k.a. "resolution date") asserts when the condition became biologically resolved.

- b. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1198-15604).

9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Problem](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-9058).

A negationInd of "true" coupled with an observation/value/@code of SNOMED code 64572001 "Disease (disorder)" indicates that the patient has no known conditions.

- a. This value **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @code (CONF:1198-31871).

The observation/value and all the qualifiers together (often referred to as a post-coordinated expression) make up one concept. Qualifiers constrain the meaning of the primary code, and cannot negate it or change its meaning. Qualifiers can only be used according to well-defined rules of post-coordination and only if the underlying code system defines the use of such qualifiers or if there is a third code system that specifies how other code systems may be combined.

For example, SNOMED CT allows constructing concepts as a combination of multiple codes. SNOMED CT defines a concept "pneumonia (disorder)" (233604007) an attribute "finding site" (363698007) and another concept "left lower lobe of lung (body structure)" (41224006).

SNOMED CT allows one to combine these codes in a code phrase, as shown in the sample XML.

- b. This value **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **qualifier** (CONF:1198-31870).
- c. This value **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **translation** (CONF:1198-16749) such that it
 - i. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @code (CodeSystem: ICD-10-CM urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-16750).

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31147).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-9059) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-9060).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1198-9069).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Age Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.31) (CONF:1198-15590).
12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-29951) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31531).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Prognosis Observation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113) (CONF:1198-29952).
13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31063) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31532).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Priority Preference** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1198-31064).
14. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-9063) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-9068).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Problem Status** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.6:2019-06-20) (CONF:1198-15591).

Table 424: Problem Type (LOINC)

Value Set: Problem Type (LOINC) urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2:2014-09-02 This value set indicates the level of medical judgment used to determine the existence of a problem using selected concepts from LOINC. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
75326-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Problem HL7.CCDAR2
75325-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Symptom HL7.CCDAR2
75324-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Functional performance HL7.CCDAR2
75323-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Condition HL7.CCDAR2
29308-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diagnosis
75322-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Complaint HL7.CCDAR2
75321-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Clinical finding HL7.CCDAR2
75319-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Cognitive function family member HL7.CCDAR2
75318-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Problem family member HL7.CCDAR2
75317-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Symptom family member HL7.CCDAR2
75316-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Functional performance family member HL7.CCDAR2
75315-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Condition family member HL7.CCDAR2
75314-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diagnosis family member HL7.CCDAR2
75313-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Complaint family member HL7.CCDAR2
75312-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Clinical finding family member HL7.CCDAR2

Figure 198: Problem Observation (V3) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Problem Observation (V3) -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="ab1791b0-5c71-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="64572001" displayName="Condition"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
        <translation code="75323-6"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC"
          displayName="Condition"/>
    </code>
    <!-- The statusCode reflects the status of the observation itself -->
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <!-- The low value reflects the date of onset -->
        <!-- Based on patient symptoms, presumed onset is July 3, 2013 -->
        <low value="20130703" />
        <!-- The high value reflects when the problem was known to be resolved -->
        <!-- Based on signs and symptoms, appears to be resolved on Aug 14, 2013 -->
        <high value="20080814" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD"
          code="233604007"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          displayName="Pneumonia" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
        <time value="200808141030-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="555555555" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
            <code code="207QA0505X"
                  displayName="Adult Medicine"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101"
                  codeSystemName="Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
</observation>

```

3.79.1 Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01 (open)]

Table 425: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage (optional)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Wound Measurement Observation (optional)
Physical Exam Section (V3) (optional)	Wound Characteristic (optional) Author Participation (optional) Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) (optional)

This template represents acquired or surgical wounds and is not intended to encompass all wound types. The template applies to wounds such as pressure ulcers, surgical incisions, and deep tissue injury wounds. Information in this template may include information about the wound measurements characteristics.

Table 426: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31012	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31013	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-32947	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-29474	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .114
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32913	2015-08-01
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-29476	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-29477	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31010	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-29485	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.6 (Wound Type)
targetSiteCode	0..1	SHOULD		1198-29488	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
qualifier	0..*	MAY		1198-29490	
name	1..1	SHALL		1198-29491	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-29492	272741003
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-31524	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
value	1..1	SHALL		1198-29493	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-29494	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.37 (TargetSite Qualifiers)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31542	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1198-29495	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-29496	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-29497	Wound Measurement Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133)
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1198-29503	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-29504	COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-29505	Wound Characteristic (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-31890	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31891	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31892	Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1198-31893	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-31894	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-31919	Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77)

1. Conforms to [Problem Observation \(v3\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-31012).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1198-31013).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1198-32947) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114" (CONF:1198-29474).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32913).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1198-29476).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="ASSERTION" assertion (CONF:1198-29477).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1198-31010).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Wound Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.6 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-29485).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **targetSiteCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-29488) such that it

If targetSite/qualifierCode name/value pairs are used, care must be taken to avoid conflict with the SNOMED-CT body structure code used in observation/value. SNOMED-CT body structure codes are often pre-coordinated with laterality.

- a. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **qualifier** (CONF:1198-29490).
 - i. The qualifier, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:1198-29491).
 1. This name **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="272741003" laterality (CONF:1198-29492).
 2. This name **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-31524).
 - ii. The qualifier, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1198-29493).
 1. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [TargetSite Qualifiers](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-29494).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31542).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-29495) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-29496).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Wound Measurement Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133) (CONF:1198-29497).
10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-29503) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" (CONF:1198-29504).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Wound Characteristic](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134) (CONF:1198-29505).

When the wound observed is a type of pressure ulcer, then this template SHOULD contain an entry for the Number of Pressure Ulcers.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31890) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31891).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Number of Pressure Ulcers Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-31892).

When the wound observed is a type of pressure ulcer, then this template SHOULD contain an entry for the Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage.

12. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-31893) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-31894).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Highest Pressure Ulcer Stage** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77) (CONF:1198-31919).

Table 427: Wound Type

Value Set: Wound Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.6 (Clinical Focus: General concepts representing injuries to the skin as seen commonly in long term care.),(Data Element Scope: condition),(Inclusion Criteria: Specific concepts consistent with the scope),(Exclusion Criteria: Any concept not identified)																																																			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.6/expansion																																																			
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Code System</th><th>Code System OID</th><th>Print Name</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>125667009</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Contusion (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>128045006</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Cellulitis (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>129902007</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Skin incision finding (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>13954005</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Ischemic ulcer (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>238792006</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Mixed arteriovenous leg ulcer (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>247444006</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Excoriation of skin (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>247464001</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Blistering eruption (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>271761007</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Scaly skin (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>271767006</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Peeling of skin (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>271807003</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Eruption of skin (disorder)</td></tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">...</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name	125667009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Contusion (disorder)	128045006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Cellulitis (disorder)	129902007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Skin incision finding (finding)	13954005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Ischemic ulcer (disorder)	238792006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Mixed arteriovenous leg ulcer (disorder)	247444006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Excoriation of skin (disorder)	247464001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Blistering eruption (disorder)	271761007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Scaly skin (finding)	271767006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Peeling of skin (finding)	271807003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Eruption of skin (disorder)	...			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name																																																
125667009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Contusion (disorder)																																																
128045006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Cellulitis (disorder)																																																
129902007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Skin incision finding (finding)																																																
13954005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Ischemic ulcer (disorder)																																																
238792006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Mixed arteriovenous leg ulcer (disorder)																																																
247444006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Excoriation of skin (disorder)																																																
247464001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Blistering eruption (disorder)																																																
271761007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Scaly skin (finding)																																																
271767006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Peeling of skin (finding)																																																
271807003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Eruption of skin (disorder)																																																
...																																																			

Figure 199: Longitudinal Care Wound Observation Example

```

<entry>
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Wound Observation template -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114" extension="2015-08-01" />
        <id root="ab1791b0-5c71-11db-b0de-0800200c9a66" />
        <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <effectiveTime>
            <low value="20013103" />
        </effectiveTime>
        <value xsi:type="CD" code="425144005" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.6"
displayName="Minor open wound" />
        <targetSiteCode code="182295001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayName="anterior aspect of knee" />
        <author>
            ...
        </author>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Wound Measurements Observation -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133" />
                ...
                ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Wound Measurements Observation . -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133" />
                ...
                ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Wound Characteristic -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134" />
                ...
                ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Number of Pressure Ulcers -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.76" />
                ...
                ...
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <!-- Highest Pressure Ulcers Stage -->
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.77" />
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </observation>

```

```

    ...
    </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    </observation>
</entry>
```

3.80 Problem Status

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.6:2019-06-20
(open)]

Table 428: Problem Status Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Problem Observation (V3) (optional)	

The Problem Status records the clinical status attributed to the problem.

Table 429: Problem Status Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.6:2019-06-20)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7357	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7358	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7359	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10518	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .6
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32961	2019-06-20
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19162	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19163	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 33999-4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7364	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19113	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1198-7365	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.68 (Problem Status)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7357).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7358).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7359) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.6" (CONF:1198-10518).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2019-06-20" (CONF:1198-32961).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-19162).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="33999-4" Status (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19163).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-7364).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19113).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Problem Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.68 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-7365).

Table 430: Problem Status

Value Set: Problem Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.68 (Clinical Focus: The clinical status of a problem),(Data Element Scope: Status value),(Inclusion Criteria: Selected qualifier values that represent the clinical status of a problem),(Exclusion Criteria: none specific) This value set was imported on 6/26/2019 with a version of 20190418. Value Set Source: <u>https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.68/expansion</u>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
246455001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Recurrence (qualifier value)
263855007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Relapse phase (qualifier value)
277022003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Remission phase (qualifier value)
413322009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Problem resolved (finding)
55561003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Active (qualifier value)
73425007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Inactive (qualifier value)

3.81 Procedure Activity Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 431: Procedure Activity Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Service Delivery Location (optional) Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This template represents any act that cannot be classified as an observation or procedure according to the HL7 RIM. Examples of these acts are a dressing change, teaching or feeding a patient, or providing comfort measures.

The common notion of "procedure" is broader than that specified by the HL7 Version 3 Reference Information Model (RIM). Procedure templates can be represented with various RIM classes: act (e.g., dressing change), observation (e.g., EEG), procedure (e.g., splenectomy).

Table 432: Procedure Activity Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8289	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8290	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8291	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10519	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .12
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32505	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8292	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-8293	
originalText	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19186	
reference	0..1	MAY		1098-19187	
@value	0..1	MAY		1098-19188	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8298	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32364	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.22 (ProcedureAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-8299	
priorityCode	0..1	MAY		1098-8300	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.16866 (ActPriority)
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1098-8301	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-8302	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8303	
addr	1..*	SHALL		1098-8304	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1098-8305	
representedOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1098-8306	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1098-8307	
name	0..*	MAY		1098-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				8308	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1098-8310	
addr	1..*	SHALL		1098-8309	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32477	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-8311	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8312	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = LOC
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-15599	Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8314	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8315	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-8316	true
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1098-8317	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8318	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ENC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8319	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
id	1..1	SHALL		1098-8320	
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-8322	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8323	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-8324	true
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31396	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8326	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8327	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15601	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8329	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8330	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15602	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8289).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8290).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8291) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12" (CONF:1098-10519).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32505).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8292).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-8293).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **originalText** (CONF:1098-19186).
 - i. The originalText, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:1098-19187).
 1. The reference, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:1098-19188).
 - a. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-19189).
 - b. This @code **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96), and **MAY** be selected from CPT-4 (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12) or ICD10 PCS (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.4) or CDT-2 (Code System: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.13) (CONF:1098-19190).
 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-8298).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProcedureAct statusCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22 **STATIC** 2014-04-23 (CONF:1098-32364).
 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-8299).
 8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **priorityCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActPriority](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-8300).
 9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-8301).

- a. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-8302).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8303).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-8304).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1098-8305).
 - iv. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1098-8306).
 - 1. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8307).
 - 2. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **name** (CONF:1098-8308).
 - 3. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1098-8310).
 - 4. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-8309).
- 10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32477).
- 11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-8311) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="LOC" Location (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8312).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Service Delivery Location** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32) (CONF:1098-15599).
- 12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8314) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8315).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-8316).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encounter** (CONF:1098-8317).
 - i. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ENC" Encounter (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8318).
 - ii. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8319).
 - iii. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1098-8320).
 - 1. Set the encounter ID to the ID of an encounter in another section to signify they are the same encounter (CONF:1098-16849).
- 13. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8322) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8323).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-8324).

- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31396).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8326) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8327).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15601).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8329) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8330).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15602).

Table 433: ProcedureAct statusCode

Value Set: ProcedureAct statusCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22 (Clinical Focus: Status of a procedure activity),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 4/24/2019 with a version of 20190103.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
aborted	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	aborted
active	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	active
cancelled	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	cancelled
completed	HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14	completed

Figure 200: Procedure Activity Act Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.12" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="1.2.3.4.5.6.7.8" extension="1234567" />
    <code code="274025005" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
displayName="Colonic polypectomy">
        <originalText>
            <reference value="#Procl" />
        </originalText>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20110203" />
    <priorityCode code="CR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.7" codeSystemName="ActPriority"
displayName="Callback results" />
    <performer>
        <assignedEntity>
            <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" extension="1234" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>1001 Village Avenue</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Portland</city>
                <state>OR</state>
                <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
            </addr>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +1(555)-555-5000" />
            <representedOrganization>
                <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
                <name>Community Health and Hospitals</name>
                <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)-555-5000" />
                <addr>
                    <streetAddressLine>1001 Village Avenue</streetAddressLine>
                    <city>Portland</city>
                    <state>OR</state>
                    <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                    <country>US</country>
                </addr>
            </representedOrganization>
        </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
    <participant typeCode="LOC">
        <participantRole classCode="SDLOC">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32" />
            . .
        </participantRole>
    </participant>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09" />
            . .
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" extension="2014-06-09" />
            . .
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
```

| </act>

3.82 Procedure Activity Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 434: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Service Delivery Location (optional) Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

The common notion of procedure is broader than that specified by the HL7 Version 3 Reference Information Model (RIM). Therefore procedure templates can be represented with various RIM classes: act (e.g., dressing change), observation (e.g., EEG), procedure (e.g., splenectomy).

This template represents procedures that result in new information about the patient that cannot be classified as a procedure according to the HL7 RIM. Examples of these procedures are diagnostic imaging procedures, EEGs, and EKGs.

Table 435: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8282	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8237	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-8238	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10520	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .13
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32507	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8239	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19197	
originalText	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19198	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19199	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19200	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8245	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32365	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.22 (ProcedureAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-8246	
priorityCode	0..1	MAY		1098-8247	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.16866 (ActPriority)
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-16846	
@nullFlavor	0..1	MAY		1098-32778	
methodCode	0..1	MAY		1098-8248	
targetSiteCode	0..*	SHOULD		1098-8250	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1098-8251	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-8252	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8253	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
addr	1..*	SHALL		1098-8254	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1098-8255	
representedOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1098-8256	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1098-8257	
name	0..*	MAY		1098-8258	
telecom	1..1	SHALL		1098-8260	
addr	1..1	SHALL		1098-8259	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32478	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-8261	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8262	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = LOC
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-15904	Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8264	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8265	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-8266	true
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1098-8267	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8268	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ENC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8269	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
id	1..1	SHALL		1098-8270	
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-8272	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8273	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-8274	true
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31394	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8276	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8277	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15906	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-8279	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8280	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15907	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32470	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32471	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32472	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8282).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8237).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-8238) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13"** (CONF:1098-10520).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32507).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8239).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-19197).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **originalText** (CONF:1098-19198).
 - i. The originalText, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:1098-19199).

1. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:1098-19200).
 - a. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-19201).
- b. This @code **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96), and **MAY** be selected from CPT-4 (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12) or ICD10 PCS (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.4) or CDT-2 (Code System: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.13) (CONF:1098-19202).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-8245).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProcedureAct statusCode](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22 **STATIC** 2014-04-23 (CONF:1098-32365).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-8246).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **priorityCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActPriority](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-8247).
9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-16846).

If nothing is appropriate for value, use an appropriate nullFlavor.

- a. This value **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@nullFlavor** (CONF:1098-32778).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **methodCode** (CONF:1098-8248).
 - a. MethodCode **SHALL NOT** conflict with the method inherent in Observation / code (CONF:1098-8249).
11. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **targetSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-8250).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-8251).
 - a. The performer, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-8252).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8253).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-8254).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1098-8255).
 - iv. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1098-8256).
 1. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8257).
 2. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **name** (CONF:1098-8258).
 3. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **telecom** (CONF:1098-8260).
 4. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **addr** (CONF:1098-8259).

13. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32478).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-8261) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="LOC" Location (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8262).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Service Delivery Location](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32) (CONF:1098-15904).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8264) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8265).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-8266).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encounter** (CONF:1098-8267).
 - This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ENC" Encounter (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8268).
 - This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8269).
 - This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1098-8270).
 - Set encounter/id to the id of an encounter in another section to signify they are the same encounter (CONF:1098-16847).
16. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8272) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8273).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-8274).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Instruction \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31394).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8276) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8277).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Indication \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15906).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-8279) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8280).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15907).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32470) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32471).
- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32472).

Figure 201: Procedure Activity Observation (V2) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.13" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id extension="123456789" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code code="274025005"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
        displayName="Colonic polypectomy"
        codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT">
        <originalText>
            <reference value="#Procl" />
        </originalText>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="aborted" />
    <effectiveTime value="20110203" />
    <priorityCode code="CR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.7" codeSystemName="ActPriority"
displayName="Callback results" />
    <value nullFlavor="NA" />
    <methodCode nullFlavor="UNK" />
    <targetSiteCode code="416949008" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Abdomen and pelvis" />
    <performer>
        <assignedEntity>
            <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" extension="1234" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>1001 Village Avenue</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Portland</city>
                <state>OR</state>
                <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
            </addr>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel: +1(555)-555-5000" />
            <representedOrganization>
                <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
                <name>Community Health and Hospitals</name>
                <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)-555-5000" />
                <addr>
                    <streetAddressLine>1001 Village Avenue</streetAddressLine>
                    <city>Portland</city>
                    <state>OR</state>
                    <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                    <country>US</country>
                </addr>
            </representedOrganization>
        </assignedEntity>
    </performer>
    <participant typeCode="LOC">
        <participantRole classCode="SDLOC">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32" />
            .
            .
            </participantRole>
        </participant>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19" extension="2014-06-09" />
                .
                .
                </observation>
            </entryRelationship>
        
```

```

<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
  <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="INT">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20" extension="2014-06-09" />
    . .
  </act>
</entryRelationship>
</observation>

```

3.83 Procedure Activity Procedure (V2)

[procedure: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 436: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Section (V2) (optional) Anesthesia Section (V2) (optional) Procedures Section (entries optional) (V2) (optional) Procedures Section (entries required) (V2) (optional) Medical Equipment Organizer (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	Service Delivery Location (optional) Product Instance (optional) Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Indication (V2) (optional) Instruction (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional)

The common notion of "procedure" is broader than that specified by the HL7 Version 3 Reference Information Model (RIM). Therefore procedure templates can be represented with various RIM classes: act (e.g., dressing change), observation (e.g., EEG), procedure (e.g., splenectomy).

This template represents procedures whose immediate and primary outcome (post-condition) is the alteration of the physical condition of the patient. Examples of these procedures are an appendectomy, hip replacement, and a creation of a gastrostomy.

This template can be used with a contained Product Instance template to represent a device in or on a patient. In this case, targetSiteCode is used to record the location of the device in or on the patient's body. Equipment supplied to the patient (e.g., pumps, inhalers, wheelchairs) is represented by the Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) template.

Table 437: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
procedure (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7652	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PROC
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7653	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7654	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10521	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .14
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32506	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7655	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-7656	
originalText	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19203	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19204	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		1098-19205	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7661	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32366	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.22 (ProcedureAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7662	
priorityCode	0..1	MAY		1098-7668	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.16866 (ActPriority)
methodCode	0..1	MAY		1098-7670	
targetSiteCode	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7683	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.8.9 (Body Site Value Set)
specimen	0..*	MAY		1098-7697	
specimenRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-7704	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7716	
performer	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7718	
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-7720	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7722	
addr	1..*	SHALL		1098-7731	
telecom	1..*	SHALL		1098-7732	
representedOrganization	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7733	
id	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7734	
name	0..*	MAY		1098-7735	
telecom	1..1	SHALL		1098-7737	
addr	1..1	SHALL		1098-7736	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32479	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-7751	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7752	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = DEV
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-15911	Product Instance (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37)
participant	0..*	MAY		1098-7765	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7766	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = LOC
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-15912	Service Delivery Location (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7768	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7769	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-8009	true
encounter	1..1	SHALL		1098-7770	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7771	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ENC

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7772	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
id	1..1	SHALL		1098-7773	
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7775	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7776	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-7777	true
act	1..1	SHALL		1098-31395	Instruction (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7779	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7780	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15914	Indication (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7886	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7887	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15915	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-32473	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32474	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32475	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="PROC" Procedure (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7652).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7653).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-7654) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" (CONF:1098-10521).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32506).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7655).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-7656).
- a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **originalText** (CONF:1098-19203).
 - i. The originalText, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:1098-19204).
 - 1. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @value (CONF:1098-19205).
 - a. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:1098-19206).
 - b. This @code **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96), and **MAY** be selected from CPT-4 (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12) or ICD10 PCS (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.4) or CDT-2 (Code System: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.13) (CONF:1098-19207).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7661).
- a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProcedureAct statusCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22 **STATIC** 2014-04-23 (CONF:1098-32366).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7662).
8. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **priorityCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ActPriority](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7668).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **methodCode** (CONF:1098-7670).
- a. MethodCode **SHALL NOT** conflict with the method inherent in Procedure / code (CONF:1098-7890).

In the case of an implanted medical device, targetSiteCode is used to record the location of the device, in or on the patient's body.

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **targetSiteCode**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Body Site Value Set](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7683).
11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **specimen** (CONF:1098-7697).
- a. The specimen, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **specimenRole** (CONF:1098-7704).
 - i. This specimenRole **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7716).
 - 1. If you want to indicate that the Procedure and the Results are referring to the same specimen, the Procedure/specimen/specimenRole/id **SHOULD** be set to equal an Organizer/specimen/ specimenRole/id (CONF:1098-29744).
 - b. This specimen is for representing specimens obtained from a procedure (CONF:1098-16842).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **performer** (CONF:1098-7718) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-7720).
 - i. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7722).
 - ii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-7731).
 - iii. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **telecom** (CONF:1098-7732).
 - iv. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1098-7733).
 - 1. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7734).
 - 2. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **name** (CONF:1098-7735).
 - 3. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **telecom** (CONF:1098-7737).
 - 4. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **addr** (CONF:1098-7736).
- 13. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32479).
- 14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-7751) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="DEV" Device (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7752).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Product Instance** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37) (CONF:1098-15911).
- 15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-7765) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="LOC" Location (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7766).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Service Delivery Location** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32) (CONF:1098-15912).
- 16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7768) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7769).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-8009).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **encounter** (CONF:1098-7770).
 - i. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ENC" Encounter (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7771).
 - ii. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7772).
 - iii. This encounter **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **id** (CONF:1098-7773).
 - 1. Set the encounter ID to the ID of an encounter in another section to signify they are the same encounter (CONF:1098-16843).
- 17. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7775) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7776).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" true (CONF:1098-7777).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Instruction (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.20:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-31395).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7779) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7780).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Indication (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.19:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15914).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7886) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7887).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Medication Activity (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15915).
20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32473) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32474).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Reaction Observation (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-32475).

Figure 202: Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) Example

```
<procedure classCode="PROC" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Procedure Activity Procedure V2-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="d5b614bd-01ce-410d-8726-e1fd01dcc72a" />
    <code code="103716009" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
displayName="Stent Placement">
        <originalText>
            <reference value="#Procl" />
        </originalText>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20130512" />
    <targetSiteCode code="28273000" displayName="bile duct"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
    <specimen typeCode="SPC">
        <specimenRole classCode="SPEC">
            <id root="a6d7b927-2b70-43c7-bdf3-0e7c4133062c" />
            <specimenPlayingEntity>
                <code code="57259009" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
displayName="gallbladder bile" />
            </specimenPlayingEntity>
        </specimenRole>
    </specimen>
    <performer>
        ...
    </performer>
</procedure>
```

3.84 Procedure Context

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5 (open)]

Table 438: Procedure Context Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	

The ServiceEvent Procedure Context of the document header may be overridden in the CDA structured body if there is a need to refer to multiple imaging procedures or acts. The selection of the Procedure or Act entry from the clinical statement choice box depends on the nature of the imaging service that has been performed. The Procedure entry shall be used for image-guided interventions and minimally invasive imaging services, whereas the Act entry shall be used for diagnostic imaging services.

Table 439: Procedure Context Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-26452	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-26453	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9200	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10530	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9201	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD	TS	81-9203	
@value	1..1	SHALL		81-17173	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode** = "ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:81-26452).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode** = "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:81-26453).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9200) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root** = "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5" (CONF:81-10530).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9201).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9203).
 - a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@value** (CONF:81-17173).
6. Procedure Context **SHALL** be represented with the procedure or act elements depending on the nature of the procedure (CONF:81-9199).

Figure 203: Procedure Context Example

```

<act moodCode="EVN" classCode="ACT">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.5"/>
  <code code="70548"
    displayName="Magnetic resonance angiography, head; with contrast material(s)"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.12" codeSystemName="CPT-4"/>
  <!-- Note: This code is slightly different from the code used in the header
  documentationOf and overrides it, which is what this entry is for. -->
  <effectiveTime value="20060823123529+0400"/>
</act>

```

3.85 Product Instance

[participantRole: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37 (open)]

Table 440: Product Instance Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Non-Medicinal Supply Activity (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional)	

This clinical statement represents a particular device that was placed in a patient or used as part of a procedure or other act. This provides a record of the identifier and other details about the given product that was used. For example, it is important to have a record that indicates not just that a hip prostheses was placed in a patient but that it was a particular hip prostheses number with a unique identifier.

The FDA Amendments Act specifies the creation of a Unique Device Identification (UDI) System that requires the label of devices to bear a unique identifier that will standardize device identification and identify the device through distribution and use.

The FDA permits an issuing agency to designate that their Device Identifier (DI) + Production Identifier (PI) format qualifies as a UDI through a process of accreditation. Currently, there are three FDA-accredited issuing agencies that are allowed to call their format a UDI. These organizations are GS1, HIBCC, and ICCBBA. For additional information on technical formats that qualify as UDI from each of the issuing agencies see the UDI Appendix.

When communicating only the issuing agency device identifier (i.e., subcomponent of the UDI), the use of the issuing agency OID is appropriate. However, when communicating the unique device identifier (DI + PI), the FDA OID (2.16.840.1.113883.3.3719) must be used.

When sending a UDI, populate the participantRole/id/@root with the FDA OID (2.16.840.1.113883.3.3719) and participantRole/id/@extension with the UDI.

When sending a DI, populate the participantRole/id/@root with the appropriate assigning agency OID and participantRole/id/@extension with the DI.

The scopingEntity/id should correspond to FDA or the appropriate issuing agency.

Table 441: Product Instance Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
participantRole (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7900	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7901	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10522	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .37
id	1..*	SHALL		81-7902	
playingDevice	1..1	SHALL		81-7903	
code	0..1	SHOULD		81-16837	
scopingEntity	1..1	SHALL		81-7905	
id	1..*	SHALL		81-7908	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="MANU"** Manufactured Product (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7900).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7901) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37"** (CONF:81-10522).
3. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-7902).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingDevice** (CONF:81-7903).
 - a. This playingDevice **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code** (CONF:81-16837).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **scopingEntity** (CONF:81-7905).
 - a. This scopingEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-7908).

Figure 204: Product Instance Example

```
<participantRole classCode="MANU">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.37"/>
  <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.3719"
    extension="(01)51022222233336(11)141231(17)150707(10)A213B1(21)1234"
    assigningAuthorityName="FDA" />
  <playingDevice>
    <code code="90412006" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      displayName="Colonoscope"/>
  </playingDevice>
  <scopingEntity>
    <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.3719"/>
  </scopingEntity>
</participantRole>
```

3.86 Prognosis Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113 (open)]

Table 442: Prognosis Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Problem Observation (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the patient's prognosis, which must be associated with a problem observation. It may serve as an alert to scope intervention plans.

The effectiveTime represents the clinically relevant time of the observation. The observation/value is not constrained and can represent the expected life duration in PQ, an anticipated course of the disease in text, or coded term.

Table 443: Prognosis Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29035	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29036	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29037	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29038	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29039	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29468	75328-5
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31349	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31350	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31351	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31123	
value	1..1	SHALL		1098-29469	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29035).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29036).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-29037) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113" (CONF:1098-29038).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-29039).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="75328-5" Prognosis (CONF:1098-29468).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-31349).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31350).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31351).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31123).
- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1098-29469).

Figure 205: Prognosis, Free Text Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <!-- Prognosis -->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113" />
  <id root="2097c709-291b-4a0f-bef9-ad9b23b3bb43" />
  <code code="75328-5"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Prognosis" />
  <text>
    Presence of a life limiting condition(>50% possibility of death within 2 year)
  </text>
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <effectiveTime value="20130606" />
  <value xsi:type="ST">Presence of a life limiting condition(>50% possibility of death
within 2 year</value>
</observation>
```

Figure 206: Prognosis, Coded Example

```
<entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Prognosis -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.113" />
    <id root="2097c709-291b-4a0f-bef9-ad9b23b3bb43" />
    <code code="75328-5"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Prognosis" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20130301" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="67334001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      displayName="guarded prognosis" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
  </observation>
</entryRelationship>
```

3.87 Progress Toward Goal Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110 (open)]

Table 444: Progress Toward Goal Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Outcome Observation (optional)	

This template represents a patient's progress toward a goal. It can describe whether a goal has been achieved or not and can also describe movement a patient is making toward the achievement of a goal (e.g., "Goal not achieved - no discernible change", "Goal not achieved - progressing toward goal", "Goal not achieved - declining from goal").

In the Care Planning workflow, the judgment about how well the person is progressing towards the goal is based on the observations made about the status of the patient with respect to interventions performed in the pursuit of achieving that goal.

For example, an observation outcome of a blood oxygen saturation level of 95% is related to the goal of "Maintain Pulse Ox greater than 92" and in this case the Progress Toward Goal Observation template would record that the related goal has been achieved.

Table 445: Progress Toward Goal Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31418	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31419	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31420	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31421	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .110
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31422	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31423	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31424	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31425	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31609	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31610	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-31426	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.55 (Goal Achievement)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31418).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31419).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-31420) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110" (CONF:1098-31421).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31422).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31423).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "ASSERTION" Assertion (CONF:1098-31424).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-31425).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31609).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31610).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with **@xsi:type**= "CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Goal Achievement** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.55 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31426).

Table 446: Goal Achievement

<p>Value Set: Goal Achievement urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.55 (Clinical Focus: The Goal Achievement value set contains concepts that describe a patient's progression (or lack thereof) toward a goal.),(Data Element Scope: Goal attribute value in C-CDA template observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110),,(Inclusion Criteria: The following concepts from SNOMED CT: Self(390802008 Goal achieved) and DescendentsAndSelf(390801001 Goal not achieved).),,(Exclusion Criteria: only as noted in inclusion criteria)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.55/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
390801001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Goal not achieved (finding)
390802008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Goal achieved (finding)
706905005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Goal not attainable (finding)
706906006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	No progress toward goal (finding)

Figure 207: Progress Toward Goal Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.110" />
  <id root="2aefcf057-aae4-47cf-bfee-b7498e300424" />
  <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="390802008" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Goal achieved" />
</observation>
```

3.88 Purpose of Reference Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.9 (open)]

Table 447: Purpose of Reference Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
SOP Instance Observation (optional)	

A Purpose of Reference Observation describes the purpose of the DICOM composite object reference. Appropriate codes, such as externally defined DICOM codes, may be used to specify the semantics of the purpose of reference. When this observation is absent, it implies that the reason for the reference is unknown.

Table 448: Purpose of Reference Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.9)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9264	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9265	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9266	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10531	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2. 9
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9267	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		81-19208	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = ASSERTION
value	0..1	SHOULD	CD	81-9273	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.28 (DICOMPurposeOfReference)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9264).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9265).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9266) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.9" (CONF:81-10531).
- 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9267).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code="ASSERTION" Assertion (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19208).
 - b. For backwards compatibility with the DICOM CMET, the code **MAY** be drawn from ValueSet 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.28 DICOMPurposeOfReference DYNAMIC (CONF:81-19209).

The value element is a SHOULD to allow backwards compatibility with the DICOM CMET. Note that the use of ASSERTION for the code differs from the DICOM CMET. This is intentional. The DICOM CMET was created before the Term Info guidelines describing the use of the assertion pattern were released. It was determined that this IG should follow the latest Term Info guidelines. Implementers using both this IG and the DICOM CMET should be aware of this difference and apply appropriate transformations.

- 5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [DICOMPurposeOfReference](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.28 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-9273).

Table 449: DICOMPurposeOfReference

Value Set: DICOMPurposeOfReference urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.28 Value Set Source: http://www.hl7.org			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
121079	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Baseline
121080	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Best illustration of finding
121112	DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4	Source of Measurement

Figure 208: Purpose of Reference Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.9"/>
  <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="121112" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
    codeSystemName="DCM"
    displayName="Source of Measurement"/>
</observation>
```

3.89 Quantity Measurement Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14 (open)]

Table 450: Quantity Measurement Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Text Observation (optional) Code Observations (optional) Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	SOP Instance Observation (optional)

A Quantity Measurement Observation records quantity measurements based on image data such as linear, area, volume, and numeric measurements. The codes in DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes (ValueSet: 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29) are from the qualifier hierarchy of SNOMED CT and are not valid for observation/code according to the Term Info guidelines. These codes can be used for backwards compatibility, but going forward, codes from the observable entity hierarchy will be requested and used.

Table 451: Quantity Measurement Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9317	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9318	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9319	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10532	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2. 14
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9320	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		81-19210	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.29 (DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes)
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9326	
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	81-9324	
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9327	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9328	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15916	SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9317).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9318).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9319) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14" (CONF:81-10532).

The value set of the observation/code includes numeric measurement types for linear dimensions, areas, volumes, and other numeric measurements. This value set is extensible and comprises the union of SNOMED codes for observable entities as reproduced in DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes (ValueSet: 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29) and DICOM Codes in DICOMQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes (ValueSet: 2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.30).

4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9320).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-19210).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9326).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:81-9324).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9327) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has Support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9328).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [SOP Instance Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) (CONF:81-15916).

Table 452: DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes

Value Set: DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29

(Clinical Focus: The specific dimension of a structure measured by the associated physical quantity),(Data Element Scope: Contains imaging measurement (observable entity) concepts.),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
439428006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Short axis length of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439429003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Radius of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439746004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Area of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439747008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Circumference of circular structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439748003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Diameter of circular structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439749006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Volume of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439932008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Length of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439933003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Long axis length of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439934009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Depth of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
439982003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Major axis length of structure by imaging measurement (observable entity)
...			

Figure 209: Quantity Measurement Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14"/>
  <code code="439984002" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNM3"
    displayName="Diameter of structure">
    <originalText>
      <reference value="#Diam2"/>
    </originalText>
  </code>
  <statusCode code="completed"/>
  <effectiveTime value="200802260805-0800"/>
  <value xsi:type="PQ" value="45" unit="mm"
    codeSystemVersion="1.5"/>
  <!-- entryRelationships to SOP Instance Observations may go here -->
</observation>
```

3.90 Reaction Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 453: Reaction Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Severity Observation (V2) (optional)

This clinical statement represents the response to an undesired symptom, finding, etc. due to administered or exposed substance. A reaction can be defined described with respect to its severity, and can have been treated by one or more interventions.

Table 454: Reaction Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7325	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7326	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7323	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10523	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .9
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32504	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7329	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-16851	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31124	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32169	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7328	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19114	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7332	
low	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7333	
high	0..1	SHOULD		1098-7334	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-7335	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.7.4 (Problem)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7337	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7338	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-7343	true
procedure	1..1	SHALL		1098-15920	Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-7340	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7341	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-7344	true
substanceAdministration	1..1	SHALL		1098-15921	Medication Activity (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-7580	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7581	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-10375	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15922	Severity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7325).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7326).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7323) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9"** (CONF:1098-10523).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32504).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7329).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-16851).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ASSERTION"** (CONF:1098-31124).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-32169).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7328).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19114).
7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7332).
 - a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **low** (CONF:1098-7333).
 - b. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-7334).

8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Problem](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7335).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7337) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7338).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-7343).

This procedure activity is intended to contain information about procedures that were performed in response to an allergy reaction.

- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Procedure Activity Procedure \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.14:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15920).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7340) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="RSON" Has reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7341).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-7344).

This medication activity is intended to contain information about medications that were administered in response to an allergy reaction.

- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Medication Activity \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.16:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15921).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7580) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7581).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" TRUE (CONF:1098-10375).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Severity Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15922).

Figure 210: Reaction Observation (V2) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="4adc1020-7b14-11db-9fe1-0800200c9a64" />
    <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
    <text>
        <reference value="#reaction1" />
    </text>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <low value="200802260805-0800" />
        <high value="200802281205-0800" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="422587007" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" displayName="Nausea" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8" extension="2014-06-09" />
            .
            .
            </observation>
        </entryRelationship>
    </observation>
</observation>
```

3.91 Referenced Frames Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.10 (open)]

Table 455: Referenced Frames Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
SOP Instance Observation (optional)	Boundary Observation (required)

A Referenced Frames Observation is used if the referenced DICOM SOP instance is a multiframe image and the reference does not apply to all frames. The list of integer values for the referenced frames of a DICOM multiframe image SOP instance is contained in a Boundary Observation nested inside this class.

Table 456: Referenced Frames Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.10)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9276	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ROIBND
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9277	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19164	
@code	0..1	MAY		81-19165	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 121190
entryRelationship	1..1	SHALL		81-9279	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9280	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15923	Boundary Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ROIBND"** Bounded Region of Interest (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9276).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9277).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19164).
 - a. This code **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@code="121190"** Referenced Frames (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-19165).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9279).
 - a. This entryRelationship **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="COMP"** Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9280).
 - b. This entryRelationship **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Boundary Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11) (CONF:81-15923).

Figure 211: Referenced Frames Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="ROIBND" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.10"/>
    <code code="121190" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" displayName="Referenced Frames"/>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <!-- Boundary Observation -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.11"/>
            <code code="113036" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" displayName="Frames for
Display"/>
            <value xsi:type="INT" value="1"/>
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>
```

3.92 Result Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 457: Result Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)
Result Organizer (V3) (required)	
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	

This template represents the results of a laboratory, radiology, or other study performed on a patient. The result observation includes a statusCode to allow recording the status of an observation. “Pending” results (e.g., a test has been run but results have not been reported yet) should be represented as “active” ActStatus.

Table 458: Result Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7130	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7131	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7136	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-9138	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .2
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32575	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-7137	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-7133	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7134	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14849	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.39 (Result Status)
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-7140	
value	1..1	SHALL		1198-7143	
interpretationCode	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7147	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32476	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.78 (Observation Interpretation (HL7))
methodCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C E>	1198-7148	
targetSiteCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C D>	1198-7153	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7149	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119
referenceRange	0..*	SHOULD		1198-7150	
observationRange	1..1	SHALL		1198-7151	
code	0..0	SHALL NOT		1198-7152	
value	1..1	SHALL		1198-32175	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7130).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7131).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7136) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2"** (CONF:1198-9138).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32575).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-7137).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from CodeSystem LOINC (urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-7133).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** be a code from the LOINC that identifies the result observation. If an appropriate LOINC code does not exist, then the local code for this result **SHALL** be sent (CONF:1198-19212).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-7134).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Result Status** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-14849).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-7140).

Note: Represents the biologically relevant time of the measurement (e.g., the time a blood pressure reading is obtained, the time the blood sample was obtained for a chemistry test).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1198-7143).
 - a. If Observation/value is a physical quantity (**xsi:type="PQ"**), the unit of measure **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-31484).
 - b. A coded or physical quantity value **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] translations, which can be used to represent the original results as output by the lab (CONF:1198-31866).
 - c. If Observation/value is a CD (**xsi:type="CD"**) the value **SHOULD** be SNOMED-CT (CONF:1198-32610).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **interpretationCode** (CONF:1198-7147).
 - a. The interpretationCode, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Observation Interpretation (HL7)** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-32476).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **methodCode** (CONF:1198-7148).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **targetSiteCode** (CONF:1198-7153).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-7149).
13. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **referenceRange** (CONF:1198-7150).
 - a. The referenceRange, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **observationRange** (CONF:1198-7151).
 - i. This observationRange **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **code** (CONF:1198-7152).
 - ii. This observationRange **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:1198-32175).

Table 459: Observation Interpretation (HL7)

Value Set: Observation Interpretation (HL7) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78 (Clinical Focus: Codes specifying a rough qualitative interpretation of the observation, such as "normal", "abnormal", "below normal", "change up", "resistant", "susceptible", etc.),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: all reportable codes in the code system ObservationInterpretation),(Exclusion Criteria: Collector codes in the code system) This value set was imported on 4/24/2019 with a version of 20190104. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
<	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Off scale low
>	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Off scale high
A	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Abnormal
AA	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Critical abnormal
AC	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Anti-complementary substances present
B	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Better
CAR	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Carrier
Carrier	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Carrier
D	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Significant change down
DET	ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83	Detected
...			

Figure 212: Result Observation (V3) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="7c0704bb-9c40-41b5-9c7d-26b2d59e234f" />
    <code code="20570-8" displayName="Hematocrit" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
codeSystemName="LOINC" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="200803190830-0800" />
    <value xsi:type="PQ" value="35.3" unit="%" />
    <interpretationCode code="L" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.83" />
    <author>
        <time value="200803190830-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="333444444" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.4" />
            <addr>
                <streetAddressLine>1017 Health Drive</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Portland</city>
                <state>OR</state>
                <postalCode>99123</postalCode>
                <country>US</country>
            </addr>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-1017" />
            <assignedPerson>
                <name>
                    <given>William</given>
                    <given qualifier="CL">Bill</given>
                    <family>Beaker</family>
                </name>
            </assignedPerson>
            <representedOrganization>
                <name>Good Health Laboratory</name>
            </representedOrganization>
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <referenceRange>
        <observationRange>
            <text>Low</text>
            <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
                <low value="34.9" unit="%" />
                <high value="44.5" unit="%" />
            </value>
            <interpretationCode code="L" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.83" />
        </observationRange>
    </referenceRange>
</observation>
```

3.93 Result Organizer (V3)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 460: Result Organizer (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Results Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional) Results Section (entries required) (V3) (required) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional) Result Observation (V3) (required)

This template provides a mechanism for grouping result observations. It contains information applicable to all of the contained result observations. The Result Organizer code categorizes the contained results into one of several commonly accepted values (e.g., “Hematology”, “Chemistry”, “Nuclear Medicine”).

If any Result Observation within the organizer has a statusCode of "active", the Result Organizer must also have a statusCode of "active".

Table 461: Result Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7121	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass)
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7122	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7126	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-9134	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32588	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-7127	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-7128	
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7123	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-14848	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.39 (Result Status)
effectiveTime	0..1	MAY		1198-31865	
low	1..1	SHALL		1198-32488	
high	1..1	SHALL		1198-32489	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31149	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119
component	1..*	SHALL		1198-7124	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-14850	Result Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7121).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7122).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7126) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1"** (CONF:1198-9134).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32588).

4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-7127).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-7128).
 - a. **SHOULD** be selected from LOINC (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) **OR** SNOMED CT (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96), and **MAY** be selected from CPT-4 (codeSystem 2.16.840.1.113883.6.12) (CONF:1198-19218).
 - b. Laboratory results **SHOULD** be from LOINC (CodeSystem: 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) or other constrained terminology named by the US Department of Health and Human Services Office of National Coordinator or other federal agency (CONF:1198-19219).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-7123).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Result Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-14848).
7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-31865).

Note: The effectiveTime is an interval that spans the effectiveTimes of the contained result observations. Because all contained result observations have a required time stamp, it is not required that this effectiveTime be populated.

 - a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1198-32488).
 - b. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **high** (CONF:1198-32489).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31149).
9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1198-7124) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Result Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-14850).

Figure 213: Result Organizer (V3) Example

```
<organizer classCode="BATTERY" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="7d5a02b0-67a4-11db-bd13-0800200c9a66" />
    <code code="57021-8" displayName="CBC W Auto Differential panel in Blood"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <low value="200803190830-0800" />
        <high value="200803190830-0800" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <author>
        . . .
    </author>
    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Result observation ** -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2" extension="2015-08-01" />
            . . .

        </observation>
    </component>
</organizer>
```

3.94 Risk Concern Act (V2)

[act: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 462: Risk Concern Act (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concerns Section (V2) (optional)	Pregnancy Observation (optional) Caregiver Characteristics (optional) Assessment Scale Observation (optional) Characteristics of Home Environment (optional) Cultural and Religious Observation (optional) Sensory Status (optional) Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (optional) Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Nutritional Status Observation (optional) Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Nutrition Assessment (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (optional) Vital Sign Observation (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Tobacco Use (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Entry Reference (optional) External Document Reference (optional) Result Observation (V3) (optional) Mental Status Observation (V3) (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (optional) Social History Observation (V3) (optional) Result Organizer (V3) (optional) Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Family History Organizer (V3) (optional) Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (optional) Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (optional) Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)

This template represents a risk concern.

It is a wrapper for a single risk concern which may be derived from a variety of sources within an EHR (such as Problem List, Family History, Social History, Social Worker Note, etc.).

A Risk Concern Act represents a health concern that is a risk. A risk is a clinical or socioeconomic condition that the patient does not currently have, but the probability of developing that condition rises to the level of concern such that an intervention and/or monitoring is needed.

Table 463: Risk Concern Act (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32220	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32221	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-32180	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-32222	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .136
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32910	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-32223	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32305	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32306	281694009
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32307	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32225	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32314	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.19 (ProblemAct statusCode)
effectiveTime	0..1	MAY		1198-32226	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-32300	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32179	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32227	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32219	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32181	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32228	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-	Allergy - Intolerance

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32229	Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32182	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32230	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32231	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32183	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32232	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32233	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32184	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32234	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32235	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32185	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32236	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32237	Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32186	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32238	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32239	Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32188	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				32242	002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32243	Mental Status Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32189	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32244	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32245	Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32190	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32246	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32247	Encounter Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32191	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32248	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-32249	Family History Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32192	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32250	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32251	Functional Status Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32193	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32252	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32253	Hospital Admission Diagnosis (V3) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32195	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32256	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32257	Nutrition Assessment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.138)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32197	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32260	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32261	Postprocedure Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32198	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32262	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32263	Pregnancy Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.15.3.8)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32199	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32264	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32265	Preoperative Diagnosis (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32200	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32266	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32267	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32201	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32268	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32269	Result Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32202	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32270	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32271	Sensory Status (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.127)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32203	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32272	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32273	Social History Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32204	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32958	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32275	Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32205	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32276	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32277	Tobacco Use (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32206	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32278	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32279	Vital Sign Observation (V2) (identifier:

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
					urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32207	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32280	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32281	Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32208	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32282	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32283	Problem Observation (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1_0.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32209	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32284	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32285	Caregiver Characteristics (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32210	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32286	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32287	Cultural and Religious Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32211	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32288	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32289	Characteristics of Home Environment (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32212	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32290	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32291	Nutritional Status Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32213	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32292	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
organizer	1..1	SHALL		1198-32293	Result Organizer (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32214	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32294	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32295	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32215	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32296	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32297	Priority Preference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32216	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32298	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32299	Problem Concern Act (V3) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1198-32217	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32301	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
act	1..1	SHALL		1198-32302	Entry Reference (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122)

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
reference	0..*	MAY		1198-32769	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-32908	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = REFR
externalDocument	1..1	SHALL		1198-32909	External Document Reference (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1.0.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "ACT" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1198-32220).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1198-32221).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-32180) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136" (CONF:1198-32222).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2015-08-01" (CONF:1198-32910).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-32223).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-32305).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "281694009" At risk for (CONF:1198-32306).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-32307).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-32225).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [ProblemAct statusCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19 **STATIC** (CONF:1198-32314).
7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-32226).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-32300).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32179) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32227).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32219).
10. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32181) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode**= "REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32228).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Allergy - Intolerance Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32229).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Health Concern Acts where there is a general relationship between the source and the target (Health Concern RELATES TO Health Concern). The Entry Reference template is used here because the target Health Concern Act will be defined elsewhere in the Health Concerns Section and thus a reference to that template is all that is required.

11. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32182) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32230).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32231).

The following entryRelationship represents the relationship between two Health Concern Acts where the target is a component of the source (Health Concern HAS COMPONENT Health Concern). The Entry Reference template is used here because the target Health Concern Act will be defined elsewhere in the Health Concerns Section and thus a reference to that template is all that is required.

12. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32183) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32232).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32233).
13. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32184) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32234).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1198-32235).
14. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32185) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32236).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32237).
15. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32186) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32238).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Self-Care Activities \(ADL and IADL\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128) (CONF:1198-32239).

16. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32188) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32242).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Mental Status Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.74:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32243).
17. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32189) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32244).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Smoking Status - Meaningful Use \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32245).
18. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32190) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32246).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Encounter Diagnosis \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.80:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32247).
19. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32191) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers To (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32248).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Family History Organizer \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.45:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32249).
20. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32192) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32250).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Functional Status Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.67:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32251).
21. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32193) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32252).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Hospital Admission Diagnosis \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.34:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32253).
22. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32195) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32256).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutrition Assessment](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.138) (CONF:1198-32257).
- 23. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32197) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32260).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Postprocedure Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.51:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32261).
- 24. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32198) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32262).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Pregnancy Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.15.3.8) (CONF:1198-32263).
- 25. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32199) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32264).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Preoperative Diagnosis \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.65:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32265).
- 26. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32200) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32266).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(V2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32267).
- 27. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32201) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32268).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Result Observation \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.2:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32269).
- 28. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32202) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32270).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Sensory Status](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127) (CONF:1198-32271).
- 29. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32203) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32272).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Social History Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32273).
30. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32204) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32958).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32275).
31. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32205) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32276).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Tobacco Use \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32277).
32. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32206) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32278).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Vital Sign Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32279).
33. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32207) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32280).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Longitudinal Care Wound Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.114:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32281).
- The following entryRelationship represents the relationship Health Concern HAS SUPPORT Observation.
34. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32208) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32282).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Observation \(v3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32283).
35. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32209) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32284).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Caregiver Characteristics](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.72) (CONF:1198-32285).
36. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32210) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32286).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Cultural and Religious Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.111) (CONF:1198-32287).
37. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32211) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32288).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Characteristics of Home Environment](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.109) (CONF:1198-32289).
38. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32212) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32290).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Nutritional Status Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.124) (CONF:1198-32291).
39. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32213) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32292).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Result Organizer \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.1:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32293).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that the patient puts on the health concern.

40. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32214) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32294).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1198-32295).

The following entryRelationship represents the priority that the provider puts on the health concern.

41. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32215) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32296).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Priority Preference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.143) (CONF:1198-32297).
42. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32216) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32298).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Problem Concern Act \(V3\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.3:2015-08-01) (CONF:1198-32299).

Where a Health Concern needs to reference another entry already described in the CDA document instance, rather than repeating the full content of the entry, the Entry Reference template may be used to reference this entry.

43. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1198-32217) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32301).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Entry Reference](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122) (CONF:1198-32302).
44. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **reference** (CONF:1198-32769).
- a. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="REFR" Refers to (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1198-32908).
 - b. The reference, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [External Document Reference](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.115:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-32909).

Figure 214: Risk Concern Act Example

```

<!-- Risk Concern Act -->
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.136" extension="2015-08-01"/>
    <id root="cbcbe20a-d011-449f-87d1-a23cc3e5f7cf" />
    <code code="X-RISK-CONCERN-ACT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
codeSystemName="LOINC" displayName="At risk for" />
    <!-- This Health Risk has a statusCode of active because it is an active risk -->
    <statusCode code="active" />
    <!-- The effective time is the date that the Health Risk started being followed -
this does not necessarily correlate to the onset date of the contained health issues-->
    <effectiveTime value="20130616" />
    <!-- Health Risk: Malignant neoplastic disease -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Problem Observation -->
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.4" extension="2015-08-01" />
            <id root="8dfacd73-1682-4cc4-9351-e54cce83612" />
            <code code="80943009" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Risk factor" />
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime>
                <low value="20130613" />
            </effectiveTime>
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="409623005" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Malignant neoplastic disease" />
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    ...
    <!-- This entryRelationship represents the relationship
    "Health Risk REFERS TO Health Concern"
-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="REFR">
        <!-- Entry Reference Concern Act -->
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.122" />
            <!-- This id points to an already defined Health Concern -->
            <id root="4eab0e52-dd7d-4285-99eb-72d32ddb195c" />
            <code nullFlavor="NP" />
            <statusCode code="completed" />
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
</act>

```

3.95 Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL)

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128 (open)]

Table 464: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Functional Status Organizer (V2) (required) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents a patient's daily self-care ability. These activities are called Activities of Daily Living (ADL) and Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADL). ADLs involve caring for and moving of the body (e.g., dressing, bathing, eating). IADLs support an independent life style (e.g., cooking, managing medications, driving, shopping).

Table 465: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31389	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31390	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-28190	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-28457	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .128
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-28153	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.47 (ADL Result Type)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32490	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus)
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32491	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-32492	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-28042	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.46 (Ability)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-32469	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31389).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31390).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-28190) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128" (CONF:1098-28457).

If more detailed ADL and IADL activities need to be recorded select the appropriate code from LOINC.

4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [ADL Result Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.47 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-28153).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32490).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-32491).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-32492).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Ability](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.46 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-28042).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-32469).

Table 466: Ability

Value Set: Ability urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.46 (Clinical Focus: A value set containing SNOMED-CT codes for level of dependence.),(Data Element Scope: qualifier that describes current level of function for a functional ability),(Inclusion Criteria: Descendants of SCT Interpretation value (qualifier value) [442499005]),(Exclusion Criteria: 1) Direct Children 2) Descendants-and-self: Reference range interpretation value (qualifier value) [442705008]) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190423. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.46/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1091000175109	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Requires practice (qualifier value)
371150009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Able (qualifier value)
371151008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Unable (qualifier value)
371152001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Assisted (qualifier value)
371153006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Independent (qualifier value)
371154000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dependent (qualifier value)
371155004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Able to and does (qualifier value)
371157007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Able with difficulty (qualifier value)
385640009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Does (qualifier value)
444661000124105	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Does without difficulty (qualifier value)
...			

Table 467: ADL Result Type

Value Set: ADL Result Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.47
 (Clinical Focus: This value set includes Basic ADL and IADL activities.),(Data Element Scope: @Code in Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128 (open)),(Inclusion Criteria: Selected LOINC codes),(Exclusion Criteria: only those selected)

This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190114.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.47/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
28408-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Toileting [QAM]
28409-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Dressing [QAM]
28413-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Ambulation [QAM]
46008-9	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Bathing [CMS Assessment]
46482-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Transferring [OASIS]
46484-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Feeding or eating [OASIS]

Figure 215: Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <!-- Self Care Activities (NEW)-->
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.128" />
  <id root="c6b5a04b-2bf4-49d1-8336-636a3813df0a" />
  <code code="46482-6" displayName="Transferring" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
codeSystemName="LOINC" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <effectiveTime value="200130311" />
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="371153006" displayName="Independent"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
  <author>
    ...
  </author>
</observation>
```

3.96 Sensory Status

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127 (open)]

Table 468: Sensory Status Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Functional Status Section (V2) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Assessment Scale Observation (optional) Author Participation (optional)

This template represents a patient's sensory or speech ability. It may contain an assessment scale observations related to the sensory or speech ability.

Table 469: Sensory Status Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31017	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31018	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-27959	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-27960	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .127
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-27962	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.50 (Sensory Status Problem Type)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31437	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31438	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31441	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-32630	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-32631	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-27974	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.44 (Mental and Functional Status Response)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31439	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		1098-27984	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-27985	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-27986	Assessment Scale Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.69)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31017).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31018).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-27959) such that it

- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127" (CONF:1098-27960).
 - 4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Sensory Status Problem Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.50 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-27962).
 - 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-31437).
 - a. This **statusCode** **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31438).
 - 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31441).
- The effectiveTime/low (a.k.a. "onset date") asserts when the condition became biologically active.
- a. This **effectiveTime** **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1098-32630).
- The effectiveTime/high (a.k.a. "resolution date") asserts when the condition became biologically resolved.
- b. This **effectiveTime** **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-32631).
 - 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Mental and Functional Status Response](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.44 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-27974).
 - 8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31439).
 - 9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-27984) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" has component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-27985).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Assessment Scale Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69) (CONF:1098-27986).

Table 470: Sensory Status Problem Type

Value Set: Sensory Status Problem Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.50 (Clinical Focus: A value set of SNOMED-CT observable codes representing observations of sensory functions.),(Data Element Scope: observable),(Inclusion Criteria: Concepts representing the function that can be observed representing sensory functions.),(Exclusion Criteria: only codes selected based on inclusion criteria) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.50/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10625003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Adaptation to odor, function (observable entity)
128542002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Speech hearing function (observable entity)
13191003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Transformer action, function (observable entity)
16476001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Bone conduction, function (observable entity)
22382001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Stereognosis, function (observable entity)
247297002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Localization of sound source (observable entity)
247310003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Lateralization of sound (observable entity)
247311004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Light touch, function (observable entity)
247312006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Firm touch, function (observable entity)
247313001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Firm pressure touch, function (observable entity)
...			

Table 471: Mental and Functional Status Response

Value Set: Mental and Functional Status Response urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.44 (Clinical Focus: SNOMED-CT qualifier codes that are common responses to mental and functional ability queries.),(Data Element Scope: Value code in Sensory Status template [observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127 (open)] for @Code in Sensory Status Problem Type),(Inclusion Criteria: Limited to specific concepts identified),(Exclusion Criteria: unclear)			
This value set was imported on 6/25/2019 with a version of 20190319.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.44/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
11163003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intact (qualifier value)
1250004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Decreased (qualifier value)
18043004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Thin (qualifier value)
18307000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Altered (qualifier value)
20572008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Good (qualifier value)
260379002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Impaired (qualifier value)
272520006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Degree findings (qualifier value)
30714006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Resistant (qualifier value)
35105006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Increased (qualifier value)
41277001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Lacking (qualifier value)

Figure 216: Sensory and Speech Status Example

```
<entry>
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Sensory and Speech Status(NEW)-->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.127" />
    <id root="c6b5a04b-2bf4-49d1-8336-636a3813df0a" />
    <code code="47078008" displayName="Hearing" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="200130311" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="260379002" displayName="Impaired" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT" />
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!--Assessment Scale Observation -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.69" />
        <id root="c6b5a04b-2bf4-49d1-8336-636a3813df0b" />
        ...
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </observation>
</entry>
```

3.97 Series Act

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.63 (open)]

Table 472: Series Act Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Study Act (required)	SOP Instance Observation (required)

A Series Act contains the DICOM series information for referenced DICOM composite objects. The series information defines the attributes that are used to group composite instances into distinct logical sets. Each series is associated with exactly one study. Series Act clinical statements are only instantiated in the DICOM Object Catalog section inside a Study Act, and thus do not require a separate templateId; in other sections, the SOP Instance Observation is included directly.

Table 473: Series Act Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.63)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9222	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9223	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-10918	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10919	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .63
id	1..*	SHALL		81-9224	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-9225	
@extension	0..0	SHALL NOT		81-9226	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19166	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19167	113015
@codeSystem	0..1	MAY		81-26461	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
qualifier	1..1	SHALL		81-26462	
name	1..1	SHALL		81-26463	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-26464	121139
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26465	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
value	1..1	SHALL		81-26466	
text	0..1	MAY		81-9233	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9235	
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		81-9237	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9238	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15927	SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.6.2.8

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="ACT" Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9222).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9223).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:81-10918) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.63" (CONF:81-10919).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:81-9224).

The @root contains the OID of the study instance UID since DICOM study ids consist only of an OID

- a. Such ids **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root (CONF:81-9225).
 - b. Such ids **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] @extension (CONF:81-9226).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19166).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="113015" (CONF:81-19167).
 - b. This code **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) (CONF:81-26461).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **qualifier** (CONF:81-26462).
 - i. This qualifier **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:81-26463).
 1. This name **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="121139" Modality (CONF:81-26464).
 2. This name **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) (CONF:81-26465).
 - ii. This qualifier **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** (CONF:81-26466).

If present, the text element contains the description of the series

6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:81-9233).

If present, the effectiveTime contains the time the series was started

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9235).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9237) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9238).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) (CONF:81-15927).

Figure 217: Series Act Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.63"/>
    <id root="1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.20060823223142485051"/>
    <code code="113015" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
        codeSystemName="DCM" displayName="Series">
        <qualifier>
            <name code="121139" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
                codeSystemName="DCM" displayName="Modality"/>
            <value code="CR" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" codeSystemName="DCM"
                displayName="Computed Radiography"/>
        </qualifier>
    </code>
    <!-- **** SOP Instance UID *** -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <observation classCode="DGIMG" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8"/>
...
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</act>
```

3.98 Service Delivery Location

[participantRole: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32 (open)]

Table 474: Service Delivery Location Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Encounter Activity (V3) (optional)	

This clinical statement represents the location of a service event where an act, observation or procedure took place.

Table 475: Service Delivery Location Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
participantRole (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7758	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.111 (HL7RoleCode) = SDLOC
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-7635	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10524	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32
code	1..1	SHALL		81-16850	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275 (HealthcareServiceLocation)
addr	0..*	SHOULD		81-7760	
telecom	0..*	SHOULD		81-7761	
playingEntity	0..1	MAY		81-7762	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-7763	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41 (HL7EntityClass) = PLC
name	0..1	MAY		81-16037	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="SDLOC" (CodeSystem: HL7RoleCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.111 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7758).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-7635) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32" (CONF:81-10524).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **HealthcareServiceLocation** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-16850).
4. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:81-7760).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:81-7761).
6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:81-7762).
 - a. The playingEntity, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**="PLC" (CodeSystem: HL7EntityClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-7763).
 - b. The playingEntity, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **name** (CONF:81-16037).

Table 476: HealthcareServiceLocation

Value Set: HealthcareServiceLocation urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275 (Clinical Focus: Concepts representing locations and settings where healthcare services are provided. This includes non- (or atypical) patient care locations where emergency services may be provided. The values are derived from the NHSN Healthcare Facility Patient Care Location code system.),(Data Element Scope: Location),(Inclusion Criteria: All codes in code system),(Exclusion Criteria: Codes that do not represent an actual location where health care services can be delivered, IE: Float, or a location aggregation.) This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190424. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1005-8	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Cardiac Catheterization Room/Suite
1007-4	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Endoscopy Suite
1008-2	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Radiology
1009-0	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Pulmonary Function Testing
1010-8	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	General Laboratory
1011-6	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Clinical Chemistry Laboratory
1012-4	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Hematology Laboratory
1013-2	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Histology-Surgical Pathology Laboratory
1014-0	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Microbiology Laboratory
1015-7	HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.25 9	Serology Laboratory
...			

Figure 218: Service Delivery Location Example

```
<participantRole classCode="SDLOC">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.32"/>
    <code code="1160-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.259"
        codeSystemName="HealthcareServiceLocation" displayName="Urgent Care Center"/>
    <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>17 Daws Rd.</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Blue Bell</city>
        <state>MA</state>
        <postalCode>02368</postalCode>
        <country>US</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom use="WP" value="tel:+1(555)555-5000"/>
    <playingEntity classCode="PLC">
        <name>Community Health and Hospitals</name>
    </playingEntity>
</participantRole>
```

3.99 Severity Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 477: Severity Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional)	

This clinical statement represents the gravity of the reaction. The Severity Observation characterizes the Reaction Observation. A person may manifest many symptoms in a reaction to a single substance, and each reaction to the substance can be represented. However, each reaction observation can have only one severity observation associated with it. For example, someone may have a rash reaction observation as well as an itching reaction observation, but each can have only one level of severity.

Note the severity observation is no longer recommended for use with the Allergy and Intolerance Observation. The Criticality Observation is preferred for characterizing the Allergy and Intolerance.

Table 478: Severity Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7345	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7346	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7347	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10525	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .8
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32577	2014-06-09
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19168	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19169	SEV
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32170	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7352	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19115	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-7356	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.6.8 (Reaction Severity)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7345).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7346).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7347) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8"** (CONF:1098-10525).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32577).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-19168).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="SEV"** Severity (CONF:1098-19169).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-32170).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-7352).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19115).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Reaction Severity](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.8 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7356).

Table 479: Reaction Severity

Value Set: Reaction Severity urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.8 (Clinical Focus: This is a description of the level of severity of the REACTION),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria: Three severities (map fatal to severe, moderate to severe to severe, mild to moderate to moderate)),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.8/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
24484000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Severe (severity modifier) (qualifier value)
255604002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Mild (qualifier value)
6736007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Moderate (severity modifier) (qualifier value)

Figure 219: Severity Observation (V2) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <code code="SEV" displayName="Severity Observation" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
codeSystemName="ActCode" />
  <text>
    <reference value="#allergyseverity1" />
  </text>
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <value xsi:type="CD" code="371924009" displayName="Moderate to severe"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
</observation>
```

3.100 Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09
 (open)]

Table 480: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Social History Section (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the current smoking status of the patient as specified in Meaningful Use (MU) Stage 2 requirements. Historic smoking status observations as well as details about the smoking habit (e.g., how many per day) would be represented in the Tobacco Use template.

This template represents a "snapshot in time" observation, simply reflecting what the patient's current smoking status is at the time of the observation. As a result, the effectiveTime is constrained to a time stamp, and will approximately correspond with the author/time. Details regarding the time period when the patient is/was smoking would be recorded in the Tobacco Use template.

If the patient's current smoking status is unknown, the value element must be populated with SNOMED CT code 266927001 to communicate "Unknown if ever smoked" from the Current Smoking Status Value Set.

Table 481: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14806	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14807	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-14815	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-14816	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .78
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32573	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32401	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19170	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31039	72166-2
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32157	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-14809	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19116	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-31928	
low	0..0	SHALL NOT		1098-32894	
width	0..0	SHALL NOT		1098-32895	
high	0..0	SHALL NOT		1098-32896	
center	0..0	SHALL NOT		1098-32897	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-14810	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-14817	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.38 (Smoking Status)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31148	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14806).

2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-14807).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-14815) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78" (CONF:1098-14816).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32573).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32401).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-19170).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="72166-2" Tobacco smoking status NHIS (CONF:1098-31039).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32157).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-14809).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19116).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31928).

Note: This template represents a "snapshot in time" observation, simply reflecting what the patient's current smoking status is at the time of the observation. As a result, the effectiveTime is constrained to just a time stamp, and will approximately correspond with the author/time.

 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **low** (CONF:1098-32894).
 - b. This effectiveTime **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **width** (CONF:1098-32895).
 - c. This effectiveTime **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **high** (CONF:1098-32896).
 - d. This effectiveTime **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **center** (CONF:1098-32897).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD" (CONF:1098-14810).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Smoking Status](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-14817).
 - b. If the patient's current smoking status is unknown, @code **SHALL** contain '266927001' (Unknown if ever smoked) from ValueSet Current Smoking Status (2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38 STATIC 2014-09-01) (CONF:1098-31019).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31148).

Table 482: Smoking Status

Value Set: Smoking Status urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38

(Clinical Focus: Classification of a patient's smoking behavior),(Data Element Scope: This value set is consistent with the Smoking Status codes used by ONC for Meaningful Use),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)

This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
266919005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Never smoked tobacco (finding)
266927001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tobacco smoking consumption unknown (finding)
42804100012 4106	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Occasional tobacco smoker (finding)
42806100012 4105	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Light tobacco smoker (finding)
42807100012 4103	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Heavy tobacco smoker (finding)
449868002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Smokes tobacco daily (finding)
77176002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Smoker (finding)
8517006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Ex-smoker (finding)

Figure 220: Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id extension="123456789" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" />
    <code code="72166-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="Tobacco smoking status NHIS" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <!-- The effectiveTime reflects when the current smoking status was observed. -->
    <effectiveTime value="20120910" />
    <!-- The value represents the patient's smoking status currently observed. -->
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="8517006" displayName="Former smoker"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <time value="199803161030-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="555555555" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
</observation>
```

3.101 Social History Observation (V3)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 483: Social History Observation (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Social History Section (V3) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents a patient's occupations, lifestyle, and environmental health risk factors. Demographic data (e.g., marital status, race, ethnicity, religious affiliation) are captured in the header. Though tobacco use and exposure may be represented with a Social History Observation, it is recommended to use the Current Smoking Status template or the Tobacco Use template instead, to represent smoking or tobacco habits.

Table 484: Social History Observation (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8548	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8549	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-8550	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10526	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .38
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32495	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-8551	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-8558	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.60 (Social History Type)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-8553	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19117	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-31868	
value	0..1	SHOULD		1198-8559	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31869	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8548).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-8549).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-8550) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38"** (CONF:1198-10526).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32495).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-8551).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [social History Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.60 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8558).
 - a. If @codeSystem is not LOINC, then this code **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] translation, which **SHOULD** be selected from CodeSystem LOINC (urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32951).

6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-8553).
 - a. This **statusCode** **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19117).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-31868).
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **value** (CONF:1198-8559).
 - a. If Observation/value is a physical quantity (xsi:type="PQ"), the unit of measure **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive (2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839) **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1198-8555).
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31869).

Table 485: Social History Type

Value Set: Social History Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.60 (Clinical Focus: Classification of questions bearing on a patient's behavior, achievement, and exogenous health factors),(Data Element Scope:),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.60/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
102487004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Environmental risk factor (observable entity)
105421008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Educational achievement (observable entity)
160573003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Alcohol intake (observable entity)
228272008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Health-related behavior (observable entity)
229819007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tobacco use and exposure (observable entity)
256235009	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Exercise (observable entity)
302160007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Household, family and support network detail (observable entity)
363908000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Details of drug misuse behavior (observable entity)
364393001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Nutritional observable (observable entity)
364703007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Employment detail (observable entity)
...			

Figure 221: Social History Observation (V3) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.38"
    extension="2015-08-01" />
  <id root="37f76c51-6411-4e1d-8a37-957fd49d2cef" />
  <code code="160573003" displayName="Alcohol intake"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT">
    <translation code="74013-4"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Alcoholic drinks per day"></translation>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20120215" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="PQ" value="12" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
      <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
      ...
      </author>
    </observation>
```

3.102 SOP Instance Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8 (open)]

Table 486: SOP Instance Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Series Act (required) Text Observation (optional) Code Observations (optional) Quantity Measurement Observation (optional) Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	Purpose of Reference Observation (optional) Referenced Frames Observation (optional)

A SOP Instance Observation contains the DICOM Service Object Pair (SOP) Instance information for referenced DICOM composite objects. The SOP Instance act class is used to reference both image and non-image DICOM instances. The text attribute contains the DICOM WADO reference.

Table 487: SOP Instance Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9240	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = DGIMG
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9241	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
id	1..*	SHALL		81-9242	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9244	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19225	
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-19227	1.2.840.10008.2.6.1
text	0..1	SHOULD		81-9246	
@mediaType	1..1	SHALL		81-9247	application/dicom
reference	1..1	SHALL		81-9248	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9250	
@value	1..1	SHALL		81-9251	
low	0..0	SHALL NOT		81-9252	
high	0..0	SHALL NOT		81-9253	
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9254	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9255	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9257	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9258	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = RSON
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15935	Purpose of Reference Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.6.2.9)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9260	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9261	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15936	Referenced Frames Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.6.2.10)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="DGIMG" Diagnostic Image (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9240).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9241).

The @root contains an OID representing the DICOM SOP Instance UID

3. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-9242).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9244).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code** (CONF:81-19225).
 - i. **@code** is an OID for a valid SOP class name UID (CONF:81-19226).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.6.1"** DCMUID (CONF:81-19227).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:81-9246).
 - a. The text, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@mediaType="application/dicom"** (CONF:81-9247).
 - b. The text, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **reference** (CONF:81-9248).
 - i. **SHALL** contain a **@value** that contains a WADO reference as a URI (CONF:81-9249).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9250).
 - a. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@value** (CONF:81-9251).
 - b. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **low** (CONF:81-9252).
 - c. The effectiveTime, if present, **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **high** (CONF:81-9253).
7. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9254) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="SUBJ"** Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9255).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9257) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="RSON"** Has Reason (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9258).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Purpose of Reference Observation** (**identifier:** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.9) (CONF:81-15935).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9260) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="COMP"** Has Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9261).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Referenced Frames Observation** (**identifier:** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.10) (CONF:81-15936).
 - c. This entryRelationship **SHALL** be present if the referenced DICOM object is a multiframe object and the reference does not apply to all frames (CONF:81-9263).

Figure 222: SOP Instance Observation Example

```
<observation classCode="DGIMG" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8"/>
  <id root="1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.20060823.200608232232322.3"/>
  <code code="1.2.840.10008.5.1.4.1.1.1"
codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.6.1" codeSystemName="DCMUID"
displayName="Computed Radiography Image Storage"></code>
  <text mediaType="application/dicom">
    <reference
value="http://www.example.org/wado?requestType=WADO&studyUID=1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044
```

```

785528.114289542805&seriesUID=1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.20060823223142485051&
;objectUID=1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.20060823.200608232232322.3&contentType=appli
cation/dicom"/>
    <!--reference to image 1 (PA) -->
</text>
<effectiveTime value="200608231235-0800"/>
</observation>

```

3.103 Study Act

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6 (open)]

Table 488: Study Act Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
DICOM Object Catalog Section - DCM 121181 (required)	Series Act (required)

A Study Act contains the DICOM study information that defines the characteristics of a referenced medical study performed on a patient. A study is a collection of one or more series of medical images, presentation states, SR documents, overlays, and/or curves that are logically related for the purpose of diagnosing a patient. Each study is associated with exactly one patient. A study may include composite instances that are created by a single modality, multiple modalities, or by multiple devices of the same modality. The study information is modality-independent. Study Act clinical statements are only instantiated in the DICOM Object Catalog section; in other sections, the SOP Instance Observation is included directly.

Table 489: Study Act Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9207	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9208	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9209	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10533	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6
id	1..*	SHALL		81-9210	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-9213	
@extension	0..0	SHALL NOT		81-9211	
code	1..1	SHALL		81-19172	
@code	1..1	SHALL		81-19173	113014
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		81-26506	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4 (DCM) = 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
text	0..1	MAY		81-9215	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		81-15995	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		81-15996	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9216	
entryRelationship	1..*	SHALL		81-9219	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9220	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = COMP
act	1..1	SHALL		81-15937	Series Act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.6.3)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9207).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9208).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9209) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6"** (CONF:81-10533).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:81-9210).

The @root contains the OID of the study instance UID since DICOM study ids consist only of an OID

- a. Such ids **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root** (CONF:81-9213).
- b. Such ids **SHALL NOT** contain [0..0] **@extension** (CONF:81-9211).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-19172).

- a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="113014" (CONF:81-19173).
- b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" (CodeSystem: DCM urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) (CONF:81-26506).

If present, the text element contains the description of the study.

6. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:81-9215).
 - a. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:81-15995).
 - i. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @value (CONF:81-15996).
 1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:81-15997).

If present, the effectiveTime contains the time the study was started

7. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9216).
8. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9219) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="COMP" Component (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9220).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Series Act** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.63) (CONF:81-15937).

Figure 223: Study Act Example

```
<act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.6"/>
  <id root="1.2.840.113619.2.62.994044785528.114289542805"/>
  <code code="113014" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4" codeSystemName="DCM"
displayName="Study"/>
  <!-- **** Series *****-->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
      ...
    </act>
  </entryRelationship>
</act>
```

3.104 Substance Administered Act

[act: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118 (open)]

Table 490: Substance Administered Act Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Activity (V2) (optional)	
Immunization Activity (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the administration course in a series. The entryRelationship/sequenceNumber in the containing template shows the order of this particular administration in that medication series.

Table 491: Substance Administered Act Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
act (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31500	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = ACT
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31501	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-31502	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-31503	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .118
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31504	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31506	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31507	416118004
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31508	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-31505	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	0..1	MAY		1098-31509	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="ACT"** Act (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6) (CONF:1098-31500).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001) (CONF:1098-31501).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-31502) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118"** (CONF:1098-31503).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31504).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-31506).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="416118004"** Administration (CONF:1098-31507).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1098-31508).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-31505).
7. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-31509).

Figure 224: Substance Administered Act Example

```

<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    ...
    <consumable>
        ...
        <code code="43" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.59" displayName="Hepatitis B
Vaccine" codeSystemName="CVX" />
    </consumable>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
        <!-- This entryRelationship sequenceNumber indicates this is #2 in the series -->
        <sequenceNumber value="2" />
        <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- Substance Administered Act Template -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.118" />
            <id root="df8908d0-40f2-11e3-aa6e-0800200c9a66" />
            <code code="416118004" displayName="administration"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime value="19991101" />
        </act>
    </entryRelationship>
    ...
</substanceAdministration>

```

3.105 Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 492: Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Reaction Observation (V2) (optional)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Severity Observation (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Criticality Observation (optional) Allergy Status Observation (optional)

This template reflects a discrete observation about a patient's allergy or intolerance to a substance or device. Because it is a discrete observation, it will have a statusCode of "completed". The effectiveTime, also referred to as the 'biologically relevant time' is the time at which the observation holds for the patient. For a provider seeing a patient in the clinic today, observing a history of penicillin allergy that developed five years ago, the effectiveTime is five years ago.

The effectiveTime of the Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying allergy/intolerance is resolved. If known to be resolved, then an effectiveTime/high would be present. If the date of resolution is not known, then effectiveTime/high will be present with a nullFlavor of "UNK".

Table 493: Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16303	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16304	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-16305	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-16306	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3 .90
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32527	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-16307	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-16345	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-16346	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32171	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16308	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-26354	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-16309	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-31536	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-31537	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-16312	
@code	1..1	SHALL	CS	1098-16317	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.6.2 (Allergy and Intolerance Type)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31144	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)
participant	0..*	SHOULD		1098-16318	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16319	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = CSM
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				16320	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16321	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
playingEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-16322	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16323	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 1 (HL7EntityClass) = MMAT
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-16324	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1010.1 (Substance Reactant for Intolerance)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-16333	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16335	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-16334	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16336	Allergy Status Observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1098-16337	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16339	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = MFST
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-16338	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16340	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD NOT		1098-16341	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16342	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-16343	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-16344	Severity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32935	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32936	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-32937	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32938	Criticality Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16303).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16304).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-16305) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90"** (CONF:1098-16306).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32527).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-16307).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-16345).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ASSERTION"** Assertion (CONF:1098-16346).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-32171).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-16308).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14) (CONF:1098-26354).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-16309).
 Note: The effectiveTime/low (a.k.a. "onset date") asserts when the allergy/intolerance became biologically active. The effectiveTime/high (a.k.a. "resolution date") asserts when the allergy/intolerance became biologically resolved.

If the allergy/intolerance is known to be resolved, but the date of resolution is not known, then the high element SHALL be present, and the nullFlavor attribute SHALL be set to 'UNK'.

- a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1098-31536).
- b. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-31537).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with **@xsi:type="CD"** (CONF:1098-16312).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Allergy and Intolerance Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-16317).
 Note: Many systems will simply assign a fixed value here (e.g., "allergy to substance").
9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31144).

10. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **participant** (CONF:1098-16318) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CSM" Consumable (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16319).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1098-16320).
 - This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="MANU" Manufactured Product (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16321).
 - This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1098-16322).
 - This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="MMAT" Manufactured Material (CodeSystem: HL7EntityClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16323).
 - This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **MAY** be selected from ValueSet Substance Reactant for Intolerance urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-16324).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-16333) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16335).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-16334).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Allergy Status Observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20) (CONF:1098-16336).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-16337) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="MFST" Is Manifestation of (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16339).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-16338).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Reaction Observation (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16340).
13. **SHOULD NOT** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-16341) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16342).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-16343).
 - SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Severity Observation (v2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-16344).
14. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32935) such that it
- SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32936).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-32937).
- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Criticality Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145) (CONF:1098-32938).

Table 494: Allergy and Intolerance Type

<p>Value Set: Allergy and Intolerance Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2 (Clinical Focus: The class of substance and intolerance suffered by the patient),(Data Element Scope: Describes any medication allergies, adverse reactions, idiosyncratic reactions, anaphylaxis/anaphylactoid reactions to food items, and metabolic variations or adverse reactions/allergies to other substances (such as latex, iodine, tape adhesives)),(Inclusion Criteria:),(Exclusion Criteria:)</p> <p>This value set was imported on 6/24/2019 with a version of 20190319.</p> <p>Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2/expansion</p>			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
235719002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intolerance to food (finding)
414285001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Allergy to food (finding)
416098002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Allergy to drug (finding)
418038007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Propensity to adverse reactions to substance (finding)
418471000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Propensity to adverse reactions to food (disorder)
419199007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Allergy to substance (finding)
419511003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Propensity to adverse reactions to drug (finding)
420134006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Propensity to adverse reaction (finding)
59037007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Intolerance to drug (finding)

Table 495: Substance Reactant for Intolerance

Value Set: Substance Reactant for Intolerance urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1

(Clinical Focus: A substance or other type of agent (eg. Sunshine) that may be associated with an intolerance reaction event or a propensity to such an event. These concepts are expected to be at a more general level of abstraction (ingredients versus more specific formulations). This value set is quite general and includes concepts that may never cause an adverse event, particularly the included SNOMED CT concepts. This code system-specific value sets in this grouping value set are intended to provide broad coverage of all kinds of agents, but the expectation for use is that the chosen concept identifier for a substance should be appropriately specific and drawn from the available code systems in the following priority order: NDFRT, then RXNORM, then UNII, then SNOMEDCT. UNII is not included in the initial version. This overarching grouping value set is intended to support identification of drug classes, individual medication ingredients, foods, general substances and environmental entities.),(Data Element Scope: substance elements),(Inclusion Criteria: Any concept that could at some point cause an allergy or intolerance. Intended to include following value sets: Medication Clinical Drug (RxNorm), Clinical Drug Class (NDF-RT), Substance Other Than Clinical Drug (SNOMED CT). It was originally to also include all UNII codes but this will not be included initially.),(Exclusion Criteria: non-substance)

This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190620.

Value Set Source:

<https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1/expansion>

Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
1000082	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	alcaftadine
1000086	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Lastacaft
1000104	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	incobotulinumtoxinA
1000108	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Xeomin
1000112	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	medroxyprogesterone acetate
1000146	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	estradiol cypionate
1000492	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	resveratrol
1000577	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	microcrystalline cellulose
1000581	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Trichlorfon
1000705	RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88	Benzalkonium / Tolnaftate
...			

3.105.1 Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 496: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Allergy Concern Act (V3) (required)	Reaction Observation (V2) (optional) Severity Observation (V2) (optional) Author Participation (optional) Criticality Observation (optional) Allergy Status Observation (optional)

This template reflects a discrete observation about a patient's allergy or intolerance. Because it is a discrete observation, it will have a statusCode of "completed". The effectiveTime, also referred to as the "biologically relevant time" is the time at which the observation holds for the patient. For a provider seeing a patient in the clinic today, observing a history of penicillin allergy that developed five years ago, the effectiveTime is five years ago.

The effectiveTime of the Allergy - Intolerance Observation is the definitive indication of whether or not the underlying allergy/intolerance is resolved. If known to be resolved, then an effectiveTime/high would be present. If the date of resolution is not known, then effectiveTime/high will be present with a nullFlavor of "UNK".

The agent responsible for an allergy or adverse reaction is not always a manufactured material (for example, food allergies), nor is it necessarily consumed. The following constraints reflect limitations in the base CDA R2 specification, and should be used to represent any type of responsible agent, i.e., use playingEntity classCode = "MMAT" for all agents, manufactured or not.

Table 497: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7379	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7380	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
@negationInd	0..1	MAY		1098-31526	
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7381	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10488	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .7
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32526	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7382	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15947	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-15948	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32153	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-19084	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19085	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-7387	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-31538	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-31539	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-7390	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.3221.6.2 (Allergy and Intolerance Type)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31143	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
participant	1..1	SHALL		1098-7402	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7403	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.9 0 (HL7ParticipationType) = CSM
participantRole	1..1	SHALL		1098-	

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
				7404	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7405	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 10 (HL7RoleClass) = MANU
playingEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-7406	
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7407	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 1 (HL7EntityClass) = MMAT
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-7419	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4 .1010.1 (Substance Reactant for Intolerance)
entryRelationship	0..1	MAY		1098-32939	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32940	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-32941	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32942	Allergy Status Observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD NOT		1098-9961	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-9962	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-9964	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15956	Severity Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7447	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7907	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = MFST
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-7449	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-15955	Reaction Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09
entryRelationship	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32910	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-32911	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SUBJ

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
@inversionInd	1..1	SHALL		1098-32912	true
observation	1..1	SHALL		1098-32913	Criticality Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.145

1. Conforms to [Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation \(V2\)](#) template (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.24.3.90:2014-06-09).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode**= "OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7379).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode**= "EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7380).
4. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@negationInd** (CONF:1098-31526).
Note: Use negationInd="true" to indicate that the allergy was not observed.
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-7381) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root**= "2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7" (CONF:1098-10488).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension**= "2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32526).
6. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-7382).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-15947).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "ASSERTION" Assertion (CONF:1098-15948).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem**= "2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-32153).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-19084).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code**= "completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19085).
9. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-7387).
Note: If the allergy/intolerance is known to be resolved, but the date of resolution is not known, then the high element SHALL be present, and the nullFlavor attribute SHALL be set to 'UNK'.
 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1098-31538).
Note: The effectiveTime/low (a.k.a. "onset date") asserts when the allergy/intolerance became biologically active.
 - b. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-31539).
Note: The effectiveTime/high (a.k.a. "resolution date") asserts when the allergy/intolerance became biologically resolved.
10. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Allergy and Intolerance Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7390).
Note: The consumable participant points to the precise allergen or substance of intolerance.

Because the consumable and the reaction are more clinically relevant than a categorization of the allergy/adverse event type, many systems will simply assign a fixed value here (e.g., "allergy to substance").

11. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31143).
12. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participant** (CONF:1098-7402) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="CSM" Consumable (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7403).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **participantRole** (CONF:1098-7404).
 - i. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="MANU" Manufactured Product (CodeSystem: HL7RoleClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7405).
 - ii. This participantRole **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **playingEntity** (CONF:1098-7406).
 1. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="MMAT" Manufactured Material (CodeSystem: HL7EntityClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7407).
 2. This playingEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet **Substance Reactant for Intolerance** urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-7419).
13. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32939) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32940).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-32941).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Allergy Status Observation** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.28:2019-06-20) (CONF:1098-32942).
14. **SHOULD NOT** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-9961) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-9962).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-9964).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Severity Observation (v2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15956).
15. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-7447) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="MFST" Is Manifestation of (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7907).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-7449).

- c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Reaction Observation \(v2\)](#) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9:2014-06-09) (CONF:1098-15955).
16. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **entryRelationship** (CONF:1098-32910) such that it
- a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SUBJ" Has Subject (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002) (CONF:1098-32911).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @inversionInd="true" True (CONF:1098-32912).
 - c. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [Criticality Observation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.145) (CONF:1098-32913).

Figure 225: Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Allergy observation -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.7" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="901db0f8-9355-4794-81cd-fd951ef07917" />
    <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
    <!-- Observation statusCode represents the status of the act of observing -->
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <!-- The low value reflects the date of onset of the allergy -->
        <low nullFlavor="UNK" />
        <!-- The high value reflects when the allergy was known to be resolved
            (and will generally be absent) -->
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="419199007" displayName="Allergy to substance"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
    <author>
        <time value="201010110915-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="222223333" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.3" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
    <participant typeCode="CSM">
        <participantRole classCode="MANU">
            <playingEntity classCode="MMAT">
                <code code="2670" displayName="Codeine" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.88"
codeSystemName="RxNorm" />
            </playingEntity>
        </participantRole>
    </participant>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="MFST" inversionInd="true">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Reaction observation -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.9" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <id root="38c63dea-1a43-4f84-ab71-1ffd04f6a1dd" />
            <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
            <text>
                <reference value="#reaction2" />
            </text>
            <statusCode code="completed" />
            <effectiveTime>
                <low nullFlavor="UNK" />
            </effectiveTime>
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="56018004" displayName="Wheezing"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <!-- ** Severity observation -->
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.8" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <code code="SEV" displayName="Severity Observation"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" codeSystemName="ActCode" />
            <text>
                <reference value="#allergyseverity2" />
            </text>
            <statusCode code="completed" />
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>

```

```

<value xsi:type="CD" code="255604002" displayName="Mild"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" />
</observation>
</entryRelationship>
</observation>

```

3.106 Text Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12 (open)]

Table 498: Text Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	SOP Instance Observation (optional) Quantity Measurement Observation (optional)

DICOM Template 2000 specifies that Imaging Report Elements of Value Type Text are contained in sections. The Imaging Report Elements are inferred from Basic Diagnostic Imaging Report Observations that consist of image references and measurements (linear, area, volume, and numeric). Text DICOM Imaging Report Elements in this context are mapped to CDA text observations that are section components and are related to the SOP Instance Observations (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) or Quantity Measurement Observations (templateId 2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14) by the SPRT (Support) act relationship.

A Text Observation is required if the findings in the section text are represented as inferred from SOP Instance Observations.

Table 499: Text Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9288	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9289	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		81-9290	
@root	1..1	SHALL		81-10534	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12
code	1..1	SHALL		81-9291	
text	0..1	MAY		81-9295	
reference	0..1	SHOULD		81-15938	
@value	0..1	SHOULD		81-15939	
effectiveTime	0..1	SHOULD		81-9294	
value	1..1	SHALL	ED	81-9292	
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9298	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9299	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15941	SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8)
entryRelationship	0..*	MAY		81-9301	
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		81-9302	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 002 (HL7ActRelationshipType) = SPRT
observation	1..1	SHALL		81-15942	Quantity Measurement Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9288).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9289).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:81-9290) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12"** (CONF:81-10534).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:81-9291).
5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **text** (CONF:81-9295).
 - a. The text, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **reference** (CONF:81-15938).
 - i. The reference, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@value** (CONF:81-15939).

1. This reference/@value **SHALL** begin with a '#' and **SHALL** point to its corresponding narrative (using the approach defined in CDA Release 2, section 4.3.5.1) (CONF:81-15940).
6. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:81-9294).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="ED" (CONF:81-9292).
8. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9298) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has Support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9299).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] SOP Instance Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.8) (CONF:81-15941).
9. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **entryRelationship** (CONF:81-9301) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @typeCode="SPRT" Has Support (CodeSystem: HL7ActRelationshipType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002 **STATIC**) (CONF:81-9302).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] Quantity Measurement Observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.14) (CONF:81-15942).

Figure 226: Text Observation Example

```

<text>
  <paragraph>
    <caption>Finding</caption>
    <content ID="Fndng2">The cardiomedastinum is within normal limits. The trachea is midline. The previously described opacity at the medial right lung base has cleared. There are no new infiltrates. There is a new round density at the left hilus, superiorly (diameter about 45mm). A CT scan is recommended for further evaluation. The pleural spaces are clear. The visualized musculoskeletal structures and the upper abdomen are stable and unremarkable.</content>
  </paragraph>
  ...
</text>
<entry>
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Text Observation -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.12"/>
    <code code="121071" codeSystem="1.2.840.10008.2.16.4"
      codeSystemName="DCM" displayName="Finding"/>
    <value xsi:type="ED">
      <reference value="#Fndng2"/>
    </value>
    ...
    <!-- entryRelationships to SOP Instance Observations and Quantity
        Measurement Observations may go here -->
  </observation>
</entry>
```

3.107 Tobacco Use (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 500: Tobacco Use (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Health Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)
Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	
Social History Section (V3) (optional)	

This template represents a patient's tobacco use.

All the types of tobacco use are represented using the codes from the tobacco use and exposure-finding hierarchy in SNOMED CT, including codes required for recording smoking status in Meaningful Use Stage 2.

The effectiveTime element is used to describe dates associated with the patient's tobacco use. Whereas the Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) template (2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.78:2014-06-09) represents a "snapshot in time" observation, simply reflecting what the patient's current smoking status is at the time of the observation, this Tobacco Use template uses effectiveTime to represent the biologically relevant time of the observation. Thus, to record a former smoker, an observation of "cigarette smoker" will have an effectiveTime/low defining the time the patient started to smoke cigarettes and an effectiveTime/high defining the time the patient ceased to smoke cigarettes. To record a current smoker, the effectiveTime/low will define the time the patient started smoking and will have no effectiveTime/high to indicated that the patient is still smoking.

Table 501: Tobacco Use (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16558	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16559	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-16566	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-16567	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .85
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32589	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-32400	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19174	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19175	11367-0
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-32172	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-16561	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19118	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-16564	
low	1..1	SHALL		1098-16565	
high	0..1	MAY		1098-31431	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-16562	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.41 (Tobacco Use)
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-31152	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16558).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-16559).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-16566) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85"** (CONF:1098-16567).

- b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@extension="2014-06-09"` (CONF:1098-32589).
- 4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-32400).
- 5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-19174).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@code="11367-0"` History of tobacco use (CONF:1098-19175).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1]
`@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"` (CodeSystem: LOINC
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1098-32172).
- 6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-16561).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] `@code="completed"` Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19118).
- 7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-16564).

Note: The effectiveTime represents the biologically relevant time of the observation. A "former smoker" is recorded with the proper code "current smoker" with an effectiveTime/low and effectiveTime/high defining the time during which the patient was a smoker.

 - a. This effectiveTime **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **low** (CONF:1098-16565).
 - b. This effectiveTime **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **high** (CONF:1098-31431).
- 8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with `@xsi:type="CD"`, where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Tobacco Use](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.41 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-16562).
- 9. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [**Author Participation**](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-31152).

Table 502: Tobacco Use

Value Set: Tobacco Use urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.41 (Clinical Focus: Detailed classification of a patient's smoking behavior),(Data Element Scope: Condition),(Inclusion Criteria: Contains all values descending from the SNOMED CT 365980008 tobacco use and exposure - finding hierarchy excluding temporal findings such as 'Former Smoker' 'Never Chewed', etc'),(Exclusion Criteria:) This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190319. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.41/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
10761391000 119102	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tobacco use in mother complicating childbirth (finding)
110483000	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tobacco user (finding)
134406006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Smoking reduced (finding)
160603005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Light cigarette smoker (1-9 cigs/day) (finding)
160604004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Moderate cigarette smoker (10-19 cigs/day) (finding)
160605003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Heavy cigarette smoker (20-39 cigs/day) (finding)
160606002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Very heavy cigarette smoker (40+ cigs/day) (finding)
160612007	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Keeps trying to stop smoking (finding)
160613002	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Admitted tobacco consumption possibly untrue (finding)
160614008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Tobacco consumption unknown (finding)
...			

Figure 227: Tobacco Use (V2) Example

```

<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Tobacco use ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.85" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <id root="45efb604-7049-4a2e-ad33-d38556c9636c" />
    <code code="11367-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="History of tobacco
use" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <!-- The low value reflects the start date of the observation/value (moderate
smoker) -->
        <low value="20090214" />
        <!-- The high value reflects the end date of the observation/value (moderate
smoker) -->
        <high value="20110215" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="160604004" displayName="Moderate cigarette smoker, 10-
19/day" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" />
    <author typeCode="AUT">
        <time value="201209101145-0800" />
        <assignedAuthor>
            <id extension="555555555" root="1.1.1.1.1.1.2" />
        </assignedAuthor>
    </author>
</observation>

```

3.108 Vital Sign Observation (V2)

[observation: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 503: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (required) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional)	Author Participation (optional)

This template represents measurement of common vital signs. Vital signs are represented with additional vocabulary constraints for type of vital sign and unit of measure.

The following is a list of recommended units for common types of vital sign measurements:

Name	Unit
PulseOx	%
Height/Head Circumf	cm
Weight	kg
Temp	Cel
BP	mm[Hg]
Pulse/Resp Rate	/min
BMI	kg/m ²

Name	Unit
BSA	m2
inhaled oxygen concentration	%

Table 504: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7297	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7298	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-7299	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-10527	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .27
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32574	2014-06-09
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-7300	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-7301	
@code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-32934	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.62 (Vital Sign Result Type)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-7303	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-19119	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-7304	
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	1098-7305	
@unit	1..1	SHALL		1098-31579	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.12839 (UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive)
interpretationCode	0..1	MAY		1098-7307	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-32886	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.78 (Observation Interpretation (HL7))
methodCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C E>	1098-7308	
targetSiteCode	0..1	MAY	SET<C D>	1098-7309	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1098-7310	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @classCode="OBS" Observation (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7297).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @moodCode="EVN" Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-7298).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] templateId (CONF:1098-7299) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27" (CONF:1098-10527).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @extension="2014-06-09" (CONF:1098-32574).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] id (CONF:1098-7300).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] code (CONF:1098-7301).
 - a. This code **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] @code, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Vital Sign Result Type](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.62 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32934).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] statusCode (CONF:1098-7303).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code="completed" Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-19119).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] effectiveTime (CONF:1098-7304).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] value with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:1098-7305).
 - a. This value **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @unit, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31579).
9. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] interpretationCode (CONF:1098-7307).
 - a. The interpretationCode, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @code, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Observation Interpretation \(HL7\)](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-32886).
10. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] methodCode (CONF:1098-7308).
11. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] targetSiteCode (CONF:1098-7309).
12. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] [Author Participation](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1098-7310).

Table 505: Vital Sign Result Type

Value Set: Vital Sign Result Type urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.62 (Clinical Focus: A clinical observation classified as a vital sign, optionally including a method),(Data Element Scope: observation),(Inclusion Criteria: Specific set of concepts selected),(Exclusion Criteria: None needed)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190521.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.62/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
2708-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Oxygen saturation in Arterial blood
29463-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body weight
3140-1	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body surface area Derived from formula
39156-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body mass index (BMI) [Ratio]
59408-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Oxygen saturation in Arterial blood by Pulse oximetry
8287-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Head Occipital-frontal circumference by Tape measure
8302-2	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body height
8306-3	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body height --lying
8310-5	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Body temperature
8462-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Diastolic blood pressure
...			

Figure 228: Vital Sign Observation (V2) Example

```
<observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <!-- Vital Sign Observation template -->
  <id root="c6f88321-67ad-11db-bd13-0800200c9a66" />
  <code code="8302-2" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" codeSystemName="LOINC"
displayName="Height" />
  <statusCode code="completed" />
  <effectiveTime value="20121114" />
  <value xsi:type="PQ" value="177" unit="cm" />
  ....
</observation>
```

3.109 Vital Signs Organizer (V3)

[organizer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01
(open)]

Table 506: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Vital Signs Section (entries optional) (V3) (optional)	Vital Sign Observation (V2) (required)
Vital Signs Section (entries required) (V3) (required)	Author Participation (optional)

This template provides a mechanism for grouping vital signs (e.g., grouping systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure).

Table 507: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
organizer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26:2015-08-01)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7279	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = CLUSTER
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7280	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1198-7281	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1198-10528	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .26
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1198-32582	2015-08-01
id	1..*	SHALL		1198-7282	
code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32740	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32741	46680005
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32742	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.9 6 (SNOMED CT) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
translation	1..1	SHALL		1198-32743	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-32744	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 74728-7
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1198-32746	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1 (LOINC) = 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1198-7284	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1198-19120	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1198-7288	
author	0..*	SHOULD		1198-31153	Author Participation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10. 20.22.4.119)
component	1..*	SHALL		1198-7285	
observation	1..1	SHALL		1198-15946	Vital Sign Observation (V2) (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.1 0.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="CLUSTER"** CLUSTER (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7279).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** Event (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-7280).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1198-7281) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26"** (CONF:1198-10528).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2015-08-01"** (CONF:1198-32582).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1198-7282).

Compatibility support for C-CDA R1.1 and C-CDA 2.1: A vitals organizer conformant to both C-CDA 1.1 and C-CDA 2.1 would contain the SNOMED code (46680005) from R1.1 in the root code and a LOINC code in the translation. A vitals organizer conformant to only C-CDA 2.1 would only contain the LOINC code in the root code.

5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1198-32740).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="46680005"** Vital Signs (CONF:1198-32741).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"** SNOMED CT (CodeSystem: SNOMED CT urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96) (CONF:1198-32742).
 - c. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **translation** (CONF:1198-32743) such that it
 - i. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="74728-7"** Vital signs, weight, height, head circumference, oximetry, BMI, and BSA panel - HL7.CCDAr1.1 (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32744).
 - ii. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"** LOINC (CodeSystem: LOINC urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1) (CONF:1198-32746).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1198-7284).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1198-19120).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1198-7288).
Note: The effectiveTime may be a timestamp or an interval that spans the effectiveTimes of the contained vital signs observations.
8. **SHOULD** contain zero or more [0..*] **Author Participation** (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119) (CONF:1198-31153).
9. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **component** (CONF:1198-7285) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **Vital Sign Observation (V2)** (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27:2014-06-09) (CONF:1198-15946).

Figure 229: Vital Signs Organizer (V3) Example

```

<organizer classCode="CLUSTER" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- ** Vital signs organizer ** -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.26" extension="2015-08-01" />
    <id root="24f6ad18-c512-40fc-82bd-1e131aa9e52b" />
    <code code="46680005" displayName="Vital Signs"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED
CT">
        <translation code="74728-7"
                    displayName="Vital signs, weight, height, head
circumference, oximetry, BMI, and BSA panel "
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                    codeSystemName="LOINC"></translation>
    </code>
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20120910" />
        <high value="20120910" />
    </effectiveTime>
    <component>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27" extension="2014-06-09" />
            <!-- Vital Sign Observation template -->
            ...
            </observation>
        </component>
        <component>
            <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27" extension="2014-06-09" />
                <!-- Vital Sign Observation template -->
                ...
                </observation>
            </component>
            <component>
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.27" extension="2014-06-09" />
                    <!-- Vital Sign Observation template -->
                    ...
                    </observation>
                </component>
            </organizer>

```

3.110 Wound Characteristic

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134 (open)]

Table 508: Wound Characteristic Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)	

This template represents characteristics of a wound (e.g., integrity of suture line, odor, erythema).

Table 509: Wound Characteristic Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29938	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29939	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1.001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29940	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29941	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-29942	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29943	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-31540	ASSERTION
@codeSystem	1..1	SHALL		1098-31541	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4 (HL7ActCode) = 2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29944	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-29946	
value	1..1	SHALL	CD	1098-29947	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58 (Wound Characteristic)

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29938).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29939).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-29940) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134"** (CONF:1098-29941).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-29942).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-29943).
 - a. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="ASSERTION"** assertion (CONF:1098-31540).
 - b. This code **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4) (CONF:1098-31541).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode="completed"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29944).

7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-29946).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="CD", where the code **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Wound Characteristic](#)
urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-29947).

Table 510: Wound Characteristic

Value Set: Wound Characteristic urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58 (Clinical Focus: Concepts representing general characteristics or types of wounds),(Data Element Scope: condition),(Inclusion Criteria: Selected concepts descending primarily from 225552003 'Wound finding' also including Skin Eschar),(Exclusion Criteria:)																																																			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190517. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58/expansion																																																			
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Code</th><th>Code System</th><th>Code System OID</th><th>Print Name</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>12268100011 9108</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Dehiscence of external surgical incision wound (disorder)</td></tr> <tr><td>225540005</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound inflammation (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>225552003</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound finding (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>225553008</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound dehiscence (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>225917003</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Suture line intact (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>225944008</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound tenderness (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>239157004</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound edge necrosis (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>239159001</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound seroma (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>239160006</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound hematoma (finding)</td></tr> <tr><td>239161005</td><td>SNOMED CT</td><td>urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96</td><td>Wound hemorrhage (finding)</td></tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">...</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name	12268100011 9108	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dehiscence of external surgical incision wound (disorder)	225540005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound inflammation (finding)	225552003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound finding (finding)	225553008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound dehiscence (finding)	225917003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Suture line intact (finding)	225944008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound tenderness (finding)	239157004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound edge necrosis (finding)	239159001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound seroma (finding)	239160006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound hematoma (finding)	239161005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound hemorrhage (finding)	...			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name																																																
12268100011 9108	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Dehiscence of external surgical incision wound (disorder)																																																
225540005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound inflammation (finding)																																																
225552003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound finding (finding)																																																
225553008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound dehiscence (finding)																																																
225917003	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Suture line intact (finding)																																																
225944008	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound tenderness (finding)																																																
239157004	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound edge necrosis (finding)																																																
239159001	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound seroma (finding)																																																
239160006	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound hematoma (finding)																																																
239161005	SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96	Wound hemorrhage (finding)																																																
...																																																			

Figure 230: Wound Characteristic Example

```
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- Wound Characteristic -->
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.134" />
    <id root="763428a0-eb35-11e2-91e2-0700200c9a66" />
    <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
    <statusCode code="completed" />
    <effectiveTime value="20013103" />
    <value xsi:type="CD" code="447547000" displayName="Offensive wound odor"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED-CT" />
  </observation>
</entryRelationship>
```

3.111 Wound Measurement Observation

[observation: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133 (open)]

Table 511: Wound Measurement Observation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional)	

This template represents the Wound Measurement Observations of wound width, depth and length.

Table 512: Wound Measurement Observation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
observation (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133)					
@classCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29926	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = OBS
@moodCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29927	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 001 (HL7ActMood) = EVN
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-29928	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-29929	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4 .133
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-29930	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29931	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.20.2.5 (Wound Measurements)
statusCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-29933	
@code	1..1	SHALL		1098-29934	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1 4 (HL7ActStatus) = completed
effectiveTime	1..1	SHALL		1098-29935	
value	1..1	SHALL	PQ	1098-29936	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@classCode="OBS"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29926).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@moodCode="EVN"** (CodeSystem: HL7ActMood urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29927).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-29928) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133"** (CONF:1098-29929).
4. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-29930).
5. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Wound Measurements](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.5 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-29931).
6. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **statusCode** (CONF:1098-29933).
 - a. This statusCode **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@code="completed"** Completed (CodeSystem: HL7ActStatus urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-29934).
7. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **effectiveTime** (CONF:1098-29935).
8. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **value** with @xsi:type="PQ" (CONF:1098-29936).

Table 513: Wound Measurements

Value Set: Wound Measurements urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.5 (Clinical Focus: Concepts that represent the observables for the dimensions of a wound.),(Data Element Scope: observable),(Inclusion Criteria: the selected set),(Exclusion Criteria: only as selected in inclusion criteria)			
This value set was imported on 6/29/2019 with a version of 20190114.			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.5/expansion			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
39125-0	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Width of Wound
39126-8	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Length of Wound
39127-6	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Depth of Wound
72293-4	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Undermining [Length] of Wound
72296-7	LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1	Tunneling [Length] of Wound

Figure 231: Wound Measurement Observation Example

```
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <!-- Wound Measurements Observation . -->
        <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.133" />
        <id root="d2b46280-eb34-11e2-91e2-0800200c9a66" />
        <code code=" 401238003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" displayName="Length of Wound" />
        <statusCode code="completed" />
        <effectiveTime value="20013103" />
        <value xsi:type="PQ" value="2" unit="[in_i]" />
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
```

4 PARTICIPATION AND OTHER TEMPLATES

The participation and other templates chapter contains templates for CDA participations (e.g., author, performer), and other fielded items (e.g., address, name) that cannot stand on their own without being nested in another template .

4.1 Author Participation

[author: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119 (open)]

Table 514: Author Participation Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Comment Activity (optional) Sensory Status (optional) Self-Care Activities (ADL and IADL) (optional) Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Act (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Procedure (V2) (optional) Procedure Activity Observation (V2) (optional) Goal Observation (optional) Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Substance or Device Allergy - Intolerance Observation (V2) (optional) Nutrition Assessment (optional) Planned Act (V2) (optional) Planned Encounter (V2) (optional) Planned Procedure (V2) (optional) Planned Observation (V2) (optional) Planned Supply (V2) (optional) Planned Medication Activity (V2) (optional) Functional Status Observation (V2) (optional) Functional Status Organizer (V2) (optional) Handoff Communication Participants (required) Patient Referral Act (optional) Smoking Status - Meaningful Use (V2) (optional) Vital Sign Observation (V2) (optional) Priority Preference (optional) Tobacco Use (V2) (optional) Outcome Observation (optional) Planned Coverage (optional) Planned Immunization Activity (optional) Vital Signs Organizer (V3) (optional) Immunization Activity (V3) (optional) Result Observation (V3) (optional) Mental Status Observation (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Problem Observation (V3) (optional) Social History Observation (V3) (optional) Health Concern Act (V2) (optional) Result Organizer (V3) (optional) Advance Directive Organizer (V2) (optional) Risk Concern Act (V2) (optional) Problem Concern Act (V3) (optional) Planned Intervention Act (V2) (optional) Longitudinal Care Wound Observation (V2) (optional) Intervention Act (V2) (optional)	

Contained By:	Contains:
Allergy Concern Act (V3) (optional)	

This template represents the Author Participation (including the author timestamp). CDA R2 requires that Author and Author timestamp be asserted in the document header. From there, authorship propagates to contained sections and contained entries, unless explicitly overridden.

The Author Participation template was added to those templates in scope for analysis in R2. Although it is not explicitly stated in all templates the Author Participation template can be used in any template.

Table 515: Author Participation Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
author (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119)					
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-32017	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-32018	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119
time	1..1	SHALL		1098-31471	
assignedAuthor	1..1	SHALL		1098-31472	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-31473	
code	0..1	SHOULD		1098-31671	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 (Healthcare Provider Taxonomy)
assignedPerson	0..1	MAY		1098-31474	
name	0..*	MAY		1098-31475	
representedOrganization	0..1	MAY		1098-31476	
id	0..*	MAY		1098-31478	
name	0..*	MAY		1098-31479	
telecom	0..*	MAY		1098-31480	
addr	0..*	MAY		1098-31481	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-32017) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] @root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" (CONF:1098-32018).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **time** (CONF:1098-31471).

3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedAuthor** (CONF:1098-31472).
 - a. This assignedAuthor **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31473).

Note: This id may be set equal to (a pointer to) an id on a participant elsewhere in the document (header or entries) or a new author participant can be described here. If the id is pointing to a participant already described elsewhere in the document, assignedAuthor/id is sufficient to identify this participant and none of the remaining details of assignedAuthor are required to be set. Application Software must be responsible for resolving the identifier back to its original object and then rendering the information in the correct place in the containing section's narrative text. This id must be a pointer to another author participant.

 - i. If the ID isn't referencing an author described elsewhere in the document, then the author components required in US Realm Header are required here as well (CONF:1098-32628).
 - b. This assignedAuthor **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **code**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [Healthcare Provider Taxonomy](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:1098-31671).
 - i. If the content is patient authored the code **SHOULD** be selected from Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type (2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.12.1) (CONF:1098-32315).
 - c. This assignedAuthor **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1098-31474).
 - i. The assignedPerson, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **name** (CONF:1098-31475).
 - d. This assignedAuthor **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1098-31476).
 - i. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **id** (CONF:1098-31478).
 - ii. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **name** (CONF:1098-31479).
 - iii. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **telecom** (CONF:1098-31480).
 - iv. The representedOrganization, if present, **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **addr** (CONF:1098-31481).

Figure 232: New Author Participant Example

```
<author>
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.4.119" />
  <time value="201308011235-0800" />
  <assignedAuthor>
    <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />
    <code code="163W00000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.53" codeSystemName="Health
Care Provider Taxonomy" displayName="Registered nurse" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <given>Nurse</given>
        <family>Nightingale</family>
        <suffix>RN</suffix>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.5" />
      <name>Good Health Hospital</name>
    </representedOrganization>
  </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

Figure 233: Existing Author Reference Example

```
<author>
  <time value="201308011235-0800" />
  <assignedAuthor>
    <!--
      This id points to a participant already described
      elsewhere in the document
    -->
    <id root="20cf14fb-b65c-4c8c-a54d-b0cca834c18c" />
  </assignedAuthor>
</author>
```

4.2 Physician of Record Participant (V2)

[encounterParticipant: identifier
urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.2:2014-06-09 (open)]

Table 516: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) (optional)

This encounterParticipant is the attending physician and is usually different from the Physician Reading Study Performer defined in documentationOf/serviceEvent.

Table 517: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
encounterParticipant (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.2:2014-06-09)					
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8881	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 (HL7ParticipationType) = ATND
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-16072	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-16073	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32586	2014-06-09
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-8886	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-8887	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-8888	
assignedPerson	0..1	SHOULD		1098-30928	
name	1..1	SHALL		1098-30929	US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1
representedOrganization	0..1	MAY		1098-16074	
name	0..1	SHOULD		1098-16075	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="ATND"** Attender (CodeSystem: HL7ParticipationType urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8881).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-16072) such that it
 - a. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.2"** (CONF:1098-16073).
 - b. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32586).
3. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-8886).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-8887).
 - i. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **id** such that ***@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6"** National Provider Identifier (CONF:1098-31203).
 - b. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-8888).
 - i. **SHALL** contain a valid DICOM Organizational Role from DICOM CID 7452 (Value Set 1.2.840.10008.6.1.516) (@codeSystem is 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) or an appropriate national health care provider coding system (e.g., NUCC in the U.S., where @codeSystem is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.101). Footnote: DICOM Part 16 (NEMA PS3.16), page 631 in the 2011 edition. See

[URL:ftp://medical.nema.org/medical/dicom/2011/11_16pu.pdf]
(CONF:1098-8889).

- c. This assignedEntity **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **assignedPerson** (CONF:1098-30928).
 - i. The assignedPerson, if present, **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] [US Realm Person Name \(PN.US.FIELDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1) (CONF:1098-30929).
- d. This assignedEntity **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **representedOrganization** (CONF:1098-16074).
 - i. The representedOrganization, if present, **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **name** (CONF:1098-16075).

Figure 234: Physician of Record Participant (V2) Example

```
<encounterParticipant typeCode="ATND">
  <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.2" extension="2014-06-09" />
  <assignedEntity>
    <id extension="44444444" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
    <code code="208D00000X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" codeSystemName="NUCC"
displayNames="General Practice" />
    <addr nullFlavor="NI" />
    <telecom nullFlavor="NI" />
    <assignedPerson>
      <name>
        <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
        <given>Fay</given>
        <family>Family</family>
      </name>
    </assignedPerson>
  </assignedEntity>
</encounterParticipant>
```

4.3 Physician Reading Study Performer (V2)

[performer: identifier urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1:2014-06-09
(open)]

Table 518: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) (optional)

This participant is the Physician Reading Study Performer defined in documentationOf/serviceEvent. It is usually different from the attending physician. The reading physician interprets the images and evidence of the study (DICOM Definition).

Table 519: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
performer (identifier: urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1:2014-06-09)					
@typeCode	1..1	SHALL		1098-8424	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 (HL7ActClass) = PRF
templateId	1..1	SHALL		1098-30773	
@root	1..1	SHALL		1098-30774	2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1
@extension	1..1	SHALL		1098-32564	2014-06-09
time	0..1	MAY		1098-8425	US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3)
assignedEntity	1..1	SHALL		1098-8426	
id	1..*	SHALL		1098-10033	
code	1..1	SHALL		1098-8427	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@typeCode="PRF"** Performer (CodeSystem: HL7ActClass urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6 **STATIC**) (CONF:1098-8424).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **templateId** (CONF:1098-30773).
 - a. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1"** (CONF:1098-30774).
 - b. This templateId **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **@extension="2014-06-09"** (CONF:1098-32564).
3. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] [US Realm Date and Time \(DT.US.FIELDDED\)](#) (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3) (CONF:1098-8425).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **assignedEntity** (CONF:1098-8426).
 - a. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **id** (CONF:1098-10033).
 - b. This assignedEntity **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **code** (CONF:1098-8427).
 - i. **SHALL** contain a valid DICOM personal identification code sequence (@codeSystem is 1.2.840.10008.2.16.4) or an appropriate national health care provider coding system (e.g., NUCC in the U.S., where @codeSystem is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.101) (CONF:1098-8428).
 - c. Every assignedEntity element **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] assignedPerson or representedOrganization (CONF:1098-8429).
 - d. The id **SHOULD** include zero or one [0..1] **id** where id/@root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" National Provider Identifier (CONF:1098-32135).

Figure 235: Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) Example

```

<performer typeCode="PRF">
    <templateId root="2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.6.2.1" extension="2014-06-09" />
    <assignedEntity>
        <id extension="111111111" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.6" />
        <code code="2085R0202X" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.101" codeSystemName="NUCC"
displayName="Diagnostic Radiology" />
        <addr nullFlavor="NI" />
        <telecom nullFlavor="NI" />
        <assignedPerson>
            <name>
                <given>Christine</given>
                <family>Cure</family>
                <suffix>MD</suffix>
            </name>
        </assignedPerson>
    </assignedEntity>
</performer>

```

4.4 US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED)

[addr: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2 (open)]

Table 520: US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Medication Dispense (V2) (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Policy Activity (V3) (optional) US Realm Header (V3) (optional) US Realm Header (V3) (required)	

Reusable address template, for use in US Realm CDA Header.

Table 521: US Realm Address (AD.US.FIELDED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
addr (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.2)					
@use	0..1	SHOULD		81-7290	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.10637 (PostalAddressUse)
country	0..1	SHOULD		81-7295	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.63 (Country)
state	0..1	SHOULD		81-7293	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.1 (StateValueSet)
city	1..1	SHALL		81-7292	
postalCode	0..1	SHOULD		81-7294	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.8 8.12.80.2 (PostalCode)
streetAddressLine	1..4	SHALL		81-7291	

If addr/@nullFlavor is present, the remaining conformance statements **SHALL NOT** be enforced

1. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [PostalAddressUse](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10637 **STATIC** 2005-05-01 (CONF:81-7290).
2. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **country**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [Country](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.63 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-7295).
3. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **state** (ValueSet: [StateValueSet](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.1 **DYNAMIC**) (CONF:81-7293).
 - a. If the country is US, the state element is required but **SHOULD** have @nullFlavor if the state is unknown. If country is not specified, it's assumed to be US. If country is something other than US, the state **MAY** be present but **MAY** be bound to different vocabularies (CONF:81-10024).
4. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **city** (CONF:81-7292).
5. **SHOULD** contain zero or one [0..1] **postalCode**, which **SHOULD** be selected from ValueSet [PostalCode](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.2 **DYNAMIC** (CONF:81-7294).
 - a. If the country is US, the postalCode element is required but **SHOULD** have @nullFlavor if the postalCode is unknown. If country is not specified, it's assumed to be US. If country is something other than US, the postalCode **MAY** be present but **MAY** be bound to different vocabularies (CONF:81-10025).
6. **SHALL** contain at least one and not more than 4 **streetAddressLine** (CONF:81-7291).
7. **SHALL NOT** have mixed content except for white space (CONF:81-7296).

Table 522: PostalAddressUse

Value Set: PostalAddressUse urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10637 A value set of HL7 Codes for address use. Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
BAD	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	bad address
CONF	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	confidential
DIR	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	direct
H	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	home address
HP	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	primary home
HV	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	vacation home
PHYS	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	physical visit address
PST	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	postal address
PUB	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	public
TMP	HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.11 19	temporary
...			

Table 523: StateValueSet

Value Set: StateValueSet urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.1 Identifies addresses within the United States are recorded using the FIPS 5-2 two-letter alphabetic codes for the State, District of Columbia, or an outlying area of the United States or associated area Value Set Source: http://www.census.gov/geo/reference/ansi_statetables.html			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
AL	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Alabama
AK	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Alaska
AZ	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Arizona
AR	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Arkansas
CA	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	California
CO	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Colorado
CT	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Connecticut
DE	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Delaware
DC	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	District of Columbia
FL	FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92	Florida
...			

Table 524: PostalCode

Value Set: PostalCode urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.2 A value set of postal (ZIP) Code of an address in the United States Value Set Source: http://ushik.ahrq.gov/ViewItemDetails?system=mdr&itemKey=86671000			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
19009	USPostalCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 1	Bryn Athyn
92869-1736	USPostalCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 1	Orange, CA
32830-8413	USPostalCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.23 1	Lake Buena Vista, FL
...			

Figure 236: US Realm Address Example

```
<addr use="HP">
  <streetAddressLine>22 Sample Street</streetAddressLine>
  <city>Beaverton</city>
  <state>OR</state>
  <postalCode>97867</postalCode>
  <country>US</country>
</addr>
```

4.5 US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED)

[effectiveTime: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3 (open)]

Table 525: US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Physician Reading Study Performer (V2) (optional) Consultation Note (V3) (required) History and Physical (V3) (required) Progress Note (V3) (optional) Progress Note (V3) (required) Procedure Note (V3) (required) Operative Note (V3) (required) Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	

The US Realm Clinical Document Date and Time datatype flavor records date and time information. If no time zone offset is provided, you can make no assumption about time, unless you have made a local exchange agreement.

This data type uses the same rules as US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDED), but is used with elements having a datatype of IVL_TS.

Table 526: US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDED) Constraints Overview

X	Card	Verb	Data Type	CONF #	Value
effectiveTime (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.3)					

1. **SHALL** be precise to the day (CONF:81-10078).
2. **SHOULD** be precise to the minute (CONF:81-10079).
3. **MAY** be precise to the second (CONF:81-10080).
4. If more precise than day, **SHOULD** include time-zone offset (CONF:81-10081).

4.6 US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDED)

[effectiveTime: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4 (open)]

Table 527: US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
US Realm Header (V3) (optional) US Realm Header (V3) (required)	

The US Realm Clinical Document Date and Time datatype flavor records date and time information. If no time zone offset is provided, you can make no assumption about time, unless you have made a local exchange agreement.

This data type uses the same rules as US Realm Date and Time (DT.US.FIELDDED), but is used with elements having a datatype of TS.

Table 528: US Realm Date and Time (DTM.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview

X P a t h	Card	Verb	Data Type	CONF #	Value
effectiveTime (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.4)					

1. **SHALL** be precise to the day (CONF:81-10127).
2. **SHOULD** be precise to the minute (CONF:81-10128).
3. **MAY** be precise to the second (CONF:81-10129).
4. If more precise than day, **SHOULD** include time-zone offset (CONF:81-10130).

Figure 237: US Realm Date and Time Example

```
<!-- Common values for date/time elements would range in precision to the day YYYYMMDD to
precision to the second with a time zone offset YYYYMMDDHHMMSS - ZZZZ -->
<!-- time element with TS data type precise to the day for a birthdate -->
<time value="19800531"/>
<!-- effectiveTime element with IVL<TS> data type precise to the second for an observation
-->
<effectiveTime>
  <low value='20110706122735-0800' />
  <high value='20110706122815-0800' />
</effectiveTime>
```

4.7 US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED)

[name: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1 (open)]

Table 529: US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Referral Note (V2) (optional) US Realm Header (V3) (required)	

The US Realm Patient Name datatype flavor is a set of reusable constraints that can be used for the patient or any other person. It requires a first (given) and last (family) name. If a patient or person has only one name part (e.g., patient with first name only) place the name part in the field required by the organization. Use the appropriate nullFlavor, "Not Applicable" (NA), in the other field.
For information on mixed content see the Extensible Markup Language reference (<http://www.w3c.org/TR/2008/REC-xml-20081126/>).

Table 530: US Realm Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDDED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
name (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1)					
@use	0..1	MAY		81-7154	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.1 1.15913 (EntityNameUse)
family	1..1	SHALL		81-7159	
@qualifier	0..1	MAY		81-7160	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.26 (EntityPersonNamePartQualifi er)
given	1..*	SHALL		81-7157	
@qualifier	0..1	MAY		81-7158	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.26 (EntityPersonNamePartQualifi er)
prefix	0..*	MAY		81-7155	
@qualifier	0..1	MAY		81-7156	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.26 (EntityPersonNamePartQualifi er)
suffix	0..1	MAY		81-7161	
@qualifier	0..1	MAY		81-7162	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11. 20.9.26 (EntityPersonNamePartQualifi er)

If name/@nullFlavor is present, the remaining conformance statements **SHALL NOT** be enforced

1. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@use**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [EntityNameUse](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15913 **STATIC** 2005-05-01 (CONF:81-7154).
2. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **family** (CONF:81-7159).
 - a. This family **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@qualifier**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [EntityPersonNamePartQualifier](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:81-7160).
3. **SHALL** contain at least one [1..*] **given** (CONF:81-7157).
 - a. Such givens **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@qualifier**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [EntityPersonNamePartQualifier](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:81-7158).
 - b. The second occurrence of given (given[2]) if provided, **SHALL** include middle name or middle initial (CONF:81-7163).
4. **MAY** contain zero or more [0..*] **prefix** (CONF:81-7155).
 - a. The prefix, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **@qualifier**, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [EntityPersonNamePartQualifier](#) urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:81-7156).
5. **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] **suffix** (CONF:81-7161).

- a. The suffix, if present, **MAY** contain zero or one [0..1] @qualifier, which **SHALL** be selected from ValueSet [EntityPersonNamePartQualifier](#)
 urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26 **STATIC** 2011-09-30 (CONF:81-7162).
6. **SHALL NOT** have mixed content except for white space (CONF:81-7278).

Table 531: EntityNameUse

Value Set: EntityNameUse urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15913			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
A	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Artist/Stage
ABC	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Alphabetic
ASGN	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Assigned
C	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	License
I	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Indigenous/Tribal
IDE	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Ideographic
L	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Legal
P	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Pseudonym
PHON	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Phonetic
R	HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45	Religious
...			

Table 532: EntityPersonNamePartQualifier

Value Set: EntityPersonNamePartQualifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26			
Value Set Source: https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/			
Code	Code System	Code System OID	Print Name
AC	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	academic
AD	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	adopted
BR	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	birth
CL	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	callme
IN	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	initial
NB	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	nobility
PR	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	professional
SP	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	spouse
TITLE	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	title
VV	HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43	voorvoegsel

Figure 238: US Realm Patient Name Example

```
<name use="L">
  <prefix qualifier="TITLE">Rep</suffix>
  <given>Evelyn</given>
  <given qualifier="CL">Eve</given>
  <family qualifier="BR">Everywoman</family>
  <suffix qualifier="AC">J.D.</suffix>
</name>
```

4.8 US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED)

[name: identifier urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1 (open)]

Table 533: US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) Contexts

Contained By:	Contains:
Drug Monitoring Act (required) Physician of Record Participant (V2) (optional) Advance Directive Observation (V3) (optional) Care Plan (V2) (optional) Care Plan (V2) (required) Referral Note (V2) (required) US Realm Header (V3) (optional) Diagnostic Imaging Report (V3) (optional)	

The US Realm Clinical Document Person Name datatype flavor is a set of reusable constraints that can be used for Persons.

Table 534: US Realm Person Name (PN.US.FIELDED) Constraints Overview

XPath	Card.	Verb	Data Type	CONF#	Value
name (identifier: urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.10.20.22.5.1.1)					
name	1..1	SHALL		81-9368	

1. **SHALL** contain exactly one [1..1] **name** (CONF:81-9368).
 - a. The content of name **SHALL** be either a conformant Patient Name (PTN.US.FIELDED), or a string (CONF:81-9371).
 - b. The string **SHALL NOT** contain name parts (CONF:81-9372).

5 VALUE SETS IN THIS GUIDE

Table 535: Value Sets

Name	OID	URL
Ability	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.46	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.46/expansion
ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16866/expansion
ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15933/expansion
ADL Result Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.47	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.47/expansion
AdministrationUnitDoseForm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1021.30/expansion
Administrative Gender (HL7 V3)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.1/expansion
Advance Directive Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2/expansion
AgePQ_UCUM	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.21/expansion
Allergy and Intolerance Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.2/expansion
Allergy Clinical Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.29	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.29/expansion
Body Site Value Set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.9/expansion
Care Model	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.61	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.61/expansion
Care Plan Document Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.10/expansion
Care Team Member Function	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.30/expansion
Clinical Substance	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.2	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.2/expansion

Name	OID	URL
ConsultDocumentType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.31/expansion
Country	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.63	https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#iso:pub:PUB500001:en
Coverage Role Type Value Set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.18877	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.18877/expansion
Criticality Observation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20549	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20549/expansion
CVX Vaccines Administered Vaccine Set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.6/expansion
Detailed Ethnicity	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.877	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.877/expansion
DICOPurposeOfReference	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.28	http://www.hl7.org
DIRQuantityMeasurementTypeCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.29/expansion
DIRSectionTypeCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.59	http://www.loinc.org/
DischargeSummaryDocumentTypeCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.4.1/expansion
Encounter Planned	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.52/expansion
EncounterTypeCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.32/expansion
EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.15913	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
EntityPersonNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.26	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Ethnicity	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.837	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.837/expansion
Extended Pregnancy Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.24	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.24/expansion
Family Member Value	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19579	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19579/expansion
Financially Responsible Party Type Value Set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10416	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10416/expansion

Name	OID	URL
Goal Achievement	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.55	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.55/expansion
Health Insurance Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.5.2	N/A
Healthcare Agent Qualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.51/expansion
Healthcare Provider Taxonomy	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.1066/expansion
HealthcareServiceLocation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20275/expansion
HealthStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.12	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.12/expansion
HL7 BasicConfidentialityKind	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16926	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.16926/expansion
HPDocumentType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.22	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.22/expansion
INDRoleclassCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.33	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11526	http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/code_list.php
LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12249	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12249/expansion
LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12199	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12199/expansion
LOINC Imaging Document Codes	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.2.5/expansion
Marital Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12212	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12212/expansion
Medication Clinical Drug	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.4	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.4/expansion
Medication Fill Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.64	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Medication Route	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.12/expansion
Medication Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1099.11/expansion

Name	OID	URL
		xpansion
Mental and Functional Status Response	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.44	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.44/expansion
MoodCodeEvnInt	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.18/expansion
No Immunization Reason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19717	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19717/expansion
NUBC UB-04 FL17 Patient Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.33	http://www.nubc.org
Nutrition Recommendations	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.9	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.9/expansion
Nutritional Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.7	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.7/expansion
Observation Interpretation (HL7)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.78/expansion
Patient Education	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.34	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.34/expansion
Patient Referral Act moodCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.66	http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html
Payer	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.114222.4.11.3591	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Personal And Legal Relationship Role Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.2.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.2.1/expansion
Physical Exam Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.65/expansion
Planned Intervention moodCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.54	http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html
Planned moodCode (Act/Encounter/Procedure)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.23	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Planned moodCode (Observation)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.25	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Planned moodCode (SubstanceAdministration/Supply)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.24	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
PostalAddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.10637	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
PostalCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12	http://ushik.ahrq.gov/ViewItemDe

Name	OID	URL
	.80.2	tails?system=mdr&itemKey=86671_000
Pressure Point	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.36	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov
Pressure Ulcer Stage	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.35/expansion
Priority Level	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.60	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.60/expansion
Problem	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.4/expansion
Problem Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.68	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.68/expansion
Problem Type (LOINC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.109.9.28	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.109.9.28/expansion
Problem Type (LOINC)	urn:hl7ii:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2:2014-09-02	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2/expansion
Problem Type (SNOMEDCT)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.7.2/expansion
ProblemAct statusCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.19	http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html
ProcedureAct statusCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.22/expansion
ProcedureNoteDocumentTypeCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.6.1	http://search.loinc.org
ProgressNoteDocumentTypeCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.8.1/expansion
Race Category Excluding Nulls	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.2074.1.1.3	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.2074.1.1.3/expansion
Race Value Set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.14914	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.14914/expansion
Reaction Severity	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.8	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.6.8/expansion
Referral Types	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.56/expansion
ReferralDocumentType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset

Name	OID	URL
	.2.3	/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.3/expansion
Religious Affiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19185	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19185/expansion
Residence and Accommodation Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.49	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.49/expansion
Result Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.39/expansion
Sensory Status Problem Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.50	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.50/expansion
Smoking Status	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.38/expansion
Social History Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.60	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.60/expansion
SPL Drug Route of Administration Terminology	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.8.7/expansion
StateValueSet	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.1	http://www.census.gov/geo/reference/ansi_statetables.html
Substance Reactant for Intolerance	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.1/expansion
SupportedFileFormats	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.7.1	http://www.hl7.org
SurgicalOperationNoteDocumentTypeCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.1.1/expansion
TargetSite Qualifiers	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.37/expansion
Telecom Use (US Realm Header)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.20	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/
Tobacco Use	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.41	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.41/expansion
TransferDocumentType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.4	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.4/expansion
UnitsOfMeasureCaseSensitive	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.12839/expansion
Vaccine Clinical Drug	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113762.1.4.1010.8/expansion

Name	OID	URL
Vital Sign Result Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.62	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.80.62/expansion
Wound Characteristic	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.11.20.9.58/expansion
Wound Measurements	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.5	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.5/expansion
Wound Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.6	https://vsac.nlm.nih.gov/valueset/2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.20.2.6/expansion
x ActRelationshipDocument	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.11.610	N/A
x ServiceEventPerformer	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19.601	http://www.hl7.org/documentcenter/public/standards/vocabulary/vocabulary_tables/infrastructure/vocabulary/vocabulary.html

6 CODE SYSTEMS IN THIS GUIDE

Table 536: Code Systems

Name	OID
Administrative Gender	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1
CDC Vaccine Code (CVX)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.12.292
CPT4	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.12
DCM	urn:oid:1.2.840.10008.2.16.4
FIPS 5-2 (State)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.92
Healthcare Provider Taxonomy (HIPAA)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.101
HL7ActClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.6
HL7ActCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.4
HL7ActMood	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1001
HL7ActPriority	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.7
HL7ActReason	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.8
HL7ActRelationshipType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1002
HL7ActStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.14
HL7AddressUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1119
HL7Confidentiality	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.25
HL7EntityClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.41
HL7EntityNamePartQualifier	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.43
HL7EntityNameUse	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.45
HL7LanguageAbilityMode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.60
HL7LanguageAbilityProficiency	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.61
HL7MaritalStatus	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.2
HL7NullFlavor	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1008
HL7ObservationValue	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1063
HL7ParticipationFunction	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.88
HL7ParticipationSignature	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.89
HL7ParticipationType	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.90
HL7ReligiousAffiliation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.1076
HL7RoleClass	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.110
HL7RoleCode	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.111
HSLOC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.259
ICD-10-CM	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.90
Insurance Type Code	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.5.2
ISO 3166 Part 1 Country Codes, 2nd Edition, Alpha-2	urn:oid:1.0.3166.1.2.2
Language	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.121
LOINC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.1

Name	OID
Media Type	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.79
NCI Thesaurus (NCIt)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1
NDFRT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5
NUBC UB-04 Patient Discharge Status code set	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.301.5
ObservationInterpretation	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.5.83
Provider Role (HL7)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.88.12.3221.4
Race & Ethnicity - CDC	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.238
RxNorm	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.88
SNOMED CT	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.96
Source of Payment Typology (PHDSC)	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.221.5
UCUM	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.8
UCUM	urn:oid:1.3.6.1.4.1.12009.10.3.1
USPostalCodes	urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.6.231